

Oxford **Word Skills**

ELEMENTARY VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important
words and phrases in English
topic by topic*

OXFORD

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DR, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2020

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted

First published in 2020

2024 2023 2022 2021 2020

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 460566 3

Pack

ISBN: 978 0 19 460567 0

Student's Book

ISBN: 978 0 19 479862 4

Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 10th edition app

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Cover images: OUP (table tennis/ESLINE); Shutterstock (happy man/Dean Drobot), (painting/shoarts), (tiger/Colette3), (fruit/tazzymoto), (brick laying/Olefirenko Vitaly), (coffee/kikovic), (coast/Vibrant Image Studio), (subway/olivia_owl), (traveller/mimagephotography), (trollies/Henrik Lehnerer).

Some of the **ABOUT YOU** answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Elzbieta Rudniak (Poland), Eva Paulerová and her students (Czech Republic), Franky Lau (China), Florence Waeni (Kenya), Gabriela Rangel (Mexico), Katalin Elekes and her students (Hungary), Mallika Ghosh (India).

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher.

Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologize for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity.

Disclaimer: This book includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the listing of that word in the Word List but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby.

The publisher would like to thank the following for their permission to use the following photographs: **Alamy Stock Photo** pp. 64 (recipe/Zoonar GmbH), 66 (police/Martin Brayley), 112 (post office/Kumar Skiskandan), 129 (history/Ian Dagnall), (literature/CBW), 158 (Vanessa May/ITAR-TASS News Agency), (Jonas Kaufmann/dpa picture Alliance), 159 (Glastonbury/Roger Cracknell 01), 160 (Mr Bean/United Archive GmbH), (Dunkirk/Moviestore Collection Ltd), (Bond/Entertainment Pictures), (cartoon/MARKA), (science fiction/Sportsphoto), 165 (Mary Shelley/Heritage Image Partnership Ltd), 177 (information office/EDU Vision); **Metropolitan Museum of Art** p. 129 The Mr. and Mrs. Henry Pfitzner Jr. Purchase Fund, 1956 © Metropolitan Museum, New York; **OUP** pp. 65 (mobile phone/Mox Studio), 80 (monkey, snake, whale, cow, spider), 92 (milk, bread, chocolates), 94 (apple, grapes, pineapple), 95 (cucumber), 96 (cow, beef, lamb), 102 (bike), 140 (computer), 154 (TV), 171 (plane); **Shutterstock** pp. 17 (spoon/Alex Starosel'tev), 24 (seasons/mandritou), 28 (woman/JP Chretien), (man/Studioloco), 30 (tall/Asier Romero), (average/pikselstock), (short/mimagephotography), (slim/Ebitkar), (average build/AlexNastya), (overweight/Gelpi), 31 (beard/Cookie Studio), (blonde hair/nakaridore), (straight hair/Roman Samborskyi), (grey hair/AJP), 34 (reception/SeventyFour), 36 (damon/aastock), (Elsie/India Picture), (Aid/Pathdoc), (Dave/kurhan), (Maggie/Djomas), (Paul/eurobanks), (Jane/natu), (Luke/Spectral Design), (Karen/Heather Shimmin), (James/Gelpi), (Jessica/all-about people), 37 (couple/Spectral Design), (Damon/aastock), 38 (laughing/WAYHOME Studio), 39 (Gemma, Sophie/WAYHOME Studio), 40 (couple/Bobex-73), 41 (Sophie, Gemma/WAYHOME Studio), 51 (Caroline/Artem Varnitsin), 53 (tennis/mtmphoto), 56 (scarf/Yuri Gulakov), (hat/Artem Varnitsin), (belt/Jian Zhongyan), (handbag/specnaz), (umbrella/Scrudje), (watch/Olga Popova), (shoes/Kutlavec Dmitry), (leather boots/Hmedida Ivan), (trainers/Den Rozhnovsky), (socks/valkoinen), (tights/kajonsak Tui), (glasses/Ajintai), (sunglasses/yod67), (gloves/Andrey Armyagov), (rings/AOME1812), (jewellery/Alina MD), (necklace/Alpay Erdem), 57 (Shoes/glamour/necklace/superphoto65), (watch/Hugh Adams), (boots/Hmedida Ivan), (trainers/Harry Cabance), (gloves/TinasDreamworld), (belt/

AlenKadri), (tights/Spinsv), (plastic ring/Nikos Andreou), 58 (red skirt/Velvet Eye), (blue skirt/lev radin), (orange handbag/Nadia Korei), (green handbag/Khmelnitskaia Evgenia), (tie/Sandrasky Dmitriy), (purple tie/jg_knight), (shoes/Ivan Popelyshko), (red shoes/azure), 59 (shop assistant/Zoriana Zaitseva), (large shirt/EveniAnd), 60 (bank notes & coins/Ubermensch Mart), (bank notes/Andrew Baker), (coins/UKRID), (debit card/robertindiana), (brown wallet/Ekaterina43), (purse/Bayanova Svetlana), (wallet/LomdetP), 61 (table setting/allstars), (hair products/Maria Francesca Moccia), (car/White Vector), 62 (toys/Billion Photos), 64 (diary/Panya Anusami), (old camera/finwal89), (cassette/Ensaper), (old tools/Olivier Le Queinec), 65 (fan/ScriptX), (electric fan/Ratthaphong Ekariyasap), (old phone/Adrio Communications Ltd), 68 (headache/Makistock), (toothache/PARIN.PSA), (stomach ache/napatsor aungsirochinda), (backache/Obprod), (cold/Samo Trebizan), (cough/Stockbakery), (flu/kryzhov), (temperature/Ermolaev Alexander), (sick/New Africa), 69 (ill/Rawpixel.com), 71 (rocks/Tatiana Popova), 72 (logging/Sheryl Watson), 73 (coal/Pail Oleg), (petrol/Novikov Alex), (electricity/TW Stock), (gas/Happyhunt), 78 (sunny/traXX), (cloudy/Suzanne Tucker), (raining/Inga Neilson), (windy/Rainer Fuhrmann), (snow/Alexander Denyanov), 79 (stormy/diamond), 80 (lion/Eric Isselee), (tiger/nattanan726), (elephant/Rich Carey), (bear/Alexander Chert), (bird/Dennis Jacobsen), (horse/marialt), (sheep/Aaron Amat), (pg/photomaster), (dog/Dora Zett), (cat/Timmary), (mouse/Eric Isselee), (fly, bee/trin-k), 89 (painting/Olena Yakobchuck), (timetable/PR Image Factory), (family/lakov Filimonov), (cinema/Nikolay Antonov), (holding up hands/fizkes), 90 (fighting/Anton Watman), (phone call/WAYHOME Studio), (waking up/YAKOBCHUK VIACHESLAV), (smelling rose/Arthit Premprayot), (asleep/Golubovyi), (smiling/Antonio Guillem), 92 (butter/akf fm), (cheese/Hong Vo), (eggs/nechaevkon), (sugar/Kasabutska Nataliya), (cake slice/ninikas), (cake/Brittney), (jam/Alter-ego), (biscuits/TairA), (olive oil/Agorobov), (olives/Africa Studio), (rice/RVillalon), (spaghetti/jamakosy), (chocolate/etortes), 93 (grocers/lakov Filimonov), (butchers/Minerva Studio), (bag/Pitchayarat Chootai), 94 (banana/vandycan), (orange/Valentin Volkov), (peach/Svetlana Serebryakova), (pear/Ines Behrens-Kunkel), (lemon/Valery121283), (strawberry/Maks Narodenko), (nuts/Svetlana Verbitckaia), 95 (potato/grey_and), (beans/ConstantinosZ), (onion/Lubava), (carrot/VictoriaKH), (peas/AmyLv), (cabbage/jamakosy), (mushroom/bergamot), (garlic/Artem Kutsenko), (lettuce/Gavran333), (tomato/Tim UR), (red pepper/SOMMAI), (peas/Africa Studio), (cooked peas/stevevart), 96 (sheep/Aaron Amat), (lamb/Tanya Sid), (chicken/Olhastock), (duck/Aksenova Natalya), (pig/Tekhmister), (chicken/IANG HONGYAN), (duck/bonchan), (pork/Mirek Kijewski), (ham/sripfoto), (bacon/Richard Griffin), (sausages/kzww), (salmon/TheFarAwayKingdom), (tuna/picturepartners), (squid/demarco), (prawns/aperturesound), (crab/LAURA_VN), 99 (waiter/lakov Filimonov), 100 (coffee/Photoongraphy), (black coffee/amenic181), (tea/Pavol Lys), (hot chocolate/Lilya Kandrashchik), (orange juice/r.classen), (cola/StudioBy The Sea), (sandwich/gowithstock), (brown bread/Richard M Lee), (toasted sandwich/Drozhdzina Elena), (roll/Ninetechno), (crisps/Mettus), (cakes/V_L), 102 (car/Rawpixel.com), (us/Sanit Fuangnakhon), (coach/Mikbiz), (van/TeamDat), (lorry/Sunday Stock), (motorbike/Dimitris Leonidas), (taxi/maradon 333), (underground/MirasWonderland), 105 (information/SHASAKPRACHUM), 107 (pointing/tofumax), 108 (directions/Haelen Haagen), 110 (closed sign/AOFTO), (toilets/Thas Pol Sangsee), (exit/Piotr Zajda), (sale/Sundry Photography), (no smoking/Lester Balajadia), (keep left/Focus Dsign), (no dogs/Britain), (out of order/Junpinzon), (no exit/Eddie H S Cho), (no parking/Mike Kuhlman), (do not feed/Richard Johnson), (no vacancies/Chiyat), (danger/AC Rider), (entrance/Stripped Pixel), (queue/Imrankadi), (mind the gap/Joseph Maguire), (keep off the grass/cmatill), 112 (castle/Daniela Miglionisi), (palace/Fulcanelli), (church/Carm Badkin), (museum/Anton_Ivanov), (art gallery/Sofia Voronkova), (market/Epel), (park/EarthScape ImageGrapy), (library/Ermolaev Alexander), (tower/prasit jmkajomkiat), (square/PHOTOCREO Michael Bednarek), (bridge/Carlos Bruzos Valin), 129 (chemistry/Picel Shot), (physics/Science Photo), (biology/New Africa), (maths/Billion Photos), (computer science/Aleksey Khilko), (geography/TonelloPhotography), (languages/Aysezgimeli), (exercise/Summersky), (design and technology/RomanR), 130 (uniform/Rawpixel.com), 131, 132 (man/AJR_Photo), 133 (doctor/Monkey Business Images), (plans/asobov), (hard hat/Nattanan Zia), (scales of justice/Billion Photos), (newspaper/DONOT6_Studio), (computer/Stanisik Vladimir), (businessman/michaeljung), 134 (police/betto Rodrigues), (business people/gigys25), (dentist/djrandco), (model/FashionStock.com), (shop assistant/Lstock Studio), (nurse/Monkey Business Images), (fashion designer/Neenad Aksic), (soldier/Misha Belly), (pilot/Angelo Giampiccolo), (builder/ALPA PROD), (teacher/Asia Images Group), (chef/Wavebreak Media), (cleaner/RossHelen), (lorry driver/Xenon), (hairstresser/lakov Filimonov), 136 (secretary/Dragon Images), (office/Africa Studio), (factory/You Touch Pix of Eu Toch), (hospital/Tyler Olsen), 138 (interview/Blue Planet Studio), 140 (computer screen/Russian Ivantsov), (keyboard/Ona_Ter), (mouse/AG-Photos), (printer/cigdem), (laptop/Sergey Peterman), (tablet/Umberto Shtanzman), (computer programme/Morrowind), (drop down menu/Semenchenko), 144 (mobile phone/Ellica), (phone charger/2Ban), 147 (sightseeing/RossHelen), (tent/Alexlukin), (painting/Syda Productions), 150 (bathroom/Artazum), (dining room/roakoma), (bus stop/den-arcticman), (DJ/FabrikaSimf), (railway station/CapuletBK), (art gallery/Anton_Ivanov), (address book/Photology 1972), (dishwasher/Leszek Glasner), 151 (phone/jeka), 153 (man/Africa Studio), (two people/Rommel Canlas), 154 (tent/Alexlukin), (fishing rod/Rvector), (weights/Valerij Ivashchenko), (guitar/Andrej Valadzenkou), (golf clubs/Sean Locke Photography), (computer game/Corodenkoff), (suitcase/omnimoney), (sketch pad/Nastya Sokolova), (cooking/Creative Images), (stamp album/279Photo Studio), (friends/Monkey Business Images), (DVDs/Ingrid Balabanova), 155 (ballet/Flamingo Images), 156 (goalkeeper/FOTOKITA), (baseball/zsoit-ueges), (basketball/Fabrizio Andrea Bertani), (swimming/jeep2499), (American football/Brocreative), (tennis/Q Stock), (table tennis/Stefan), (ice hockey/Sergey Mironov), (running/EverenKalinbacak), (motor racing/Ev.Safonov), (skiing/Andre Nikulin), (football/Herbert Kraty), 158 (orchestra/Ferenc Selezsenyi), 158 (Lang Lang/Maria Laura Antonelli/AGF), 159 (CD/Arkadi Bulva), 160 (love story/Bogoljub), (horror/Studio Canal), 161 (movie poster/Universal Pictures), 164 (reading/Motortion Films), 166 (passport/Ray Morgan), 167 (double room/Nasimi Babaev), (single room/Ruslana Maskenskaia), 168 (hotel/Alexkatov), 169 (key card/Pressmaster), (key/Zelikjo Radojko), 170 (ticket machine/illpazphotomatic), (check in desk/Tyler Olsen), 171 (businessman/Maridav), (seat belt/newsfoto), (flight attendant/Sorbis), (plane/tzuky333), (passport official/FrameStockFootages), (carousel/fizkes), 173 (taking photos/Stokkete), 179 (teacher/Dean Drobot), 180 Dean Drobot, 184 (wedding/Olya64), (Sonya/ProStockStudio), 188 (café/pickingpuk), 191 (taking off jacket/Cecilia Tomio), (light switch/Svetlana Cherkasova), (putting on shoes/BOKEH STOCK).

All illustrations by: CCS Digital Education.

Contents

List of spotlight boxes	6
Acknowledgements	7
Introduction	8

LEARNING ENGLISH

1 Classroom vocabulary	12
2 Grammar words	13
3 Using this book	14
4 Learning new words	16
5 Classroom activities	18

NUMBERS AND TIME

6 Numbers	20
7 Telling the time	22
8 Days, seasons and dates	24
9 Time words and phrases	26

PEOPLE

10 Parts of the body	28
11 Describing people	30
12 Physical actions	32
13 Personal information	34
14 Family	36
15 Personality	38
16 Relationships	40
17 Feelings	42

LANGUAGE SECTION 1 prepositions

18 Prepositions: time	44
19 Prepositions: direction	45
20 Prepositions: place	46
21 Prepositions: phrases	48
22 Word + preposition	50

EVERYDAY LIFE

23 Routines	52
24 Clothes	54
25 Accessories	56
26 Colours, size and appearance	58
27 Money	60
28 Shopping	62
29 Possessions	64
30 Crime	66
31 Illness	68
32 Injuries	70

THE WORLD AROUND US

33 Geography	71
34 The environment	72
35 Countries and nationalities	74
36 My country	76
37 Weather	78
38 Animals, insects and birds	80

LANGUAGE SECTION 2 verbs

39 Irregular verbs	82
40 <i>have got</i> and <i>have</i>	84
41 <i>make</i> or <i>do</i>	86
42 <i>get</i>	88
43 <i>see</i>	89
44 Verbs and nouns with the same form	90

Contents

FOOD AND DRINK

45	Shopping for food	92
46	Fruit and vegetables	94
47	Meat and fish	96
48	A restaurant table	97
49	Eating in a restaurant	98
50	In a café	100

GETTING AROUND

51	Vehicles and roads	102
52	Buses	104
53	Trains	106
54	Directions	108
55	Signs and notices	110

PLACES

56	My town	112
57	The countryside	114
58	Home	116
59	Kitchen	118
60	Bedroom and bathroom	120
61	Living room	122

LANGUAGE SECTION 3 adjectives and adverbs

62	Adjectives with prefixes	123
63	Adjective opposites	124
64	Common adverbs	126
65	Adverbs of manner	128

STUDY AND WORK

66	School subjects	129
67	The education system	130
68	University	132
69	Jobs	134
70	Describing jobs	136
71	Job interview	138
72	First day at work	139

TECHNOLOGY

73	Computers	140
74	Email, letters and the internet	142
75	Phoning	144

LANGUAGE SECTION 4 building words

76	-er / -or / -r nouns	146
77	-ing forms	147
78	Noun suffixes	148
79	Compound nouns	150

HOBBIES AND INTERESTS

80	Likes and dislikes	152
81	Free time	154
82	Sport	156
83	Music	158
84	Films	160
85	The media	162
86	Books	164

HOLIDAYS

87 Arranging a holiday	166
88 Hotels	168
89 Airports	170
90 Types of holiday	172

SOCIAL ENGLISH

91 Meet and greet	174
92 Ask for information	176
93 Requests and permission	178
94 Invitations and suggestions	180
95 Offers and saying sorry	182
96 Probably or possibly	184

LANGUAGE SECTION 5 link words and phrasal verbs

97 Link words 1	186
98 Link words 2	188
99 Phrasal verbs	190
100 Common expressions	192
Vocabulary building	194
Common irregular verbs	198
Answer key	200
A1 Oxford 3000 words which aren't keywords	235
Word list	236
Abbreviations used in the book	256

Spotlight boxes

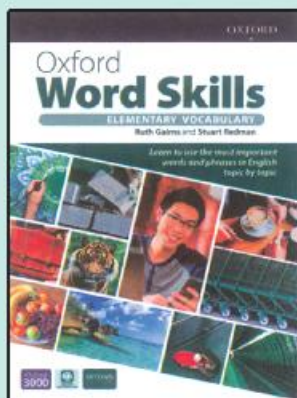
Title	Unit	Page	Title	Unit	Page
<i>a lot (of) and a bit (of)</i>	37	78	<i>have + noun</i>	60	121
<i>about and around</i>	6	20	<i>have got and have</i>	40	84
adverbs of frequency	23	53	<i>have to + verb</i>	88	169
adverbs of manner	65	128	<i>How long does it last?</i>	68	132
airports	89	170	<i>How long does it take?</i>	52	104
<i>allow and let</i>	55	110	<i>how much and how many?</i>	45	93
amounts of money	27	60	<i>hundreds, thousands, millions</i>	6	21
<i>another and some more</i>	49	99	<i>(I'm) sorry</i>	95	183
<i>at</i>	18	44	<i>I think so / I hope so</i>	96	184
<i>at first and in the end</i>	21	48	<i>information</i>	13	34
<i>at university, in hospital, etc.</i>	21	49	<i>injuries</i>	32	70
<i>be good at sth</i>	66	129	<i>introductions</i>	91	174
<i>be ill and sick</i>	31	68	<i>irregular verbs</i>	12	32
being polite	93	178	<i>irregular verbs</i>	82	157
<i>book/reserve sth</i>	53	107	<i>keep</i>	73	140
<i>boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.</i>	80	153	<i>last</i>	53	106
<i>both</i>	38	80	<i>lend and borrow</i>	93	179
<i>by</i>	83	158	<i>love/like/hate + -ing</i>	80	152
<i>café, bar, pub</i>	50	100	<i>meet and meeting</i>	70	137
capital letters	8	24	<i>menus</i>	49	98
<i>centre and card</i>	79	151	<i>might + verb</i>	87	166
comparatives and superlatives	14	37	<i>minutes to or past</i>	7	22
<i>either ... or ...</i>	67	130	<i>noun + shop</i>	28	62
<i>else</i>	100	193	<i>order of adjectives</i>	26	58
<i>employ</i>	69	134	<i>people from a country</i>	35	74
<i>ever</i>	39	82	<i>please and thanks</i>	50	101
<i>exams</i>	67	131	<i>plural forms of nouns</i>	48	97
<i>feelings and emotions</i>	17	43	<i>plural nouns and pairs</i>	25	56
<i>flat, house, home</i>	58	117	<i>position of adjectives</i>	63	124
<i>for and since</i>	9	27	<i>preposition + -ing form</i>	22	50
<i>friend</i>	16	41	<i>quite</i>	11	30
<i>get</i>	42	89	<i>really</i>	15	39
<i>good-looking, beautiful, etc.</i>	11	31	<i>record sth and a record</i>	83	159
<i>happen and take place</i>	30	66	<i>relationship</i>	16	40

Title	Unit	Page
<i>salad</i>	46	95
saying and writing dates and years	8	25
saying email addresses	74	142
saying phone numbers	75	144
saying what you eat	47	96
<i>see and watch</i>	43	89
<i>see you</i>	91	175
<i>should + verb</i>	31	69
<i>so and such</i>	72	139
<i>somewhere, anywhere,</i>	33	71
<i>nowhere, everywhere</i>		
<i>still</i>	97	187
suffix <i>-ion</i>	78	148
suffix <i>-ment</i>	78	149
<i>teacher, lecturer, professor</i>	68	133
<i>thing(s)</i>	4	16
<i>think about and think of</i>	22	51
<i>too and very</i>	26	59
<i>trouble</i>	86	164
<i>turn sth on/off</i>	59	118
uncountable nouns	45	92
<i>-in, -im, -ir, -un</i>	62	123
<i>used to + verb</i>	90	172
verbs used with vehicles	51	102
verbs with games and sport	82	156
<i>watch, see, listen, hear</i>	85	162
<i>What kind/type/sort of ...?</i>	84	160
<i>What's he/she/it like?</i>	15	38
<i>which or what?</i>	92	177
<i>whose and belong to someone</i>	92	176
word building	5	18

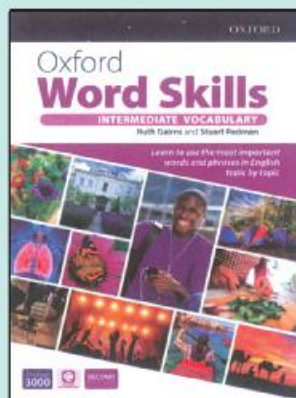
Introduction

What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

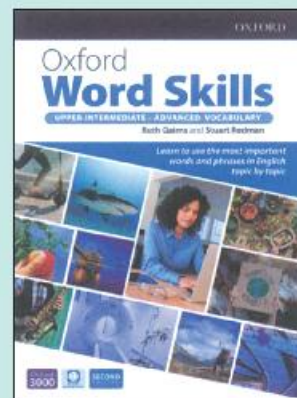
Oxford Word Skills is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



Level 1:
elementary/pre-intermediate
(CEFR levels A1 and A2)



Level 2:
intermediate (CEFR level B1)



Level 3:
upper-intermediate/advanced
(CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 3–10 units. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. People, Food and drink, Study and work, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositions, Adjectives and adverbs, Verbs.

The Elementary level also contains:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes
- a list of word-building tables
- a list of irregular verbs
- an answer key for all the exercises
- Word list – an index of all the vocabulary taught with a unit reference to where the item appears

Oxford Word Skills is directly linked to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the  to check the correct pronunciation.

What vocabulary is included?

At Elementary level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topics, e.g. clothes, free time, at the airport
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. inviting people, meeting and greeting
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. prepositions, verbs, adjectives and adverbs

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels increasingly add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative use of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000™. This is a list of 3000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English.





These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR levels (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level.
- The Upper-Intermediate/Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes B2 and C1 items from the enlarged Oxford 5000™ word list.

The Oxford 3000 word list is supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List™, containing just under 1,000 phrases considered important for students at these levels; and topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we are able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *main course* in a restaurant, or *hand luggage* at an airport. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we are also able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases at each level.

We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* for information on other meanings.

In the Elementary level, there is also a list at the back of the book of all the A1 items from the Oxford 3000 that have not been taught. The reason for this is that the Elementary level makes some assumptions about very high frequency level items which learners should already be familiar with. If there are words here that students do not know, they can go to the  to check the meaning and pronunciation.

Key words are sometimes repeated in later units in the book, but may not be highlighted in bold. If students do not recognize the word, they should look in the Word List to see where the item was introduced and defined, or use the . Such recycling is useful for learners.

To the teacher

How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

- **photographs and illustrations**



- **tables**

<p>on</p>	<p>a day</p> <p>on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday on Christmas Day</p>	<p>a date</p> <p>on September 10 on 6th May</p>
------------------	--	---

- **different types of text**

B Friends



WHY WE LIKE
each other

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got

GLOSSARY

each other She likes me and I like her.
→ We like **each other**.

get on (well) with sb have a good relationship with sb

personality what a person is like that makes them different from other people

meet pt met 1 see and speak to sb for the first time
2 go to a place and wait for sb:
We're **meeting** them at 7.30.

become begin to be sth: **become friends/ flatmates**

flatmate a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship

advice [U] an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem
give (sb) advice

see sb talk to or visit sb

Visuals obviously provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words being used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary (within a table or beside a text). As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value, for example, these spotlights on *else* and on the difference between *flat*, *house* and *home*:

SPOTLIGHT *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- *I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did.* (= all the other people)
- *The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**.* (= to another place)
- *We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat.* (= no other thing)


SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

SYN **apartment**

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the items. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it, etc.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer Key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. This is probably a better approach as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on / practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically as they tend to progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the ABOUT YOU / ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary. When they have finished an exercise, you will find that many of them – sentence completion and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
- Students should look out for the  **TEST YOURSELF** icons in each unit. When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a book, notebook or piece of paper) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- You will often notice the headings **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY**. These are personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these, but they make ideal pairwork activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer Key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

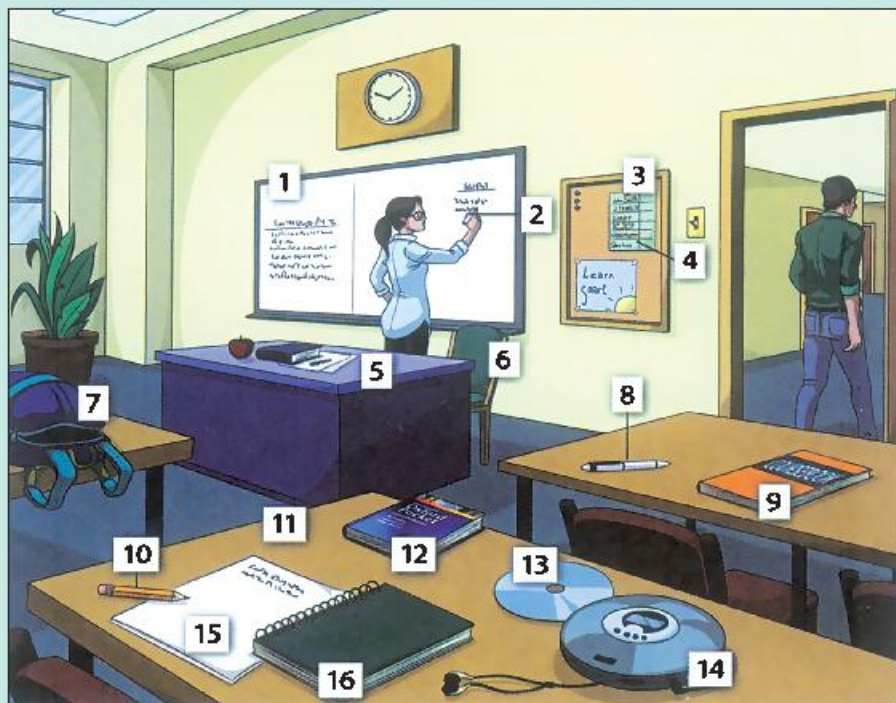


TEST YOURSELF How can students use the material on their own?

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the app, as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary, as well as further practice exercises. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module, which will help them use the book more effectively. Self-study learners can check their answers to exercises using the Answer Key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. One advantage of self-study learning is that students can select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their knowledge. In addition, they have the opportunity with this book to test themselves, as explained above.

1 Classroom vocabulary

- 1 whiteboard (ALSO board)
- 2 board pen
- 3 noticeboard
- 4 notice
- 5 desk
- 6 chair
- 7 bag
- 8 pen
- 9 coursebook
- 10 pencil
- 11 table
- 12 dictionary
- 13 CD
- 14 CD player
- 15 piece of paper
- 16 exercise book / notebook



1 Tick (✓) the things you can put in a bag. Put a cross (X) by the things you can't.

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ pen <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 2 desk <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 table <input type="checkbox"/> | 8 noticeboard <input type="checkbox"/> |
| ▶ board <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 3 notice <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 coursebook <input type="checkbox"/> | 9 dictionary <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 pencil <input type="checkbox"/> | 4 CD player <input type="checkbox"/> | 7 chair <input type="checkbox"/> | 10 piece of paper <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 Complete the words or phrases.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|
| ▶ notebook | | |
| 1 board | 3 notice | 5 piece of |
| 2 course | 4 exercise | 6 CD |

3 Write your answers.

- ▶ You sit on one of these.
- 1 The teacher writes on this.
- 2 You find the meaning of words in this.
- 3 You sit behind one of these.
- 4 You write in one of these.
- 5 The teacher puts information on this.
- 6 The teacher can play one of these.
- 7 You can put your books in this.
- 8 You study from one of these.

a chair

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write four things you've got at home, and four things you haven't got.

- ▶ I've got a dictionary.
-
-
-
-

- ▶ I haven't got a CD player.
-
-
-
-



TEST YOURSELF

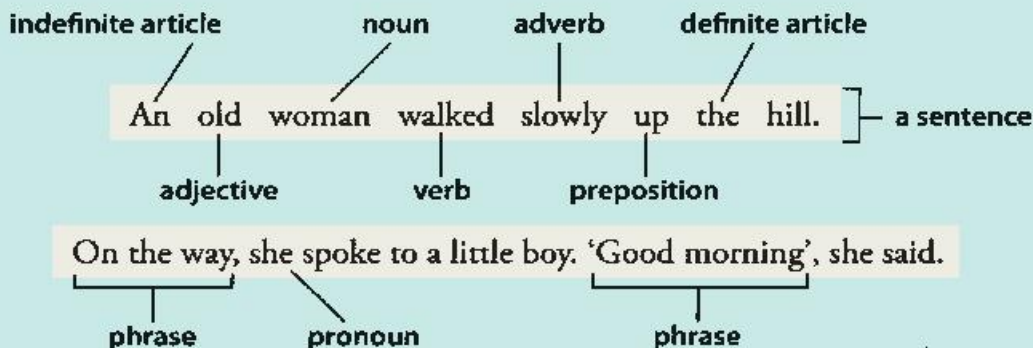
2 Grammar words

Read this short text.

An old woman walked slowly up the hill.
On the way, she spoke to a little boy.
'Good morning', she said.

- There are eight **words** in the first **sentence**.
- *Walk* is a **regular** verb. The **past simple** is *walked*.
- *Speak* is an **irregular** verb. The past simple is *spoke*, and the **past participle** is *spoken*.
(The past participle is used to form the present perfect: *Have you spoken to the doctor today?*)

Look at the different **parts of speech**.



1 Circle the correct answer.

- A and the are *adjectives* / *articles*.
- 1 A and an are *definite* / *indefinite* articles.
 - 2 Woman is a *noun* / *adjective*.
 - 3 Up is a *preposition* / *pronoun*.
 - 4 Have is a *regular* / *an irregular* verb.
 - 5 He and she are *nouns* / *pronouns*.
 - 6 Go and do are *verbs* / *nouns*.
 - 7 Badly and happily are *adverbs* / *adjectives*.
 - 8 Gone is the *past simple* / *past participle* of the verb go.

2 Find the answers for each sentence.

I have an English lesson now.	► a verb <u>have</u>	2 an indefinite article
	1 a pronoun	3 a noun
There's a young man from Rome in the class.	4 an adjective	6 an indefinite article
	5 a preposition	
This morning, he asked a question, and he spoke very quietly.	7 an adverb	9 a regular past simple
	8 an irregular past simple	10 a phrase
I think he's in the wrong class.	11 a noun	14 a pronoun
	12 a verb	15 a sentence
	13 an adjective	

3 What are the parts of speech for the other words in the text at the top of the page?


- hill noun
- 1 on
 - 2 the
 - 3 way
 - 4 spoke
 - 5 to
 - 6 a
 - 7 little
 - 8 boy
 - 9 she
 - 10 said



TEST YOURSELF

3 Using this book

Learn these words. You need to understand them to do the exercises.

tick	✓ (= yes OR correct)				
underline	<u>word</u>				
cross out	word				
circle	(word)				
complete	I <u>like</u> ice cream.				
correct/wrong	2 + 2 = 4 is correct (ALSO right). 2 + 2 = 5 is wrong .				
mistake	If sth is a mistake , it's wrong. e.g. English . SYN error				
correct	make sth right, e.g. English (wrong), English (right); tell sb what mistakes they are making				
true/false	'Paris is in France.' That's true . 'Paris is in Italy.' That's false .				
the same/different	<i>Small and little are the same</i> (small = little). <i>Small and big are different</i> .				
match sth (with sth)	Match 1–3 with a–c. 1 I come from <u> c </u> . a) English 2 I speak a little <u> a </u> . b) married 3 I'm <u> b </u> . c) Japan ✓				
missing	If sth is missing , it is not there. e.g. He comes Tokyo. (The word <i>from</i> is missing .) He comes <u>from</u> Tokyo.				
cover	put one thing over another thing 				
test sb OR yourself	If you test yourself , you ask yourself questions to find what you know and understand, e.g. <i>When I test myself on English verbs, I look at the verb, then say the meaning in my language.</i>				
table	This is a table: <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Question</th><th>Answer</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>What does awful mean? <small>NOT What means awful?</small></td><td>I don't know. <small>OR It means 'terrible'.</small></td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Question	Answer	What does awful mean? <small>NOT What means awful?</small>	I don't know. <small>OR It means 'terrible'.</small>
Question	Answer				
What does awful mean? <small>NOT What means awful?</small>	I don't know. <small>OR It means 'terrible'.</small>				
column	The table above has got two columns : one for questions and one for answers.				
put sth in order	put things in the right place or position: <i>Put these words in order to make a sentence.</i> <i>bed / I / early / to / went</i> <u>I went to bed early.</u>				

Short forms and symbols

- **TV** is a **short form** of *television*.
- A **symbol** is a sign or picture with a special meaning. e.g. = is a symbol that means **equals** OR **is the same as**: 2 + 2 = 4.

e.g.	is short for for example : <i>fruit, e.g. apples and bananas.</i>
OPP	is short for opposite : <i>Big is the opposite of small.</i>
SYN	is short for synonym (= a word that means the same as another): <i>small SYN little.</i>
etc.	You use etc. at the end of a list to show there are more things, but you don't want to say them all: <i>We bought apples, oranges, bananas, etc.</i> We can say etc. as 'etcetera' or and so on .
inf	means informal . If a word is informal , you use it when you are speaking to friends or people you know well, but not in serious writing or important letters. OPP formal
sth	is a short form of something .
sb	is a short form of somebody/someone .

1 Read the sentences and write your answers.

- Put a tick at the end of this sentence. ✓
- 1 Underline the third word in this sentence.
- 2 Circle the first word in this sentence.
- 3 Cross out the last word in this sentence.
- 4 What's the opposite of *big*?
- 5 What's a synonym for *fantastic*?
- 6 Correct the mistake in this sentence.
- 7 What's a more informal word for *thank you*?
- 8 Is it *true* or *false* that London is in Scotland?
- 9 What word is missing in this sentence?
- 10 Is eight thirty the same as half past eight?
- 11 Fourteen and twenty-seven is forty-three. Is that right or wrong?
- 12 Complete the next sentence. *Where* *you live?* ~ I live near the park.

2 Match the opposites.

- | | | |
|------------|-------|--------------|
| ► formal | c | a wrong |
| 1 the same | ..... | b opposite |
| 2 correct | ..... | c informal ✓ |
| 3 true | ..... | d different |
| 4 synonym | ..... | e false |

3 What do these short forms and symbols mean? Write your answers.

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|--------------|-------|
| ► OPP | opposite | 4 SYN | ..... |
| 1 e.g. | ..... | 5 = | ..... |
| 2 ✓ | ..... | 6 etc. | ..... |
| 3 <i>inf</i> | ..... |  |  |

4 Complete the sentences.

- Do days of the week have a capital letter? Yes, that's *correct/right*.
- 1 You use at the end of a list to show that there are other things but you are not going to say them all.
- 2 What word is in the next sentence? *I went bed early.*
- 3 If you put something in, you put it in the correct place or position.
- 4 12 and 12 is 26, isn't it? No, that's
- 5 = is a, and it means 'equals' or 'is'
- 6 I make lots of when I speak, but my teacher usually me.
- 7 After each page, I always myself on all the new words. I often look at the words, the meanings, and then try to remember and say the meanings.
- 8 *US* is a of the United States of America.
- 9 In this exercise, you have to *a* to *e* with 1 to 5.
- 10 *Hi* is a more way of saying *hello*.
- 11 San Francisco is the capital of America. True or?
- 12 is a synonym for *mistake*.
- 13 How many has this table got? ~ Three.

Word	Synonym	Example
family name	surname	Rodriguez
first name(s)	forename(s)	Maria Helena

- 14 We have to the correct answer, e.g. I looked at the board.
- 15 We have to the wrong answer, e.g. I looked at the board.



TEST YOURSELF

4 Learning new words

A How to learn words

Here are some **things** to **help** you when you are learning new words:

- Repeat words **out loud** two or three times to practise the **pronunciation**.
- **Write down** new words in a **notebook**. It's important to **keep a record** of them because it will help you to remember them.
- Write the **meaning** in English or your own language.
- Write an example sentence with the new word. This helps you to understand how to **use** the new word.
- Think of **situations** where you can use this word, and perhaps write them down.

GLOSSARY

help	do sth good for sb; make their life easier
out loud	so that other people can hear it
pronunciation	how to say a word pronounce v
write sth down	write sth on paper so you can remember it
notebook	a book that you can write in
record	notes of things that have happened, e.g. a record of money that you have spent keep a record (of sth)
meaning	The meaning of <i>small</i> is 'little'.
use	do a job with sth: <i>I use a key to open my door.</i>
situation	things that are happening at a certain time or in a certain place: <i>I was in a difficult situation at work today because my computer wasn't working.</i>

SPOTLIGHT *thing(s)*

We often use **thing(s)** to talk about an idea or a subject. It means we don't need to find the exact name for something.

- *We talked about lots of **things**.*
- *Art is the **thing** that interests me most.*

1 Complete the dialogues with one word.

- What's this word?
- 1 Was the homework easy? ~ *Beige*, but I don't know the correct pronunciation.
- 2 Did the others hear you? ~ No, it wasn't, but my father _____ me.
- 3 How do you know you've read that book? ~ Yes, I said his name out _____.
- 4 How did you remember her phone number? ~ Because I keep a _____.
- 5 Do you know the meaning of *awful*? ~ I wrote it _____.
- 6 I've broken my mother's favourite cup. I don't know what to say to her. ~ Yes, but I don't know how to _____ it.
- 7 Have you got a new computer? ~ What a difficult _____!
- 8 Did you talk about the holiday? ~ Yes, but I don't know how to _____ it yet.
- ~ Yes, and lots of other _____.

2 Complete the sentences. First, cover the text at the top of the page.

- Here are some ► things to help you when you are learning new words.
- 1 Repeat words _____ two or three times to practise the pronunciation.
- 2 Write down new words in a _____. It's important to _____ a record of them.
- 3 Write the _____ in English or your own language.
- 4 If you write an example sentence, it helps you to remember how to _____ a new word.
- 5 Think of _____ where you can use this word.

3 Answer the questions.

- Why do you do lots of different things when you are learning new words?
To help you to understand and remember them.
- 1 Why do you repeat words out loud? _____
- 2 Where can you write down new words? _____
- 3 Why is it important to do that? _____
- 4 How can you write the meaning? _____
- 5 Why do you write an example sentence? _____
- 6 What can you do after that? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Questions about words

Question	Answer
What does <i>awful</i> mean? (NOT What means awful?)	I don't know. OR It means 'terrible'.
What's this called in English? How do you say <i>fil</i> in English?	I can't remember. OR It's a spoon. Son. OR <i>Fils</i> is French for son.
Could you explain 'No vacancies'? (NOT Could you explain me ...?)	Yes. You see it in a hotel window. It means the hotel is full. There are no free rooms.
What's the difference between <i>hello</i> and <i>hi</i> ?	The meaning is the same, but <i>hi</i> is informal.
What's the opposite of <i>big</i> ?	Small.
How do you pronounce <i>tie</i> ?	It's like <i>my</i> .
<i>Eight</i> is pronounced like <i>night</i> . Is that right/correct?	No, that's wrong. OR That's not right. It's pronounced like <i>wait</i> .
How do you spell <i>apple</i> ? I'm not sure. (Is it one 'p' or two?)	It's A-double P-L-E. (double P = two Ps)

4 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | |
|--|-------|---|
| ▶ How do you <i>spell</i> your name? | c | a Very small. |
| 1 How do you say <i>cup</i> in German? | ..... | b It's what you say when you meet a friend. |
| 2 What's the opposite of <i>closed</i>? | ..... | c A-double N-A. ✓ |
| 3 What does <i>tiny</i> mean? | ..... | d It's like <i>wait</i> . |
| 4 How do you pronounce <i>weight</i>? | ..... | e No, they don't. That's wrong. |
| 5 Could you explain <i>hello</i>? | ..... | f I don't know. I only speak French. |
| 6 <i>Come</i> and <i>go</i> mean the same thing. | ..... | g Open. |

5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ What does *awful* mean? ~ Terrible.
- 1 What's this in English? ~ It's a frying pan.
- 2 How do you pronounce *what*? ~ It's hot.
- 3 you spell *eye*? ~ I'm not sure. I think it's E-Y-E.
- 4 What's the difference *bye* and *goodbye*? ~ *Bye* is more informal.
- 5 *Pen* is the same as *pencil*. Is that right? ~ No, that's
- 6 What's the of *interesting*? ~ Boring.
- 7 What *enormous* mean? ~ It means 'very big'.
- 8 Could you *EXIT*? ~ You see it on a door. It means you can go out there.

6 Write a question using each word.

- ▶ pronounce *How do you pronounce* *vegetable*?
- | | | | |
|---------------|---|------------------|---|
| 1 mean | ? | 4 explain | ? |
| 2 spell | ? | 5 opposite | ? |
| 3 say | ? | 6 called | ? |



TEST YOURSELF

5 Classroom activities

A Teacher instructions

OK, **repeat** after me.

When you finish, **compare** your answers **with** a partner.

I want you to write a **description** of someone you know.

Please **pay attention**.

Practise new words every day.

I'd like you to **make up** a story.

Listen to the conversation. Then answer the questions.

Listen, then **follow the instructions** in the book.

If you don't know the meaning, try to **guess**.

And don't forget to **do the homework**.

GLOSSARY

repeat	say or do sth again
compare sth (with sth)	think about things or people to see how they are different
description	words that tell what sb or sth is like or what happened describe v
pay attention	look or listen carefully
practise	do sth many times so that you do it well practice n
make sth up	say sth that is not true SYN invent
instructions	words that tell you what you must do or how to do sth. You follow (the) instructions .
guess	give an answer when you do not know if it is right guess n SYN have a guess
forget	If you forget to do sth, you don't remember to do it.
homework	work that a teacher gives you to do at home: <i>I'm doing my homework. (NOT I'm making my homework.)</i>

SPOTLIGHT word building

Many nouns in English are formed from verbs, and **-tion** is a common noun ending:

■ **instruct** (verb) → **instruction** (noun)

There is often a spelling change:

■ **describe** → **description**

■ **explain** → **explanation**

■ **educate** → **education**

1 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ▶ repeat it <u>c</u> | a talk to another student about it |
| 1 make something up <u>e</u> | b listen carefully |
| 2 follow the instructions <u>d</u> | c say it again ✓ |
| 3 pay attention <u>b</u> | d do it a few more times |
| 4 I forget <u>h</u> | e invent something |
| 5 compare with another student <u>a</u> | f say what it's like |
| 6 describe it <u>f</u> | g If you don't know, just think of an answer. |
| 7 practise it <u>d</u> | h I don't remember. |
| 8 have a guess <u>g</u> | i do what it tells you |

2 Complete the table. If you don't know the answer, have a guess.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
▶ discuss	<u>discussion</u>	instruct	.....
explain	.....	invent	.....
describe	.....	practise	.....
guess	.....	educate	.....

3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Were you listening? ~ No, the teacher told me to pay attention.
- 1 Can you say that again, please? ~ Yes, I'll repeat it.
- 2 Did you remember your homework? ~ No, I'm afraid I forgot to do it.
- 3 Did you know the answer? ~ No, but I had a guess.
- 4 How can I get better? ~ You have to practise more.
- 5 How do you know they're different? ~ We compare them.
- 6 Did you do the homework? ~ No, I forgot it. I'm sorry.
- 7 Did you invent that story? ~ Yes, I made it up.
- 8 Did you write a description? ~ No, I just described it to her.



TEST YOURSELF

B Student activities

Here are **activities** that students do in the classroom:

- read a **text**
- guess the meaning of new words from the **context**
- listen to **dialogues**
- **look up** the meaning of new words in a dictionary
- write a **paragraph** about something
- write a short **essay** on something
- **revise vocabulary** from another lesson
- do written **exercises**
- have a **conversation** about something in English
- have a **discussion** about something

GLOSSARY

activity	sth you do, perhaps often
text	a short piece of writing that you read
context	the words that come before or after another word or sentence
dialogue	words that people say to each other, often in a book or film
look sth up	try to find information in a book
paragraph	a group of lines of writing
essay	a short piece of writing about sth. It usually has three or more paragraphs.
revise	look at or do sth again
vocabulary	all the words that sb knows or uses
simple	easy to do or understand
exercise	work that you do to learn sth
conversation	a talk between two or more people
discussion	talking about sth seriously discuss v

4 Underline the correct answer.

- I like to revise / look up the vocabulary after I've studied it.
- 1 We read a text / context in class about pop music in the 1970s.
- 2 I don't need to write a lot – just one context / paragraph.
- 3 We practised the essay / dialogue in pairs, and the teacher listened to us.
- 4 The teacher sometimes asks us what contexts / activities we want to do.
- 5 I have to write a discussion / an essay for homework.
- 6 You can understand the meaning from the text / context.
- 7 We had a discussion / conversation in class about politics.
- 8 Everyone understood because it was quite simple / difficult.

5 Complete the sentences.

- We started the exercise in class and finished it for homework.
- 1 We studied the past tense last week and we're going to _____ it this week.
- 2 I didn't understand so I _____ it _____ in my dictionary.
- 3 Yesterday, I had a _____ in English with my American friend.
- 4 Yesterday in class we did three _____ on irregular verbs.
- 5 We listened to a _____, then practised it in pairs.
- 6 Speaking is my favourite _____ in class.
- 7 I'm sure you can understand this text: it's very _____.
- 8 We had to write an _____ in English about our holidays for homework.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often do you read texts in English? What do you read?
- 2 Do you often use the context to help you understand the meaning of a new word?
- 3 How often do you write an essay in English?
- 4 Do you often revise vocabulary? Why? / Why not?
- 5 What's your favourite activity when you are studying English, inside or outside class?
- 6 Do you like listening to dialogues? Do you think listening to them helps you to learn vocabulary?



TEST YOURSELF

6 Numbers

A 1-100

1	one
2	two
3	three
4	four
5	five
6	six
7	seven
8	eight
9	nine
10	ten

11	eleven
12	twelve
13	thirteen
14	fourteen
15	fifteen
16	sixteen
17	seventeen
18	eighteen
19	nineteen
20	twenty

21	twenty-one
22	twenty-two
23	twenty-three
24	twenty-four
25	twenty-five
26	twenty-six
27	twenty-seven
28	twenty-eight
29	twenty-nine
30	thirty

40	forty
50	fifty
60	sixty
70	seventy
80	eighty
90	ninety
100	a/one hundred

GLOSSARY

count	When you count, you say numbers one after another, e.g. 1-2-3-4-5. <i>I counted the chairs - there were 15. I can count in German.</i>
equal	be the same as sth: 2 + 2 equals (=) 4
minus	less; when you take away: 6 minus (-) 4 = 2
plus	and; added to: 4 plus (+) 4 = 8

SPOTLIGHT *about and around*

- about/around** = a bit more or a little less than
- How many students are there? ~ **Around/about** 20. (= 18? 19? 20? 21? 22?)
 - How much is it? ~ It's **about/around** €100.
 - How long is the programme? ~ **About/around** half an hour.

1 Write the middle number in words.

▶ 24	<u>twenty-five</u>	26	6 5	7
1 7		9	7 12	14
2 19		21	8 71	73
3 66		68	9 23	25
4 49		51	10 88	90
5 34		36		

2 Write the number in words using *about* or *around*.

▶ sixty-eight people	<u>about/around seventy people</u>	5 forty-nine dollars	
1 ninety-seven euros		6 seventy-eight people	
2 nine lessons		7 sixty-eight pounds	
3 thirty-one years		8 nineteen chairs	
4 forty-one students			

3 Do the maths. Write your answers in words.

▶ three plus nine equals	<u>twelve</u>	▶ ten minus six equals	<u>four</u>
1 twelve and seventeen equals			
2 forty-three plus thirty-four equals			
3 eighty-seven minus twenty-four equals			
4 seventeen plus fourteen equals			
5 sixty minus thirty-six equals			
6 seventeen plus twenty-eight equals			

4 Close your book and count from 1 to 20. Then count from 30 to 100 in tens.



TEST YOURSELF

B Large numbers

101	a/one hundred and one
140	a/one hundred and forty
200	two hundred (NOT two hundreds)
1,000	a/one thousand
1,050	a/one thousand and fifty
1,250	a/one thousand two hundred and fifty

2,000	two thousand (NOT two thousands)
100,000	a/one hundred thousand
1,000,000	a/one million
2,000,000	two million (NOT two millions)
1,000,000,000	a/one billion

In numbers over 999, write a comma (,) between:

- **thousands** and **hundreds**, e.g. 11,000
- **millions** and **thousands**, e.g. 3,000,000

SPOTLIGHT *hundreds, thousands, millions*

We use **hundreds**, **thousands**, and **millions** (with an 's') when we don't use a specific number.

- We saw **hundreds of** animals. (OR We saw **three hundred** animals.)
- There were **thousands of** people at the concert.
- The new shopping centre will cost **millions**.

5 Correct the mistakes in the spoken or written number.

- ▶ one hundred two one hundred and two
- 1 two hundreds
- 2 three hundred forty
- 3 one thousand and five hundred
- 4 two thousand six hundred fifty
- 5 seven thousands
- 6 42500

6 Write the next number in words.

- ▶ 243 two hundred and forty-four
- 1 999
- 2 5055
- 3 11,300
- 4 999,999
- 5 2,499
- 6 324,999
- 7 999,999,999
- 8 1,999

7 Write the sentences in a more general way. Use **hundreds/thousands/millions** or **about/around**.

- ▶ There are four hundred flats. There are hundreds of flats.
- 1 They said it was three thousand dollars.
- 2 It's forty-eight minutes.
- 3 There are six thousand of them.
- 4 I bought seventeen books.
- 5 We want to grow four hundred trees.
- 6 There are about ten to twelve-million people with this problem.



TEST YOURSELF

7 Telling the time

A What's the time?

What's the time?



It's four o'clock.



It's (a) quarter past four.
It's four fifteen.



It's half past four.
It's four thirty.



It's (a) quarter to five.
It's four forty-five.

What time is it?



It's five past six.



It's twenty past six.
It's six twenty.



It's twenty to seven.
It's six forty.



It's three minutes to seven.
It's six fifty-seven.

SPOTLIGHT minutes to or past

We use **minutes to** or **minutes past** with numbers which are not five, ten, fifteen, twenty or twenty-five.

- eight **minutes to** two (NOT eight to two)
- three **minutes past** six (NOT three past six)

1 Write the times in words. Don't use past or to.

- ▶ 3.10 three ten
- 1 9.15
- 2 10.25
- 3 3.35
- 4 6.45

- ▶ 6.15 six fifteen
- 5 5.50
- 6 7.20
- 7 2.30
- 8 4.40

2 Write the times in words. Use past and to.

- ▶ 12.30 half past twelve
- 1 7.15
- 2 9.30
- 3 11.35
- 4 3.50

- ▶ 6.40 twenty to seven
- 5 8.55
- 6 1.03
- 7 2.45
- 8 4.17

3 Look at the timetable and answer the questions. Write your answers in words.

Bath Spa	7.25 ▼	7.45 ▼	8.05 ▼	8.35 ▼	9.05 ▼
Swindon	7.57 ▼	8.17 ▼	8.45 ▼	9.07 ▼	9.42 ▼
Didcot Parkway	8.15 ▼		9.02 ▼		9.58 ▼
Reading	8.35 ▼	8.55 ▼	9.15 ▼	9.45 ▼	10.10 ▼
London Paddington	8.55	9.15	9.35	10.05	10.35

- ▶ When does the first train leave Bath? At seven twenty-five.
- 1 When does the first train after 8.00 leave Bath?
- 2 You want to be in London before 10.00. What time is the best train from Swindon?
- 3 When does the 8.05 train from Bath get to Didcot Parkway?
- 4 When does the 8.05 from Bath get to London Paddington?
- 5 When does the 9.05 from Bath get to Reading?

4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What time do banks open and close in your country?
- 2 What time do most shops open and close?
- 3 What time do most restaurants open and close?
- 4 When do most people start and finish school/work?
- 5 When do you have lunch?
- 6 When do you have dinner?



TEST YOURSELF

B Exact times and periods of time

9.00 a.m.	nine o'clock in the morning
12.00 p.m.	(at) midday / noon
9.00 a.m. – 1.00 p.m.	all morning
1.58	just before / nearly / almost two
5.00 p.m.	five o'clock in the afternoon
2.00 – 5.30 p.m.	all afternoon (ALSO all day from 9.00 – 5.00)
7.00 p.m.	seven o'clock in the evening
8.02	just after eight
11.30 p.m.	eleven thirty at night
12.00 a.m.	(at) midnight



sun



moon

5 Same or different? Write S or D.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------|--|-------|
| ▶ 8.45 p.m. / 8.45 in the evening | S | ▶ 3.00 p.m. / nearly 3.00 | D |
| 1 12.00 at night / midnight | ..... | 7 8.43 / nearly quarter to nine | ..... |
| 2 4.00 a.m. / 4.00 in the afternoon | ..... | 8 2.17 / quarter past two | ..... |
| 3 6.27 / nearly 6.30 | ..... | 9 12.03 p.m. / just after midday | ..... |
| 4 11.45 p.m. / 11.45 at night | ..... | 10 2.00 p.m. – 5.30 p.m. / all afternoon | ..... |
| 5 almost 7 o'clock / just before 7.00 | ..... | 11 8.30 / just before 9.00 | ..... |
| 6 9 a.m. – 1.00 p.m. / all day | ..... | 12 3.00 a.m. / three o'clock | ..... |

6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I can meet you in the morning.
- 1 She usually leaves before three.
- 2 Our train was late, and it was eight thirty when we arrived.
- 3 The party ends midnight, and then I'll get a taxi home.
- 4 It starts to get really hot around
- 5 We got there at about five o'clock the afternoon.
- 6 I usually go to bed around 11 o'clock night.
- 7 They are very busy, so they'll be at work day.
- 8 It was 7 o'clock when we got home.
- 9 The train leaves after 8.00, at 8.03.
- 10 She's there morning, from nine until lunchtime.

7 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ I get up just/seven o'clock. <u>before / after</u> | 5 I watch television evening. |
| 1 I'm meeting my friend midday. | 6 I go to bed midnight. |
| 2 I only drink coffee the morning. | 7 I don't get home before 10.00 night. |
| 3 I work day in a bank. | 8 It's three minutes to 8.00 – it's 8.00. |
| 4 I see my friends the evening. | 9 I always get up before 7.00, at 6.55. |



TEST YOURSELF

8 Days, seasons and dates

A Days, months and dates

DAYS of the WEEK	Monday Thursday	Tuesday Friday	Wednesday Saturday	Sunday
MONTHS of the YEAR	January May September	February June October	March July November	April August December
SEASONS (in Britain)	spring (March–May) summer (June–August) autumn (September–November) winter (December–February)			
SPECIAL DAYS	Christmas Day (25 December) New Year's Day (1 January) your birthday (the day you were born)			

SPOTLIGHT capital letters

Days and months have a capital letter.

Monday (NOT *monday*); **January** (NOT *january*)



spring



summer



autumn



winter

1 Put the words in the correct order. Write the numbers in the boxes.

- 1 Wednesday ☐ Saturday ☐ ► Monday ☐ Friday ☐ Tuesday ☐ Sunday ☐ Thursday ☐
 2 autumn ☐ spring ☐ winter ☐ summer ☐
 3 December ☐ March ☐ June ☐ February ☐ November ☐ January ☐
 October ☐ April ☐ July ☐ September ☐ May ☐ August ☐

2 Say the days of the week and the months in the correct order. Use the APP to help you with pronunciation. Practise saying the words.

3 Write the next day, month or season.

- | | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| ► May | <u>June</u> | ► Sunday | <u>Monday</u> |
| 1 Monday | ..... | 6 March | ..... |
| 2 August | ..... | 7 January | ..... |
| 3 spring | ..... | 8 autumn | ..... |
| 4 November | ..... | 9 Wednesday | ..... |
| 5 Friday | ..... | 10 June | ..... |

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Which month is your birthday?
- Which season do you like best? Why?
- Which day of the week do you like best? Why?
- What do you do on Christmas Day?
- What do you do on New Year's Day?
- What are two other special days in the year, and when are they?



TEST YOURSELF

B Ordinal numbers and dates

1 st	first	11 th	eleventh
2 nd	second	12 th	twelfth
3 rd	third	13 th	thirteenth
4 th	fourth	14 th	fourteenth
5 th	fifth	15 th	fifteenth
6 th	sixth	16 th	sixteenth
7 th	seventh	17 th	seventeenth
8 th	eighth	18 th	eighteenth
9 th	ninth	19 th	nineteenth
10 th	tenth	20 th	twentieth

21 st	twenty-first
22 nd	twenty-second
23 rd	twenty-third
30 th	thirtieth
31 st	thirty-first

SPOTLIGHT saying and writing dates and years

We can write the date like this:

■ 10 March OR 10th March OR March 10 OR 3.10.07 OR 3/10/07

We say the date like this:

■ What's the date today? ~ It's **March the tenth**,
~ It's **the tenth of March**.

Say the year like this:

■ 1995 **nineteen ninety-five** ■ 2006 **two thousand and six**
■ 2020 **twenty twenty** OR **two thousand and twenty**

5 Complete the words.

- ni__th
1 th__rd
2 twent__eth
3 fi__th
4 f__rst
5 eig__th
6 si__teenth
7 fo__rteenth
8 th__rteenth
9 s__cond

6 Answer the questions below, then practise saying the dates you wrote.

CALENDAR													
MARCH							APRIL						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S	S	M	T	W	T	F	S
				1	2	3	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
4	5	6	7	8	9	10	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
11	12	13	14	15	16	17	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
18	19	20	21	22	23	24	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	29	30	31				

What's ...

- the first Saturday in March? March the third / the third of March...
1 the second Tuesday in April?
2 the first Sunday in March?
3 the third Tuesday in April?
4 the third Wednesday in March?
5 the second Wednesday in April?
6 the first Friday in April?
7 the fifth Saturday in March?
8 the fourth Monday in April?

7 Write the dates/years as we say them.

- 6.9 the sixth of September
1 3.2
2 4.7
3 10.12
4 12.8
5 15.1
6 2022
7 21.5
8 30.11
9 22.4
10 2015
11 today's date
12 the date next Tuesday



TEST YOURSELF

9 Time words and phrases

A The past, the present and the future

Look at the **diary** and read the sentences below. It's midday on Thursday, 11 April.

APRIL					
MON 1	Moscow	MON 8	Jonah & Charlotte 7.30	MON 15	London
TUES 2	↓	TUES 9	pay phone bill	TUES 16	dinner with Scott 8.00
WED 3		WED 10	lunch with Ella 1.00 meet Logan 7.45	WED 17	↓
THUR 4	↓	THUR 11	TODAY cinema 7.15	THUR 18	Dr Holton 10.45
FRI 5	Bath	FRI 12	meeting 9.00-12.00 Wheeler's café 7.30	FRI 19	theatre 8.00
SAT 6		SAT 13	stay at Will's	SAT 20	Callum's birthday
SUN 7		SUN 14	↓	SUN 21	to Mum and Dad's for lunch

I was in Moscow **last week**.
I saw Jonah and Charlotte **three days ago**.
I had lunch with Ella **yesterday**.
I went out with Logan **last night**.
I'm going to the cinema **this evening**.

I have a meeting **tomorrow morning**.
I'm staying at Will's **this weekend**.
I'm going to London for three days **next week**.
I have a doctor's **appointment next Thursday**.
I'm seeing my parents **in ten days**.

GLOSSARY

diary a book where you write what you're going to do
last week (the past) = 1-7 April
this week (the present) = 8-14 April
next week (the future) = 15-21 April
ago before now; in the past

last night (NOT *yesterday night*)
yesterday evening (NOT *last evening*)
appointment a meeting at a fixed time, often with one person, for work or with a doctor/dentist, etc.
in ten days, etc. ten days, etc. from now

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ I was in Moscow last week. <u>T</u> | |
| 1 I got back from Moscow two days ago. | 6 I'm going to the cinema this afternoon. |
| 2 I saw Jonah and Charlotte this week. | 7 I'm going out tomorrow evening. |
| 3 I paid the phone bill three days ago. | 8 I'm seeing Scott in four days. |
| 4 I met Logan yesterday. | 9 I'm seeing the doctor in a week. |
| 5 I was in London last week. | 10 I'm going to the theatre next Friday. |

2 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ We saw them at the cinema yesterday <u>evening</u> . | 4 He wants to come week, not next week. |
| 1 She saw Paul about three days | 5 She can't come tomorrow morning. She's got a dentist's |
| 2 I won't forget Pedro's birthday - I wrote it in my | 6 I'm going to Italy week. |
| 3 She called me at 10 o'clock last | |

3 Look at the diary again. It is now Wednesday, 17 April. Write three more things about last week and three things about this week.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------|
| ▶ I had lunch with Ella a week ago. | 4 tomorrow morning. |
| 1 on Thursday evening. | 5 in three days. |
| 2 five days ago. | 6 this weekend. |
| 3 last weekend. | |



TEST YOURSELF

B Time words and tenses

There are some words about time in English that we often use with particular tenses.

ever	Do you ever swim in the winter? (present) Have you ever been to Moscow? (present perfect)
while	He often phones while I'm eating. (present continuous) They arrived while I was watching TV. (past continuous)
already	I was already there when they arrived. (past) Do you want lunch? ~ No thanks. I've already eaten. (present perfect)
recently	I went to the dentist recently . (past) I haven't seen Tom recently . (present perfect)
yet	I haven't done my homework yet . (present perfect) Have you seen Almodovar's new film yet ? (present perfect)
just	Where are the girls? ~ They've just left. (present perfect)
for	I've been in this job for three years. (present perfect)
since	We've lived here since we got married. (present perfect)

GLOSSARY

ever	at any time (any time now with the present tense, or any time before now with the present perfect)
while	during the time that (sth else is/was happening)
already	before now or before then (but we don't know exactly when). In negative sentences, we use yet , not already .
recently	not long ago (with the past simple), or in a short period of time before now (with the present perfect)
yet	used for talking about sth that hasn't happened, but you think it will
just	a very short time before now

SPOTLIGHT *for and since*

We use **for** with a period of time.

■ **for** two weeks, six months, etc.

We use **since** with a point in time in the past:

■ **since** 2003, **since** last year, **since** I came to England, etc.

We often use these words with the present perfect.

■ I've been at university **for** two years.

■ I've known Joe **since** 2018.

4 Complete the sentence with **for** or **since**.

I've known her ...

► for a year

1 2010

2 a long time

3 about three months

► since last year.

4 a couple of years

5 I got married

6 I was at university

5 Circle the correct answer.

► My girlfriend wants to go to Ibiza, but I've already / **yet** been there.

1 Paolo is in the classroom. I've **just** / **yet** seen him.

2 Lily arrived **while** / **ever** we were having lunch.

3 Do you **just** / **ever** go to concerts?

4 We haven't seen them **since** / **for** yesterday.

5 I haven't been to Turkey **recently** / **already**.

6 I want to work abroad, but I haven't found a job **already** / **yet**.

7 Have you **ever** / **yet** driven a bus?

8 I went to Spain **just** / **recently**. I stayed in Seville **since** / **for** two weeks.

6 Complete the sentences.

► He's been in that flat for three months.

1 Have you finished your English course ? ~ No, I've got another two weeks.

2 I was awake when Mum came into my bedroom this morning. I was reading.

3 Where's Sophia? ~ She has gone out. She was here a minute ago.

4 I haven't been to the dentist's I must make an appointment.

5 Do you go to that café when you're in town?

6 I haven't had lunch I'm really hungry.

7 George tried to phone me I was in the meeting.

8 We haven't seen Joe he left school.

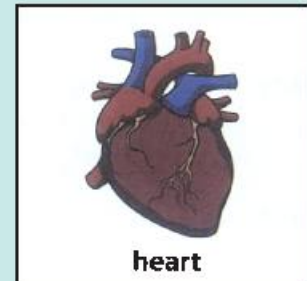
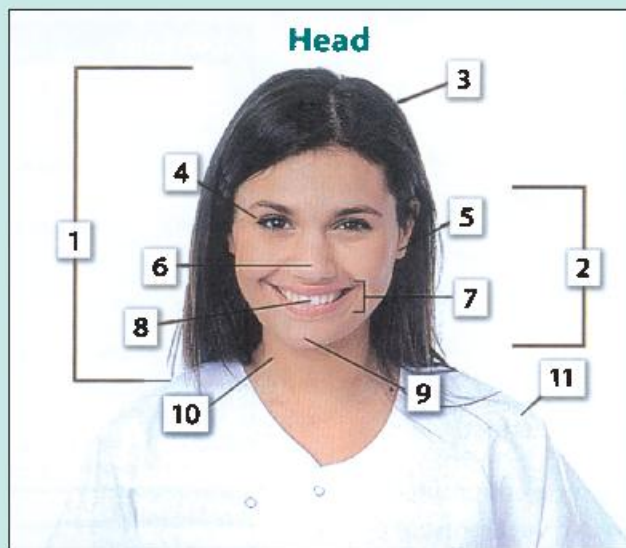
7 Translate the words in bold on this page into your own language.



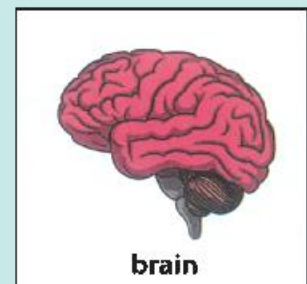
TEST YOURSELF

10 Parts of the body

- 1 head
- 2 face
- 3 hair
- 4 eye
- 5 ear
- 6 nose
- 7 mouth
- 8 tooth
(pl teeth)
- 9 chin
- 10 neck
- 11 shoulder



heart



brain

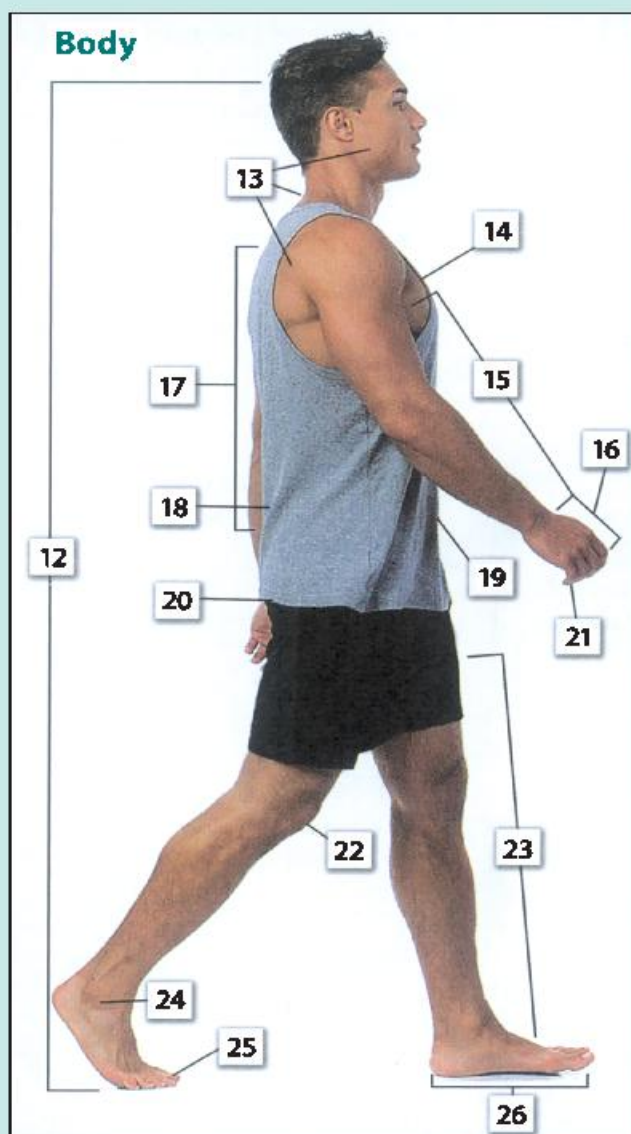


bone



blood

- 12 body
- 13 skin
- 14 chest
- 15 arm
- 16 hand
- 17 back
- 18 waist
- 19 stomach
- 20 bottom
- 21 finger
- 22 knee
- 23 leg
- 24 ankle
- 25 toe
- 26 foot
(pl feet)



GLOSSARY

- body** the total physical form of a person or an animal
- hair** [U] *My hair is long.*
(*My hairs are long.*)
- skin** [U] It covers the outside of a person or an animal's body.
- blood** [U] It is pronounced like *sun*.

1 Tick (✓) the words which are correct. Put a cross (X) by the words which are wrong.

I've got two ...	▶ eyes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ears <input type="checkbox"/>	backs <input type="checkbox"/>	ankles <input type="checkbox"/>
	▶ necks <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	waists <input type="checkbox"/>	legs <input type="checkbox"/>	heads <input type="checkbox"/>
	noses <input type="checkbox"/>	knees <input type="checkbox"/>	hands <input type="checkbox"/>	arms <input type="checkbox"/>
	feet <input type="checkbox"/>	shoulders <input type="checkbox"/>	mouths <input type="checkbox"/>	teeth <input type="checkbox"/>

2 Which word is different? Circle it.

▶ finger	arm	<u>waist</u>	hand	4 nose	bottom	chin	hair
1 foot	shoulder	toe	ankle	5 shoulder	chest	neck	blood
2 arm	hand	shoulder	stomach	6 teeth	legs	knees	ankle
3 neck	ears	nose	eyes	7 bone	brain	heart	finger

3 Complete the words.

▶ h <u>a</u> i r		
1 s _____ n	5 f _____ e	9 bl _____ d
2 n _____ e	6 h _____ d	10 br _____ n
3 b _____ k	7 te _____ h	11 bo _____ m
4 c _____ n	8 ch _____ t	12 st _____ h

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined vowels the same or different? Write S or D, and use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ chest	leg	<u>S</u>	▶ arm	ankle	<u>D</u>
1 bone	toe	.....	6 blood	foot	.....
2 hand	back	.....	7 foot	took	.....
3 head	heart	.....	8 stomach	bottom	.....
4 knee	feet	.....	9 shoulder	mouth	.....
5 tooth	soon	.....	10 stomach	blood	.....

5 Which part of the body comes between the other two parts?

▶ eyes	<u>nose</u>	mouth	4 chest	.....	head
1 hand	.....	shoulder	5 hair	.....	nose
2 waist	.....	leg	6 bottom	.....	ankle
3 ankle	.....	toes			

6 Complete the sentences with a part of the body.

- ▶ I put the soap in my hand.
- 1 I can't see – there's something in my
- 2 People have five at the end of each foot.
- 3 I have a problem with the middle of my left hand.
- 4 You sit on your
- 5 I usually wash my every two or three days.
- 6 I had a problem with my so I went to the dentist.
- 7 My is about 80 cm. It could be about 77 cm if I eat less.
- 8 We had a lot of sun and now the on my hands is a bit red, and they feel hot.
- 9 Can you stand on one?
- 10 I cut my finger with a knife, and there was a lot of
- 11 When my aunt was in hospital, she nearly died: her stopped for several minutes.
- 12 If you want to make good decisions, you have to use your
- 13 My brother broke a in one of his fingers.
- 14 Your skin covers the whole of your



TEST YOURSELF

11 Describing people

A Height and weight

How tall is she? She's ...

Is he thin or fat? He's ... How much does he weigh?



tall



average height



short



slim



average weight



overweight

GLOSSARY

height	(sounds like <i>white</i>) how tall sb is: <i>She's 175 cm tall.</i> OR <i>She's 175 cm in height. cm = centimetres</i>
weigh	<i>He weighs 60 kg.</i> OR <i>He's 60 kg in weight. kg = kilos</i>
slim	thin, but slim is more positive
weight	(sounds the same as <i>wait</i>) describes how heavy sb or sth is
put on weight	become heavier/fatter OPP lose weight

SPOTLIGHT *quite*

Quite is a very common word, and it means 'not very'.

- *She's quite tall.* (= not very tall but more than average height)
- *He plays the piano quite well.* (= not very well but better than OK)

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you are **overweight**, you aren't slim.
- Average height** means not fat and not slim.
- Quite thin** and **very thin** are the same.
- Put on weight** and **lose weight** are opposites.
- If someone is **fat**, they are **overweight**.
- The answer to *How much does he weigh?* is *200 cm*.
- How tall are you?* is a correct question.
- Average weight** means quite slim.
- Thin** and **slim** mean the same, but **thin** is more positive.
- If you **lose weight**, you get thinner.
- Average height** and **average weight** are the same.

T
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2 Complete the dialogues. Don't use the words in *italics* in your answer.

- Is he quite short? ~ No, he's very *tall*
- She's not tall or short, really. ~ No, she's average
- Are they quite *thin*? ~ Yes, they're both very
- Is he **overweight**? ~ Yes, he's getting a bit
- Is she very slim? ~ No, but she's slim.
- Max is looking a bit fat. ~ I know. He has 10 kilos.
- Is he about average weight? ~ I think so. He 75 kg.
- Scarlet isn't very tall, is she? ~ No, actually she's quite
- Ben is looking very slim. ~ Yes, he has a lot of weight.
- This box is very heavy. ~ Is it? How does it weigh?
- Is Willie very tall? ~ No, but he's tall.



TEST YOURSELF

B Features



beard

1 a good-looking man with dark curly hair and a beard

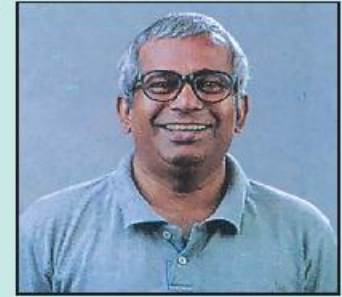


smile

2 a pretty teenager with long blonde hair and a lovely smile



3 a very attractive woman with straight brown hair



4 a middle-aged man with short grey hair

GLOSSARY

feature(s)	an important part of sth, e.g. <i>your face, your eyes</i>
teenager	a person between the ages of 13 and 19 teenage <i>adj</i>
lovely	beautiful or very nice: <i>a lovely smile/dress</i>
smile	(see picture 2) Smile is also a verb: <i>He smiled at me.</i>
middle-aged	about 45 to 60 years old

SPOTLIGHT *good-looking, beautiful, etc.*

For a woman, we can say **beautiful** or **(very) good-looking/ attractive**. For a man, we usually say **good-looking** or **handsome**. For girls especially, we can say **beautiful**, but we often use **pretty**.

3 Look at the pictures. True or false? Write T or F. If false, correct the mistake.

- ▶ The girl isn't a teenager. F - She is a teenager
- 1 She's got a lovely smile.
- 2 She's got dark hair.
- 3 It's also quite short.
- 4 The young man isn't handsome.
- 5 He's got dark hair.
- 6 The woman has got blonde hair.
- 7 Her hair is straight.
- 8 She's beautiful.
- 9 The other man is old.
- 10 His hair is dark.

4 Complete the words in the texts.

My sister (15): ▶ is a teenager. She's very (1) pr....., with (2) d..... brown hair, and she has a lovely (3) sm....., which is one of her best (4) fe.....

My brother (18): is also a (5) te..... He's very (6) g.....-i..... and he knows it. He's got short (7) st..... hair, and no (8) be.....

My father (52): is (9) m.....-a..... now. I think he's still a (10) ha..... man, but his hair is quite (11) gr.....

My mother (50): has short (12) bl..... hair. She was (13) be..... when she was young and she is still very (14) at.....

Me (20): I am no longer a (15) t..... boy. I'm different from my sister because I've got (16) f..... hair, and different from my brother because my hair is (17) cu..... And I'm also different from them because, unfortunately, I'm not very (18) g.....

5 ABOUT YOU Write two or three sentences describing yourself using some of the vocabulary from this page. Then look at the pictures again. Do you think the four people are beautiful/handsome/attractive? If possible, talk to someone else about them.



TEST YOURSELF

12 Physical actions

A Using your body



sit down
pt sat down



stand up
pt stood up



walk



run
pt ran



fall over
pt fell over



ride
pt rode



climb



jump



lie down
pt lay



dance



get on
pt got on



get off
pt got off

SPOTLIGHT irregular verbs

Many of the verbs above are **irregular**: the past simple is not formed by adding *-ed*. There is a list of the past simple and past participle forms of all the irregular verbs in the book on page 198. See also Unit 39.

1 Write the present form of the verbs.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|------------|-------|
| ▶ walked | <u>walk</u> | 4 stood up | ..... |
| 1 lay down | ..... | 5 sat down | ..... |
| 2 fell over | ..... | 6 got on | ..... |
| 3 rode | ..... | 7 ran | ..... |

2 Complete these sentences with verbs from above.

- ▶ When you go to bed, you do this. lie down
- 1 When you hear music and you're happy, you do this.
- 2 When you're tired, you do this. or
- 3 When you don't see something on the floor in front of you, you could do this.
- 4 When you go on a bike, you do this.
- 5 When you're waiting at the bus stop and the bus arrives, you do this.

3 Complete the sentences. You need the past simple in sentences 6–9.

- ▶ I sat down at my desk and worked for two hours.
- 1 The children have to when the teacher comes into the classroom.
- 2 I often to work in the summer – it's only twenty minutes on foot.
- 3 I want to Mount Kilimanjaro next year.
- 4 Do you often when you go to clubs?
- 5 The doctor asked me to on the bed.
- 6 The boys into the swimming pool.
- 7 She her bike to school this morning.
- 8 I was late, so I to the bus stop, but I over and hurt my leg.
- 9 She the bus, went into the station and got a train.



TEST YOURSELF

B Using your hands



push



pull



carry



hold *pt* held



pick sth up



put sth down *pt* put



break *pt* broke



give *pt* gave



close/shut *pt* shut
OPP open



drop



throw *pt* threw



catch *pt* caught

4 Cover the pictures and underline the correct answers.

- ▶ You can drop a glass / a house.
- 1 You can open a door / a light.
- 2 You can catch a car / a ball.
- 3 You can throw a book / a house.

- 4 You can push the sky / a person.
- 5 You can hold a dictionary / a country.
- 6 You can break some juice / a pencil.
- 7 You can pick up a car / a bicycle.

5 Do you need two hands to do these things? Or can you do them with one hand?

- ▶ shut a dictionary 1
- ▶ give someone five dictionaries 2

- 1 pick up a cup drop a cup
- 2 pick up a TV turn on a TV
- 3 break a bottle open a bottle
- 4 pull a person carry a person

- 5 throw a ball catch a ball
- 6 drop a ruler break a ruler
- 7 carry a door close a door
- 8 pick up a baby hold a baby

6 Complete the sentences with suitable verbs from above.

- ▶ I opened the garage door and then three of us pushed the car out.
- 1 It was cold, so he the window.
- 2 She the cat and it in its bed.
- 3 I'm afraid I your best glass and it broke. I'm really sorry.
- 4 Four of us the boat out of the sea and then it along the beach.
- 5 I the baby to Mum and she it in her arms.
- 6 I the ball to my brother but he dropped it on the floor.
- 7 The box is very heavy. I can't it to the car.



TEST YOURSELF

13 Personal information

A Facts

Sandro is studying English in Cambridge. The **receptionist** needs some **information**.

- Receptionist** What's your family name? (OR What's your surname?)
Sandro Bertoli.
Receptionist And your first name?
Sandro Sandro.
Receptionist OK, Sandro. What's your address and postcode?
Sandro 45 Alfred Road, CB2 4TX.
Receptionist So, Sandro, where are you from? (OR Where do you come from?)
Sandro Italy.
Receptionist Whereabouts in Italy? (OR Where in Italy exactly?)
Sandro Pisa.
Receptionist What do you do in Pisa? (OR What's your job?)
Sandro I'm a doctor.
Receptionist And are you married or single?
Sandro I'm married. My wife is German.
Receptionist And how old are you?
Sandro I'm 34.



SPOTLIGHT **information**

Information [U] means facts about people or things, e.g. name, address, etc. **Information** is uncountable. Don't say *an information* OR *informations*.
Personal information is information about one person.

1 In each sentence, one word is in the wrong place. Correct it.

- Are married you?
 1 I need some information personal. 3 Do what you do? 5 How old you are?
 2 Where do come from you? 4 What your postcode is? 6 Where the receptionist is from?

2 Write the questions with different words but with the same meaning.

- What's your family name? What's your surname ?
 1 Where are you from? Where do ?
 2 Whereabouts in Poland? Where in Poland ?
 3 What's your job? What do ?
 4 Where do you live? What's your ?
 5 What's your age? How ?

3 Complete the questions in the table.

QUESTIONS	ANSWERS	ABOUT YOU
► What's your <u>name</u> ?	Kovács.	.....
1 And your name?	Zsuzsa.	.....
2 Where are you ?	Hungary.	.....
3 in Hungary?	The capital, Budapest.	.....
4 your address?	Tarcali utca 27.	.....
5 And the ?	1113.	.....
6 And what you do?	I'm an engineer.	.....
7 Are you ?	No, I'm single.	.....
8 How are you?	I'm 27.	.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in the table, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Talking about your English course

Sandro has been in Cambridge now for two months and is talking to the receptionist again.

- Receptionist** So, Sandro. What's your English **level** now?
Sandro I'm intermediate.
Receptionist Yes, you **communicate** very well.
Sandro Thank you, but I still need to **improve**.
Receptionist Why's that?
Sandro Because I want to work **abroad** and help people in other countries. For that, my English has to be **perfect**.
Receptionist So **how long** are you **planning** to stay here?
Sandro I don't know.
Receptionist But you're enjoying your **course**?
Sandro Yes, it's **great**. I've made a lot of **progress**.

GLOSSARY

level	how high sth is, e.g. <i>an elementary/intermediate/advanced level of English</i>
communicate (with sb)	be able to say what you mean, or have a conversation with other people
improve	become better improvement <i>n</i>
abroad	in another country
help	do sth good for sb so their life is easier
perfect	so good it can't be better
how long?	how much time? (NOT <i>how long time?</i>)
plan (to do) sth	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it
course	a number of lessons
great	very good or nice SYNS fantastic, wonderful
progress	improvement

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- If you **help** someone, you make their life easier. T
- Perfect** means the same as good.
- Plan to do something** is the same as decide what to do and how to do it.
- Improve** means to make something different.
- Abroad** means in another country.
- A language course** means the same as *a language level*.
- If you **communicate** something, you are able to say what you mean.
- How long?** means the same as *how far?*
- Great** means the same as *fantastic*.

6 Agree with the first speaker, but replace the words in *italics* with different words.

- The course is *really good*. ~ Yes, it's great.
- She's *getting better*. ~ Yes, she's
- Her English is *very good* now. ~ Yes, it's at a high
- She can *express ideas* very well. ~ Yes, she
- She wants to work *in another country*. ~ Yes, she wants to go and work
- They're *thinking about* going to Spain. ~ Yes, they're to go there.
- I thought it was *fantastic*. ~ Yes, it was
- He's *really improving*. ~ Yes, he's making a lot of
- He wants to *make people's lives better*. ~ Yes, he wants to

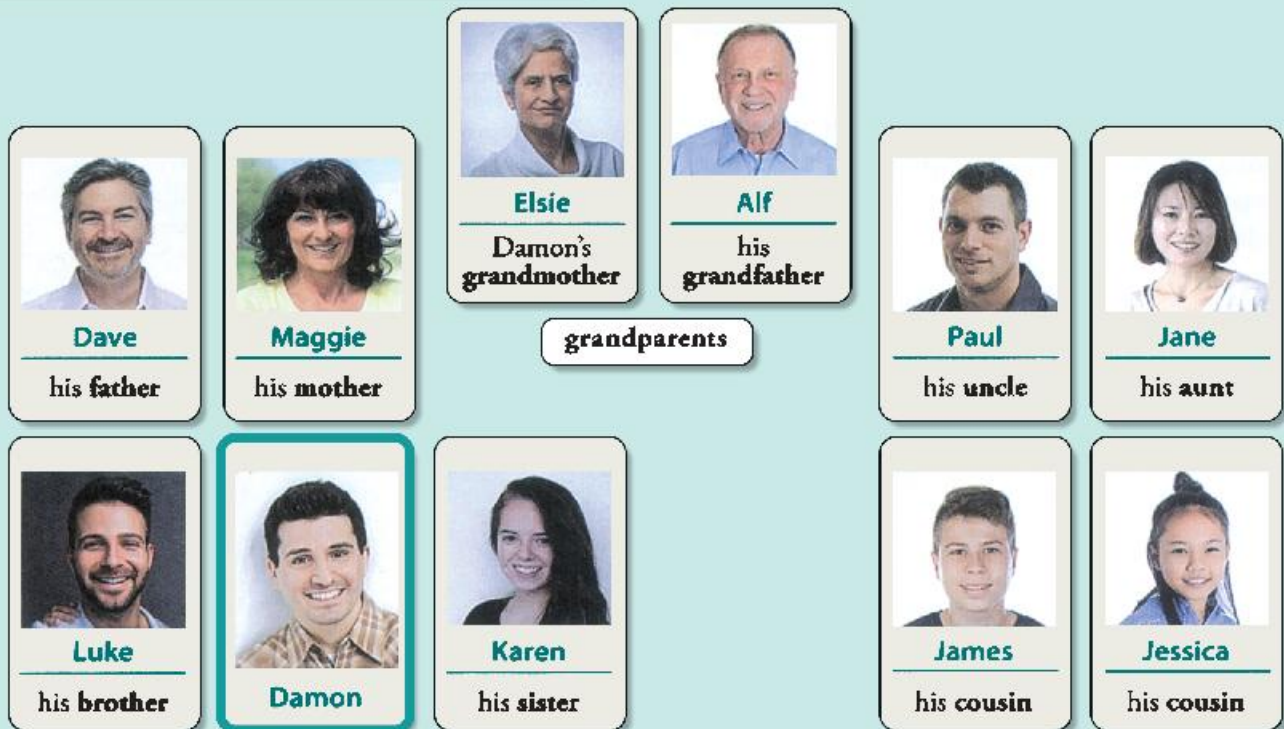
7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What's your English level?
- How well do you communicate in English?
- Do you want or need to improve?
- Are you making progress?
- Are you planning to go to an English-speaking country? If so, where?
- Would you like to work abroad?



TEST YOURSELF

A Damon's family tree



All the people here are Damon's **relatives**.
 Luke is Dave and Maggie's **son**.
 Karen is Dave and Maggie's **daughter**.
 Maggie is Dave's **wife**.
 Dave is Maggie's **husband**.
 Elsie and Alf are Maggie's **parents**.

Dave is Paul's **brother-in-law**.
 Jane is Maggie's **sister-in-law**.
 James is Maggie's **nephew**.
 Karen is Paul's **niece**.
 Luke is Elsie's **grandson**.
 Jessica is Elsie's **granddaughter**.

1 Complete the sentences about Damon's family.

- ▶ Paul is Elsie and Alf's son.
- 1 Maggie is Elsie's
- 2 Luke is Paul's
- 3 Jessica is Maggie's
- 4 Maggie is Jane's
- 5 Karen is Jessica's

- 6 Elsie and Alf are Damon's
- 7 Paul is Jane's
- 8 Elsie is Jessica's
- 9 Paul is Luke's
- 10 Maggie is Jessica's
- 11 James, Dave and Alf are Damon's

2 Complete the table.

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
▶ father	<u>mother</u>	brother-in-law	.....
brother	grandfather	.....
husband	grandson	.....
nephew	cousin	.....
relative	parent	.....
son	uncle	.....

3 ABOUT YOU Draw your family tree. Write the names and *brother, sister, uncle, etc.*



TEST YOURSELF

B Family history



My parents **got married** 25 years ago. Two years later, my brother Luke **was born**. Then I was born a year after that. I've also **got** a sister, Karen, who is two years younger than me, so **there are five of us** in my family. Luke has got a **girlfriend**, Amy, and they live in a small flat. Karen and I still live with **Mum and Dad**. We **spend a lot of time together**.



GLOSSARY

get married	become husband or wife with sb OPP get divorced stop being husband or wife with sb
be born	start your life
have got	have
there are five of us	(NOT <i>We are five.</i>)
girlfriend	a girl or woman who sb has a romantic relationship with ALSO boyfriend
mum inf	mother
dad inf	father
spend time with sb together	be with sb and do things with them with each other: <i>My family all live together in the same house.</i>

SPOTLIGHT comparatives and superlatives

- *Damon is 22 (years old).* (**NOT** *Damon is 22 years.*)
- *His brother is older than him.* He's 23.
- *His sister is younger than him.* She's 20.
- *Luke is the oldest in the family.*
- *Karen is the youngest in the family.*

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ▶ Damon is Luke's older brother. <u>F</u> | 6 Damon is Amy's boyfriend. |
| 1 Damon's parents are divorced. | 7 There are four in Damon's family. |
| 2 Damon was born after Luke. | 8 Karen is the youngest in the family. |
| 3 Luke is younger than Karen. | 9 Damon and Karen are often together. |
| 4 Luke and Amy live together. | 10 Luke is Damon's dad. |
| 5 Luke's mum has three children. | |

5 Write the words in the correct order.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| ▶ his / divorced / are / parents | <u>His parents are divorced.</u> |
| 1 born / I / 2001 / in / was | ..... |
| 2 spend / of / together / we / lot / time / a | ..... |
| 3 older / my / than / girlfriend / me / is | ..... |
| 4 in / six / my / of / are / family / there / us | ..... |
| 5 the / family / I / youngest / in / my / am | ..... |
| 6 brother / older / younger / an / 've got / I / a / and / sister | ..... |

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- How many people are there in your family?
- When were you born?
- Have you got any brothers and sisters? If yes, are they older or younger than you?
- In your family, who do spend a lot of time with?
- Do you all live together?



TEST YOURSELF

15 Personality

A What's he/she like?

Word	Example	Meaning
friendly	<i>The students in my class are all really friendly. It's great.</i>	happy to meet and talk to other people OPP unfriendly
kind	<i>He visited me in hospital, which was really kind.</i>	friendly and good to other people
nice	<i>I met Charlie on holiday, and he's a really nice guy.</i>	kind and friendly (a very common word in spoken English)
fun	<i>I love Caitlin; she's great fun.</i>	sb or sth that makes you happy Good/great fun is common.
funny	<i>Josh makes me laugh – he's a really funny man.</i>	making you laugh 
relaxed	<i>I felt very relaxed after my holiday.</i>	calm and not worried
clever	<i>Tom is really clever – the best student in our class.</i>	quick at learning and understanding things SYN intelligent OPP stupid
patient	<i>My boyfriend is often late, but I'm very patient.</i>	able to stay calm and not get angry when you are waiting
strange	<i>He's a strange man – I never know what he's thinking.</i>	unusual or surprising

SPOTLIGHT What's he/she/it like?

We use this question to find out more about somebody/something.

- **What's Jack like?** ~ He's very nice. (**NOT** He's like very nice.)
- **What was the teacher like?** ~ She was good fun.

1 Complete the words.

▶ fun

1 n____e

2 f____y

3 c l____r

4 s t____e

5 f____y

6 p____t

7 la____h

8 r____l____x____d

2 Cover the table, then answer the questions.

What's ...

- ▶ a synonym for nice? friendly
- 1 the opposite of friendly? _____
- 2 a synonym for clever? _____
- 3 the opposite of clever? _____

What do you call someone who ...

- 4 is able to learn quickly? _____
- 5 makes you laugh? _____
- 6 is able to wait for things? _____
- 7 is calm and doesn't worry? _____

3 Complete the conversations.

- What's _____ Alex like? ~ Oh, he's very funny. We _____ a lot when we're together.
- What are Ana's parents _____? ~ Well, her mother's great _____. I like her very much. But I never know what to say to her father – he's very _____.
- _____ was your grandmother like? ~ She was very _____: she always helped everyone. And she was _____ too: she went to university.

4 ABOUT YOU Write the names of people you know who are:

- kind _____ very friendly _____ patient with you _____
good fun _____ intelligent _____ strange _____



TEST YOURSELF

B We like each other



Gemma



Sophie

WHY WE LIKE

each other

Gemma: I met Sophie at university. I was **on my own** in the café, and she came and talked to me. She's like that. What's interesting is that we're **completely different**. She has a very **active social life** and meets lots of new people. I'm very **quiet** and **serious**. But it didn't **matter**. We became friends and **shared a flat** for two years. I'm **tidy** and did most of the housework. Sophie's quite **lazy**, but she is a great cook and a **really** nice person.

GLOSSARY

each other	She likes me and I like her. = We like each other .
on my own	not with other people SYN alone
completely different	totally different; different in every way
active	busy and able to do a lot of things
social life	going out with friends
quiet	Somebody who is quiet doesn't say very much.
serious	A serious person thinks a lot and doesn't laugh much.
matter	be important; it doesn't matter = it's not important
share a flat	live in the same flat as another person
tidy	A tidy person likes everything to be in the right place. OPP untidy
lazy	A lazy person doesn't like working. OPP hard-working

SPOTLIGHT *really*

Really is important in spoken English. It means 'very', and you can use it before most adjectives.

■ I'm in a **really** nice class. • She was **really** lazy.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sound the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|--|----------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ social / <u>doesn't</u> | <u>D</u> | 3 alone / social | ..... |
| 1 <u>other</u> / own | ..... | 4 completely / <u>other</u> | ..... |
| 2 hard <u>working</u> / <u>doesn't</u> | ..... | 5 <u>completely</u> / <u>serious</u> | ..... |

6 Read the text again. True or false? Write T or F.

- | | | | |
|--|----------|------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ Sophie likes cooking | <u>T</u> | 5 Gemma is really lazy. | ..... |
| 1 Gemma was alone when she met Sophie. | ..... | 6 Sophie goes out a lot. | ..... |
| 2 Gemma and Sophie are similar. | ..... | 7 Gemma's untidy. | ..... |
| 3 Gemma doesn't say very much. | ..... | 8 It was a problem that they | ..... |
| 4 They lived together at university. | ..... | were completely different. | ..... |

7 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ I never put things away. I'm very <u>untidy</u> . | 3 We wanted to a flat together. |
| 1 When we met, I was on my and wanted someone to talk to. | 4 Do you want me to help? ~ No, it doesn't |
| 2 I've always had an active social : I go out most nights. | 5 My sister and I are different. |
| | 6 We've always liked each |

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Questionnaire

What are you like?

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Are you tidy or untidy? | 4 Are you serious? |
| 2 Are you hard-working or a bit lazy? | 5 Do you have an active social life? |
| 3 Are you quiet? | 6 Do you like being on your own? |



TEST YOURSELF

16 Relationships

A Romantic relationships

Max is my **partner**, and we have a very good **relationship**. We've **been together** for about two years. I started to **go out with** him after I came to London. We met at my **ex-boyfriend's** house, and because Max lived near me, it was easy for us to **get to know** each other. Now Max wants us to **get married** and **have a baby**, but I'm not sure. I have friends who are happily married, but I also know married **couples** who have **separated** and are now **divorced**. I don't want that to happen to us.



GLOSSARY

partner	sb you have a romantic relationship with (your <i>boyfriend, girlfriend, wife or husband</i>)	get to know sb	learn more about sb and become friends
be together	be in a romantic relationship	get married	become husband or wife with sb
go out with sb	have a romantic relationship with sb	have a baby	become a new mother/father
ex-boyfriend	a person who was your boyfriend in the past ALSO ex-girlfriend, ex-husband , etc.	couple	two people, often in a romantic relationship
		separate	stop being together
		be divorced	married in the past but not now

SPOTLIGHT *relationship*

You have a **relationship** with somebody. It can be good or bad.

- I have a **good relationship** with my classmates.
- He has a **difficult relationship** with his father.

We often talk about **romantic relationships** with wives, boyfriends, etc.

1 Make six more phrases using words from the box.

get to together ✓	ex- know	be ✓ somebody	get boyfriend	go out boyfriend	have with somebody	romantic	a baby married	relationship
----------------------	-------------	------------------	------------------	---------------------	-----------------------	----------	-------------------	--------------

► *be together*

.....

.....

.....

2 Write the words in the correct order.

- get / to / they / married / want *They want to get married*
- 1 baby / last / had / a / year / they
- 2 separated / January / they / in
- 3 have / good / a / very / relationship / we
- 4 boyfriend / you / how / your / get / did / to / know
- 5 three / together / for / they / years / were
- 6 with / six / went / him / months / I / for / out

3 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- They *have* a very good relationship.
- 1 Tom married last summer, but I don't know his new
- 2 We to know each other at university, and we've been now for a year.
- 3 I know Tom and Lucy very well. They're a lovely
- 4 She went with him last year, but they in January.
- 5 Sonia is his girlfriend, but they still talk to each other.
- 6 My parents were married for twenty years, but now they're My father has a new, but I don't think they're going to married.



TEST YOURSELF

B Friends



WHY WE LIKE each other

Sophie: I **get on very well with** Gemma – she's great. I don't know why, because we've got very different **personalities**. We first **met** at university about six years ago, and then we **became flatmates**. If I have a problem, Gemma is the first person I go to her for **advice**. And she always gives me good advice. We don't **see** each other very often now because we live in different cities, but I've **known** her for quite a long time, and she will always be my **best friend**.

GLOSSARY

each other	She likes me and I like her. = We like each other .
get on (well) with sb	have a good relationship with sb
personality	what a person is like that makes them different from other people
meet <i>pt met</i>	1 see and speak to sb for the first time 2 go to a place and wait for sb: <i>We're meeting them at 7.30.</i>
become	begin to be sth: become friends/flatmates
flatmate	a person you live with, but not in a romantic relationship
advice [U]	an opinion or information that you give to help sb with a problem give (sb) advice
see sb	talk to or visit sb
know <i>pt knew</i> <i>pp known</i>	If you know sb , you have met them. If you have known sb for a long time, you are often friends.

SPOTLIGHT *friend*

A **friend** is a person that you like and know well. Your **best friend** is your most important friend. You can also have a **close friend** (= a very good friend) or an **old friend** (= somebody you have known a long time).

4 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ We met last year. / I have known her for a year. S
- 1 We live near each other. / We are flatmates.
- 2 We get on very well. / We have a very good relationship.
- 3 I see her every Saturday. / I visit her every Saturday.
- 4 She's my best friend. / She's a close friend.
- 5 We became friends. / We stopped being friends.
- 6 She gives me advice. / She helps me with my problems.

5 Complete the sentences

- ▶ Abigail and I soon became friends.
- 1 My best friend often gives me good
- 2 Charles and Ed are good friends – they see other almost every day.
- 3 Mia is an friend – I've her for many years.
- 4 Sammy seems to on well with everyone – he's very popular.
- 5 I first my wife when we were at university – we were only twenty.
- 6 I've Olivia a long time, but we don't each other very much now.
- 7 I'm my friends outside the cinema at / o'clock.
- 8 Emma was just my – we shared a flat for a year. Now she's my friend, but we have very different

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Who is your best friend?
- 2 How long have you known him/her?
- 3 How and where did you first meet?
- 4 How often do you see each other?
- 5 Why do you get on well with him/her?
- 6 Do you often give each other advice?



TEST YOURSELF

17 Feelings

A Feelings and emotions



1 She's happy.



2 She's sad. SYN unhappy



3 They're excited.



4 He's bored.



5 He's angry.



6 She's scared/afraid (of sth/sb).



7 She's embarrassed.



8 She's surprised.



9 He's in love.



10 She's worried.

SPOTLIGHT feelings and emotions

Feelings or emotions are what you have inside yourself. We use adjectives after the verb **be** to describe our feelings, e.g. I'm **happy/sad/angry/afraid**, etc. We can also use many of these adjectives after the verb **feel** (pt felt): I **feel happy/sad/angry**, etc.

1 Complete the words.

► ha p p y

1 ang _____

2 wor _____

3 _____

4 sc _____

5 emb _____

6 unh _____

7 af _____

8 sur _____

9 ex _____

2 Answer the questions.

► What's the opposite of **sad**? **happy**

1 What's another word for **feelings**?

2 What's the opposite of **excited**?

3 What's another word for **unhappy**?

4 What's another word for **afraid**?

5 If two people love each other, how can we say it another way? They are _____.

6 If you do something stupid, how do you feel? _____.

3 Complete the sentences.

► The teacher got **angry** because the children were running round the classroom.

1 I got very _____ yesterday because I couldn't find my credit card. I found it this morning.

2 I got 100% in my English exam. I was happy but also very _____.

3 My brothers get very _____ when they're watching football on TV.

4 I made a mistake and everyone laughed. I _____ stupid and a bit _____.

5 My sister and Jake are getting married. My parents are _____ because they like Jake.

6 I didn't like the film and I was _____ after half an hour.

7 My aunt never travels by plane. She's _____ of flying.

8 Oliver and Marcia met on holiday. I think they're in _____.

9 I had different _____ when I first flew in a plane: I was excited but also a bit scared.



TEST YOURSELF

B How did you feel?

How did you feel ...

when you went to bed last night?	~ Quite tired .
on your walk when it got hot?	~ I was thirsty .
after you had nothing to eat for hours?	~ I was hungry .
when everyone came to your party?	~ I was very pleased .
when you forgot a friend's birthday?	~ I was very sorry .
before your important exam today?	~ I was nervous .
when you broke your finger?	~ I was in pain .
when your dog died?	~ I was very upset , and I cried .
when you argued with / had an argument with your best friend?	~ I felt bad and unhappy about it.



She's crying.

4 How do you feel? Write your answers.

- ▶ It's the end of a working day.
- 1 Your best friend hasn't invited you to his party.
- 2 You are meeting your boyfriend or girlfriend's parents for the first time.
- 3 You've had nothing to drink for hours.
- 4 It's lunchtime and you didn't have breakfast.
- 5 You walked into a door and hit your head.
- 6 A friend wrote a letter to thank you for something.
- 7 A friend asked you to do something, and you forgot.

tired
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ When's lunch? ~ I don't know. Are you hungry ?
- 1 I've got my driving test tomorrow. ~ Oh, are you _____ ?
- 2 I'm going to bed. ~ OK. Are you _____ ?
- 3 Did Dan finally pass his exam? ~ Yes, he's so _____ .
- 4 Did Amelia fall down the stairs? ~ Yes, she was in a lot of _____ .
- 5 Steph looked very angry. ~ I know. She's just had an _____ with her boyfriend. Really? What about? ~ I don't know, but they often _____ .
- 6 I'm really _____ I couldn't come last night. ~ That's OK.
- 7 I'm _____ . ~ OK. What would you like to drink?
- 8 Julia's mother was in hospital and died last week, so Julia is very _____ . ~ Oh, that's probably why she was _____ when I saw her.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Questionnaire

When was the last time you ...

- 1 felt tired? _____
- 2 felt nervous? _____
- 3 felt hungry? _____
- 4 felt thirsty? _____

- 5 argued with somebody? _____
- 6 were in pain? _____
- 7 cried? _____
- 8 felt pleased? _____



TEST YOURSELF

18 Prepositions: time

at	a time at six o'clock at midday/midnight	a mealtime at breakfast at lunch / lunchtime at dinner / dinner time
on	a day on Tuesday on Friday evening on Tuesdays = every Tuesday on my birthday on Christmas Day	a date on September 10 on 6 th May
in	a part of a day in the morning in the afternoon in the evening	a season in (the) spring/summer/ autumn/winter a month, year or century in July/December in 1990/2050 in the 21 st century (= 2000–2099)

SPOTLIGHT *at*

We also use **at** in these time phrases:

- I relax **at the weekend**.
- Some doctors work **at night**. (NOT *in the night*)
- What are you doing **at Christmas** / **at New Year**?
- He's not here **at the moment** (= now).

1 Cross out the word or phrase which is not correct.

- in the spring / ~~February 15th~~ / the evening
- 1 **at** lunchtime / 2020 / the weekend
- 2 **in** August / summer / Friday
- 3 **on** April / your birthday / Saturdays
- 4 **at** night / the morning / half past seven
- 5 **in** autumn / the 20th century / 4.00
- 6 **on** midnight / June 2nd / Sunday afternoon
- 7 **at** breakfast / midday / the autumn
- 8 **on** winter / Christmas Day / 5th May
- 9 **in** the afternoon / lunchtime / 2018
- 10 **at** New Year / the evening / six o'clock

2 Write the correct preposition.

We went to Brighton for a few days last week. We left ► **on** Thursday morning (1) about nine o'clock and got there (2) lunchtime. We found a nice hotel, and then (3) the afternoon we went to the beach. The weather can be quite cold (4) spring, but it was great – really sunny. (5) Friday, we had lunch with an old friend. I first met her at university (6) 2007. Then (7) the evening, we went to a restaurant and got home (8) midnight. (9) the weekend, we went shopping and then went back to the beach. We'd like to go back for the Brighton Festival, which starts (10) May 6th.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers using a preposition and a time phrase from the table, or ask another student.

When do you ...

- get up?
- study English?
- go swimming?
- usually go out with friends?
- watch TV?
- go to bed?

When ...

- is your birthday?
- were you born?
- are there public holidays in your country?



TEST YOURSELF

19 Prepositions: direction



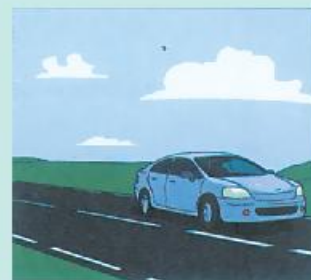
go into go out of
(the house)



go across the road



go up go down
(the stairs)



go along the road



go past the church



go through the gate



go under go across/over
(the bridge)



go towards the hill

1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Don't run down the hill / town.
- 1 Walk under the trees / field.
- 2 Drive along the city / motorway.
- 3 Don't go across the river / gate.
- 4 Go into the beach / shop.

- 5 Go towards the church / clouds.
- 6 Walk through the gate / stairs.
- 7 Go up the floor / mountain.
- 8 We flew over the sky / field.
- 9 Walk out of the building / hill.

2 Complete the sentences with a preposition. Use a different one in each sentence.

- ▶ Go straight on, along this road.
- 1 We shouted hello as the boat went the bridge.
- 2 She went the hotel and spoke to the receptionist.
- 3 They drove the hill to look at the view from the top.
- 4 I walked the village, which was about a kilometre away.
- 5 We drove a restaurant on the way to the station.
- 6 He came the door and fell over. It was very funny.
- 7 I came the bank and saw the accident.
- 8 We went the hill, into the valley below.
- 9 The dog saw a cat in one of the gardens, and he just ran the road.

3 Complete the sentences with a preposition.

- ▶ What do you see when you go out of the building where you live?
- 1 Do you ever walk a bridge near your home?
- 2 Do you ever drive a river or a railway line?
- 3 Do you walk a gate when you leave your home?
- 4 Have you ever walked the River Thames?
- 5 When you walk to work, do you go any interesting buildings?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

20 Prepositions: place

A at, in, on

at	<p>a place where something happens</p> <p>Let's meet at the bank / at the bus stop. I saw him at the match / at the party / at home at work / at school.</p>	
		
in	<p>something with walls or sides</p> <p>in a box / in a cupboard in a room / in an office / in a flat in a garden / in a park</p>	<p>a big area</p> <p>in a village / in a town / in a city in the countryside in London/Spain/Asia/the world</p>
		
on	<p>something long</p> <p>on the road / on the coast on a river</p>	<p>something flat</p> <p>on the table / on the wall on the first floor</p>
		
		<p>in OR on</p> <p>He's in the river. She's on the river.</p>

1 Underline the correct preposition.

- ▶ I live in / on Canada.
- 1 She's not in / on her office.
- 2 The photos are in / on the wall.
- 3 We met in / at a golf match.
- 4 We stayed in / on a lovely village.
- 5 He's swimming in / on the pool.
- 6 Barcelona is in / on the coast.
- 7 We live at / in the countryside.
- 8 There is a white line at / on the road.
- 9 Dinner is on / at the table.
- 10 They're sitting in / at the garden.
- 11 The books are on / in the table.
- 12 I saw her in / at the bus stop.
- 13 The number is in / on the door.
- 14 I spoke to her in / at the party.

2 Complete the questions with at, in or on.

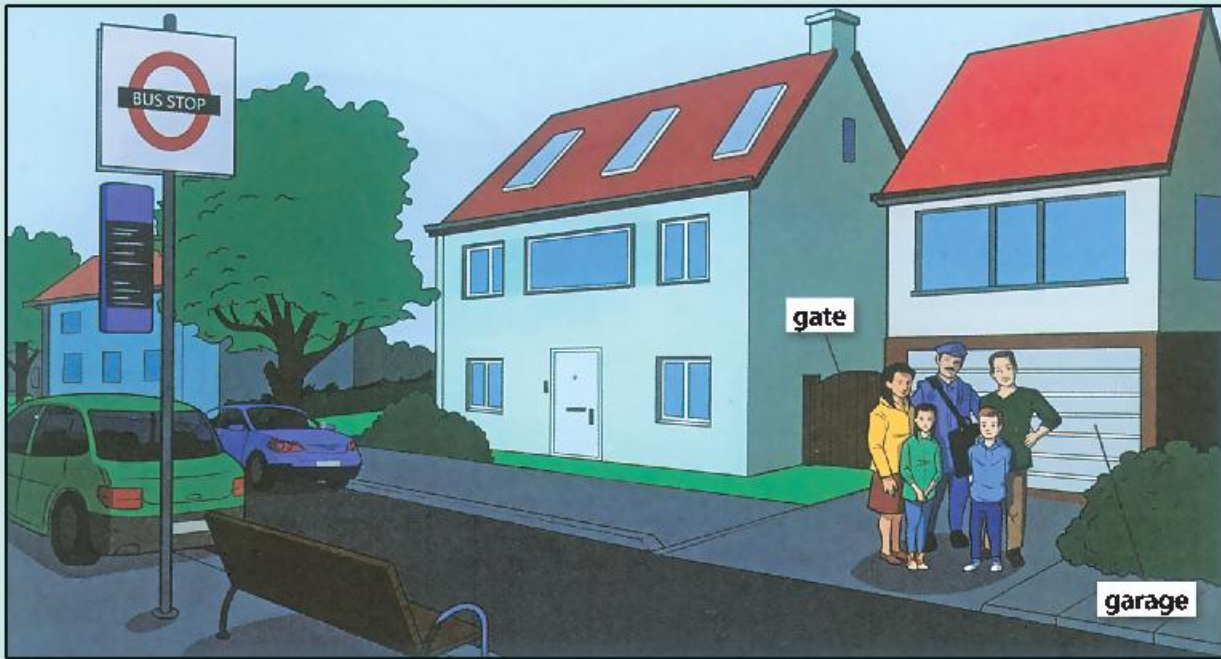
- ▶ Which country do you live in ?
- 1 Do you live _____ a village, a town or a city?
- 2 Do you live _____ a flat or a house?
- 3 Is your town _____ a river?
- 4 Which floor is your bedroom _____ ?
- 5 What's _____ the walls in your living room?
- 6 Do you like walking _____ the countryside?
- 7 Do you ever meet new people _____ parties?
- 8 Did you learn English _____ school, _____ work, or _____ an English-speaking country?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Other prepositions



The people are **in front of** the garage.
The postman is **between** Mum and Dad.
The adults are **behind** the children.
The tree is **near** the house.

The office is **above** the garage.
The garage is **below** the office.
The seat is **next to** the bus stop.
The bus stop is **opposite** the house.

4 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ The tree is opposite the house. <u>F</u> | |
| 1 The blue car is near the house. | 6 The gate is between the house and the tree. |
| 2 The big window is above the door. | 7 The children are behind Mum and Dad. |
| 3 The seat is opposite the garage. | 8 The girl is in front of the postman. |
| 4 The people are opposite the garage. | 9 The front door is below the big window. |
| 5 The postman is next to Mum. | 10 The green car is next to the bus stop. |

5 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| ▶ The tree's <u>behind</u> the blue car. | |
| 1 The bus stop is the seat. | 5 The blue car is the house. |
| 2 The blue car is the tree. | 6 The people are the garage. |
| 3 The boy is standing Dad. | 7 The postman is Dad. |
| 4 The gate is the house and the garage. | 8 The garage is the people. |

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What's opposite the building where you live?
- What's behind your building?
- What's next to your building?
- Are there any shops near it?
- What's above your living room?
- What's below your bedroom?
- What's next to your bedroom?
- Is there anything between your building and the street? If so, what?



TEST YOURSELF

21 Prepositions: phrases

A Position

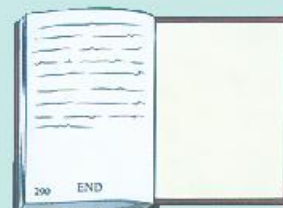
- 1 at the front of the car
- 2 on the side of the car
- 3 OPP on the other side
- 4 at the back of the car
- 5 in the back of the car



at the beginning/start of the book



in the middle of the book



at the end of the book



at the top of the mountain



at the bottom of the staircase

SPOTLIGHT at first and in the end

We often talk about time using **at first** (= at the beginning of the time) and **in the end** (= finally) when we tell stories.

- **At first**, I didn't like being in the water, but I soon learned how to swim.
- It was a long journey. **In the end**, we arrived at our hotel.

1 Cross out the wrong answer.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ► at the front of the <i>cinema</i> / bread / house | 4 at the bottom of the <i>glass</i> / river / apple |
| 1 at the back of the <i>night</i> / bus / classroom | 5 in the middle of the <i>book</i> / road / milk |
| 2 at the beginning of the <i>story</i> / meal / pencil | 6 on the other side of the <i>sky</i> / house / river |
| 3 at the top of the <i>stairs</i> / book / building | 7 at the end of the <i>film</i> / morning / mountain |

2 Complete the sentences with a phrase.

- There's a murder at the beginning of the film.
- 1 There's a great view _____ of the hill.
- 2 I always sit _____ of the class where the teacher can't see me.
- 3 They found an old boat _____ of the lake.
- 4 _____ I didn't enjoy learning English, but now I like it.
- 5 When I go and see a film, I like to sit _____ of the cinema, where I can see easily.
- 6 What happens _____ of the book? I didn't finish it.
- 7 They put a big sign _____ of the square so everyone could see it.
- 8 We had a lot of problems, but _____ it was OK.
- 9 The problem is not on this side of the wall – it's _____.
- 10 _____ of the film I couldn't understand their English, but it got better.
- 11 _____ the restaurant was empty, but a few customers arrived about 6.30. Then a large group came in at about seven, followed by several more smaller groups. _____, it was almost full and really busy.



TEST YOURSELF

B Fixed phrases

Did you like London when you went there?
 How many people came?
 What are Liam and Yasmin doing **at the moment**?
 Did you know Ellie **at university**?
 Is Ethan here?
 Were you late?
 When will you finish painting the house?
 Is Xav working now?

~ I don't remember. I was only 8 **at the time**.
 ~ **At least** 25.
 ~ I think they're **on holiday**.
 ~ Yes, we were there **at the same time**.
 ~ Yes, but he's **on the phone**.
 ~ No, I'm always **on time**.
 ~ Oh, **by the end of** the week.
 ~ No, **in fact**, he's **in hospital** with a broken leg.



SPOTLIGHT *at university, in hospital, etc.*

If you are **at university**, you are studying in a university.
 If you are **at school**, you are a pupil/student.
 If you are **in hospital**, there is something wrong with you and you must stay there.
 If you are **in prison**, you have done something wrong/illegal and you must stay there for a period of time.

GLOSSARY

at the time	then: I worked there in 2016. I was 24 at the time .
at least	not less than
at the moment	now or around now: I'm busy at the moment . (NOT in this moment)
on holiday	not working/studying and often away from home
at the same time	used to say that two or more things happen together
on the phone	using the phone and speaking to sb ALSO on his/her phone (= mobile phone)
on time	not early or late
by the end of sth	not later than sth
in fact	used to say that sth is true (often the opposite of what sb says or thinks): She looks English, but in fact , she's Spanish. SYN actually

3 Make phrases using the words in the box.

least holiday university ✓ fact the same time the time
 the phone the moment prison time hospital

AT ▶ university

ON

IN

4 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way.

- ▶ Is he at university? ~ No, he's still at school.
- 1 Did they arrive together? ~ Yes,
- 2 Are they away? ~ Yes, they're
- 3 What are you doing? ~ Now? Nothing. Why?
- 4 Is he ill? ~ Yes, he's
- 5 Were there many people there? ~ 50.
- 6 Were you late? ~ No, I was
- 7 Is she still studying? ~ Yes, she's

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrase from above.

- ▶ I was on time but Max was late, as usual.
- 1 We came here in 2012, but I was only nine
- 2 My father has been with a heart problem.
- 3 The hotel is quite expensive: a room is \$200.
- 4 She's on holiday at the moment, but she'll be back the week.
- 5 He's been for two years for stealing money.
- 6 I know she looks Swedish, but she's English.
- 7 My sister has been for two years. She finishes at the end of next year.
- 8 He's always He never stops sending texts.



TEST YOURSELF

A Verb or adjective + preposition

You will find the meaning of some of the verbs and adjectives in this unit in other parts of the book. Use the **APP** to help if you are not sure of the meaning.

Questionnaire

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR FAMILY

- Do you still **live with** your parents?
 Do you still **depend on** your parents?
 Do you ever **ask them for** money?
 Do you usually **agree with** your parents?
 Do you **spend** a lot of money **on** clothes?
 Do you **care about** making money?
 Do you always **thank** people **for** presents?
 What are you **interested in**?
 What are you **good at**?
 Do you get **bored with** things quickly?

GLOSSARY

depend on sb/sth	need sb or sth
agree with sb	have the same view or opinion as sb (NOT from agree.) opp disagree with sb
spend money (on sth) pt spent	pay money for sth
care about sb/sth	think that sb or sth is important
thank sb (for sth)	tell sb you are pleased or happy because they gave you sth or helped you
present	sth that you give to sb or get from sb SYN gift

SPOTLIGHT preposition + -ing form

A preposition can be followed by a noun or an **-ing form**.

- I'm **good at** maths.
- I'm **interested in** art.
- I'm **good at** drawing.
- I'm **interested in** learning languages.

1 Correct the mistakes.

- I spend a lot of money ~~in~~ food. on
 1 I'm good in playing chess. at
 2 We must stop now. ~ Yes, I'm agree. agreed
 3 My brother depends of me. on
 4 I am bored for my job: it's always the same. with
 5 Do you ask for money your parents? from
 6 Do you care at the clothes you wear? about
 7 I live by two friends – we have a flat together. with
 8 I'm not interested in speak other languages. in speaking

2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb or adjective.

- I'm not very good at English. I make lots of mistakes.
 1 I must thank my aunt for the present she gave me for my birthday.
 2 My boss is great. He really cares about his workers and wants them to do well.
 3 He's new in the job so he still depends on other people for help and advice.
 4 I spent \$500 on a new tablet.
 5 I know you used to take lots of photos. Are you still interested in photography?
 6 If you can't do this, why don't you ask the teacher for help?

3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- She spent all her money on that computer.
 1 I quickly get bored with housework.
 2 Did you ask them for help?
 3 I'm not interested in cooking.
 4 I forgot to thank him for helping me.
 5 They all depend on Maxine for help.
 6 My mother cares about other people.
 7 Why are you so good at maths?
 8 Does she live with her family?
 9 I disagree with the others – I think it's a wonderful book.

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.

- I don't live with my parents because I'm married. I live with my wife.



TEST YOURSELF

B Verb + preposition

Read about Caroline, and some of the things she does and thinks.

I often **listen to** the radio in the morning.
 I usually **hear about** things for the first time on social media.
 When I **look at** people, I don't **notice** what they're wearing.
 I like films that are **based on** true stories.
 I like furniture **made of** wood.
 I hate **waiting for** buses and trains, but don't like **paying for** taxis.
 I haven't **applied for** a job yet.
 I don't **think about** the future very much.



GLOSSARY

hear about sth	If you hear about sth, sb tells you sth or you read about it.
notice	see or pay attention to sb or sth
base sth on sth	make sth using another thing as the beginning: <i>We based the book on her diaries and letters.</i> <i>The book is based on her letters and diaries.</i>
apply for sth	write to ask for sth, e.g. for a job

SPOTLIGHT *think about and think of*

- I always **think about** my grandmother when I see that photo. = I have thoughts about her in my head.
- What did you **think of** the film? – What was your opinion of the film?

5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------|-------|---|---------------------------------|
| ▶ Have you listened to | ..... | a | the photo I sent you? |
| 1 Did you apply for | ..... | b | the new TV yet? |
| 2 Have you looked at | ..... | c | their new song? ✓ |
| 3 Are you waiting for | ..... | d | leather? |
| 4 Have you paid for | ..... | e | somebody to phone you? |
| 5 Did you base your story on | ..... | f | the job? |
| 6 Is the coat made of | ..... | g | something that happened to you? |

6 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| ▶ I wasn't listening <u>to</u> her. | 5 Is the film based a book? |
| 1 What are you looking ? | 6 Who are you waiting ? |
| 2 Who paid the meal? | 7 How did you hear the party? |
| 3 Did you apply a place on the course? | 8 What did you think the book? |
| 4 Why are you thinking Ali? | 9 I think this is made plastic. |

7 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- ▶ I'm thinking about the weather. Is it warm enough to go swimming?
- 1 My story is on something I read in the newspaper.
- 2 Have you about Marta? She's getting married.
- 3 The food was free, but we had to for drinks.
- 4 I've just seen Mia, and I that she had a new hairstyle. It's very short.
- 5 I don't know why she for that job – it isn't very interesting.
- 6 I liked the film. What did you of it?

8 ABOUT YOU Look at the sentences at the top of the page. Are they true for you? Write your answers or ask another student. Use the new vocabulary in your answers.

- ▶ I never listen to the radio. In the morning I sometimes listen to music on my phone.



TEST YOURSELF

A Weekdays (Monday to Friday)

What's your daily routine?



I wake up at 7.00.
I get up immediately.



I have a shower.



I get dressed.



I have breakfast.



I usually leave home
at 8.00.



I get to work/arrive
at work at 8.30.



I finish work/
go home at 5.00.



I have dinner at 8.00.



I normally go to bed
at about 11.30.



I sleep about seven
hours a night.

GLOSSARY

daily	happening every day
routine	your usual way of doing things
wake up	stop sleeping
immediately	now, without waiting
have + meal	e.g. <i>have breakfast, have lunch, have dinner</i>
usually	most often SYN <i>normally</i>

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ get dressed / get up D
- 1 I go home at 6.00. / I leave home at 6.00.
- 2 I have lunch at 1.00. / I eat lunch at 1.00.
- 3 He finishes work early. / He gets to work early.
- 4 I get up immediately. / I get up daily.
- 5 We usually leave / We normally leave at 7.00.
- 6 Do you wake up early? / Do you get up early?

2 A word is missing in each line. What is it and where does it go? Write it after the sentence.

- ▶ I normally / up at 6.30. wake
- 1 I usually get immediately.
- 2 I have a before breakfast.
- 3 I get after my shower.
- 4 I at work before 8.30.
- 5 I work and go home at 6.00.
- 6 I dinner with my family.
- 7 I go bed when I'm tired.
- 8 I usually six hours a night.
- 9 My daily is what I do every day.

3 Complete the questions with the correct verb.

- ▶ What time do you usually wake up in the morning? ABOUT YOU
- 1 Do you dressed before or after breakfast? I usually wake up early, at 6.00.
- 2 Do you a shower in the morning?
- 3 Where do you usually breakfast?
- 4 What time do you home in the morning?
- 5 What time do you school/university/work?
- 6 Who do you have with in the evening?
- 7 What time do you normally to bed?
- 8 How many hours a night do you ?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Weekends (Saturdays and Sundays)

During the week I usually stay in after school and study, watch TV, or just talk to my family. Once or twice a week, my boyfriend comes round and we have dinner together or play video games. But at the weekend, I go out a lot more. On Saturday morning, I usually go shopping with a friend, and then my boyfriend and I go out in the evening. Sometimes we go to the cinema or a concert. On Sundays, I always get up late. We often go for a walk, and in the summer we play tennis or go for a swim.



GLOSSARY

during the week	from Monday to Friday
stay in	stay at home OPP go out
once a week	one time in every week
twice a week	two times in every week
come round	visit sb at their home
at the weekend	on Saturday and Sunday
go shopping	go to the shops to buy clothes, books, etc.
ALSO do the shopping	buy food
late <i>adv</i>	after the usual time late <i>adj</i> OPP early
go for a walk/swim	have a short walk/swim to enjoy yourself
play tennis	(see picture)

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of frequency

100% **always** usually/normally often sometimes never 0%

These adverbs go before the main verb, e.g. *get up*, but after **be**, modals, e.g. *can*, *will*, and auxiliaries, e.g. *does*, *doesn't*.

- I **always** get up early on Saturdays.
- Do you **often** go out in the evening?
- He **can** **sometimes** meet his friends on Fridays.
- I'm **never** late for school.

5 Write the words in the correct order.

- twice / John / a / see / I / week *I see John twice a week*
- 1 shopping / do / the / do / often / you
- 2 school / never / late / is / he / for
- 3 early / up / we / tennis / get / play / sometimes / and
- 4 weekend / at / shopping / the / you / always / do / go
- 5 the / goes / during / often / out / week / Martha
- 6 week / or / sister / a / once / see / my / I / twice

6 Complete the phrases with one word.

- go out = go to the cinema, a restaurant, etc.
- 1 not go out = in
- 2 buy clothes, books, etc. = shopping
- 3 have a game of tennis = tennis
- 4 have a short walk = for a walk
- 5 buy food = the shopping
- 6 on Saturday and Sunday = the weekend
- 7 from Monday to Friday = the week
- 8 on Tuesdays only = a week
- 9 on Mondays and Fridays only = a week

7 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. If a sentence is false, change the word in bold to make it true.

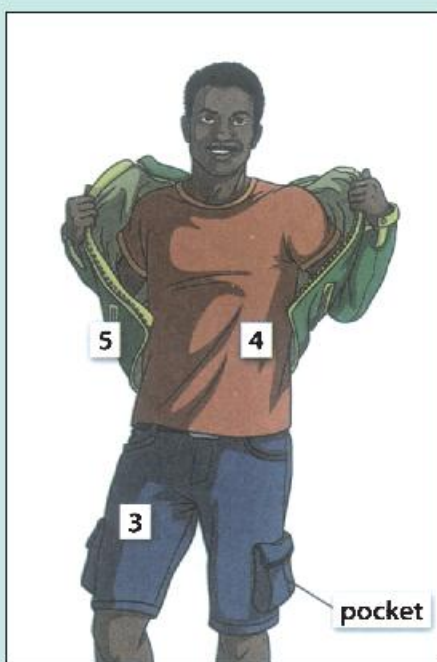
- I **often** get to work or school late. *F - I never get to school late.*
- 1 I **always** play tennis in the summer.
- 2 In my family, I **never** do the shopping.
- 3 I **often** go for a long walk during the week.
- 4 I **sometimes** play video games at the weekend.
- 5 I **never** have dinner with my family.
- 6 **During the week**, I go out a lot in the evenings.
- 7 I like to get up **early** at the weekend.
- 8 I **often** go shopping with a friend.



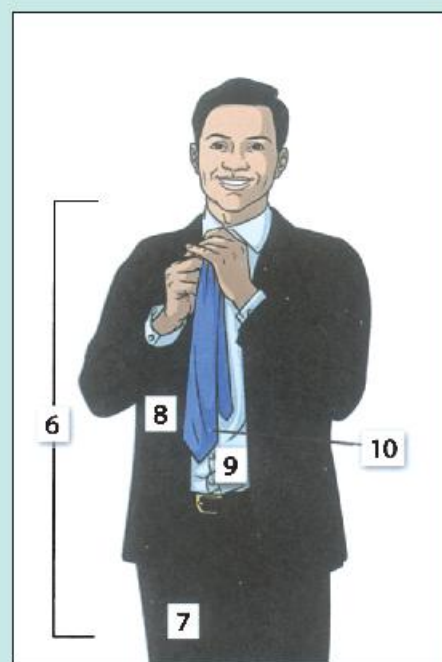
TEST YOURSELF



Milla

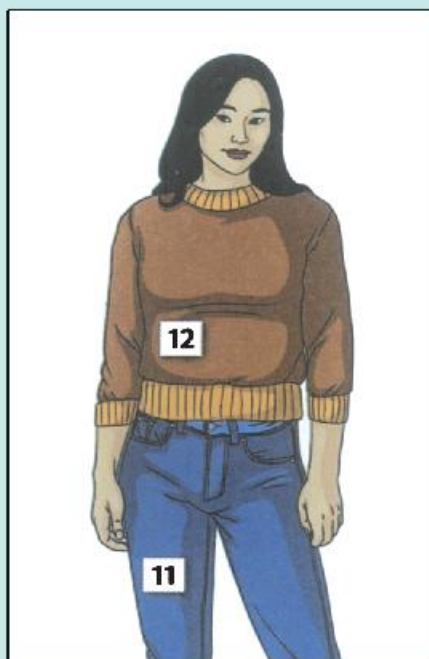


Enzo

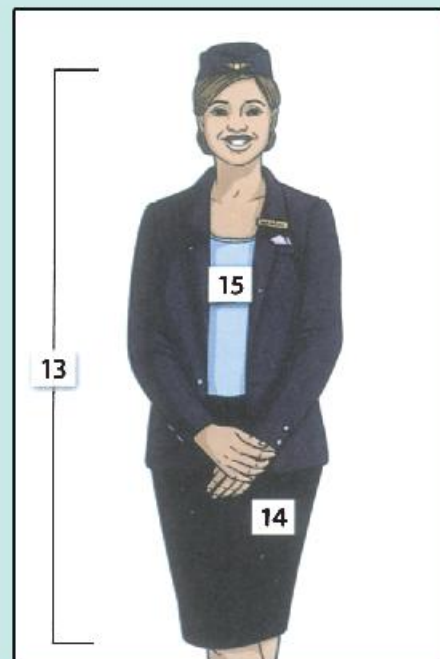


Osman

- 1 dress
- 2 coat
- 3 shorts
- 4 T-shirt
- 5 jacket
- 6 suit
- 7 trousers
- 8 jacket
- 9 shirt
- 10 tie
- 11 jeans
- 12 jumper/sweater
- 13 uniform
- 14 skirt
- 15 top



Kim



Megan

These are all items of clothing.

GLOSSARY

clothes	things like trousers, shirts and coats that you wear to cover your body
item of clothing	a thing that you wear, e.g. a skirt, a tie
wear <i>pt wore pp worn</i>	have clothes on your body
put sth on	take clothes and wear them: Put on your shoes. Put your coat on. Off take sth off
uniform	the special clothes that everybody in the same job, school, etc. wears

1 Complete the words.

▶ suit

1 j_____t

2 t_____s

3 j_____r

4 b_____n

5 c_____t

6 T-_____t

7 d_____s

8 p_____t

9 j_____s

10 t_____

11 sh_____t

12 sk_____t

13 sh_____s

14 sw_____t_r

2 Look at the pictures on page 54 and answer the questions.

▶ Who's wearing jeans and a jumper? Kim

1 Who's wearing a uniform?

2 Who's wearing shorts?

3 Who's wearing a suit?

4 Who's wearing a dress?

5 Who's wearing a skirt and top?

6 Who's taking off a jacket?

7 Who's putting a coat on?

8 Who's putting on a tie?

9 Who isn't wearing trousers?

10 Who's wearing a jumper?

11 Who's wearing a jacket with pockets?




12 Who's wearing an item of clothing with buttons?

13 Who's wearing three items of clothing?

14 Is anybody taking a coat off?

3 Put the words in the correct column.

jacket ✓ top suit trousers skirt shorts dress jeans tie T-shirt coat shirt jumper uniform

 WHOLE BODY	 ABOVE THE WAIST	 BELOW THE WAIST
	<u>jacket</u>	

4 Circle the correct word or words. Be careful: more than one answer may be correct.

▶ You wear shorts / a jacket / a jumper on a hot day.

1 Men don't usually wear skirts / dresses / suits.

2 When you go out, you take your coat off / put your coat on.

3 Women often wear ties / trousers / jeans.

4 You take your coat off when it's cold / hot.

5 Police officers usually wear jeans / a uniform at work.

6 A top is an item of clothing / a dress / a uniform.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ clothes / top D

1 wear / jeans

2 skirt / shirt

3 uniform / clothes

4 tie / item

5 jumper / uniform

6 clothing / coat

7 jumper / put on

8 suit / uniform

9 jacket / take off

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What are you wearing today?

2 What did you wear yesterday?

3 Do you wear the same clothes at the weekend? If not, what is different?

4 What do you usually wear to parties?

5 Have you ever worn a uniform? If so, what was it for?



TEST YOURSELF



scarf (pl scarves)



hat



belt



handbag



umbrella



watch



a pair of shoes



a pair of boots



trainers



socks



tights



glasses



sunglasses



gloves



some jewellery



rings



necklace

GLOSSARY

accessory	(usually pl) a thing you carry or wear with clothes, e.g. a watch, a bag, a belt
wear	You wear items of clothing, glasses or jewellery, e.g. a scarf, sunglasses, a ring.
carry	You carry a bag, a handbag or an umbrella.
gold	The rings in the picture are made of gold .
silver	The necklace is made of silver .
plastic	The umbrella is made of plastic .
leather	The boots are made of leather .

SPOTLIGHT plural nouns and pairs

Trousers, jeans, tights, clothes and **(sun)glasses** are always plural. They take a plural verb form.

■ These **tights are** very warm. (NOT The tights is ...)

We use **a pair of** in two ways:

- two things of the same kind that we use together:
a pair of shoes/boots/trainers/socks/gloves, etc.
- a thing with two parts that are together:
a pair of glasses/sunglasses a pair of tights

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ You can wear a watch. <u>T</u> | 5 You can carry a handbag on your arm or shoulder. |
| 1 Jewellery is often made of gold or silver. | 6 A necklace can be made of plastic. |
| 2 Glasses are made of leather. | 7 A pair of tights has two parts called <i>legs</i> |
| 3 You can wear a belt. | 8 Most people wear a pair of scarves. |
| 4 You can wear an umbrella on your shoulder. | |

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

watch hat scarf socks belt ✓ glasses umbrella handbag ring boots tights

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ You wear it round your waist. <u>belt</u> | 6 You wear them on your nose. |
| 1 You wear them inside your shoes. | 7 You wear it round your neck. |
| 2 You wear it on your head. | 8 You wear it on your wrist. |
| 3 You wear it on your finger. | 9 You carry it when it's raining. |
| 4 You wear them on your feet. | 10 You carry things in it. |
| 5 You wear them over your legs and feet. | |

3 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.










Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ hat / necklace <u>D</u> | ▶ hat / handbag <u>S</u> |
| 1 watch / <u>s</u> ocks | 5 scarf / sun <u>g</u> lasses |
| 2 <u>t</u> ights / r <u>i</u> ng | 6 <u>l</u> eather / <u>b</u> elt |
| 3 <u>b</u> oots / <u>j</u> ewellery | 7 <u>p</u> air / <u>t</u> rainers |
| 4 <u>g</u> loves / <u>g</u> old | 8 <u>c</u> arry / <u>p</u> lastic |

4 Make the sentences singular if possible.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ Are these your boots? <u>Is this your boot?</u> | ▶ Her glasses are nice. <u>Not possible.</u> |
| 1 Give me the socks. | |
| 2 Where are my tights? | |
| 3 I've got two pairs of trainers. | |
| 4 Where are my gloves? | |
| 5 She's got my scarves. | |
| 6 Where are my shoes? | |
| 7 The jeans cost €30. | |
| 8 I don't like these sunglasses. | |

5 Label the pictures. Use a pair of where possible.

 ▶ a pair of leather shoes	.....	.....
		
		

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Which accessories do you always wear?
- Which accessories do you never wear?
- Do you wear trainers a lot? If you don't, what do you wear?
- Do you wear glasses or sunglasses? Why?
- When do you wear: jewellery? a watch? a hat? a scarf?



TEST YOURSELF

26 Colours, size and appearance

A Colours and adjectives

- 1 long
- 2 short
- 3 large/big
- 4 small/little
- 5 cheap
- 6 expensive
- 7 comfortable
- 8 uncomfortable



Colours



white



cream



yellow



green



blue



dark blue



light blue



black



grey



red



orange



brown



purple



pink

SPOTLIGHT order of adjectives

Adjectives describing size or opinion go before colour adjectives.

- We say *a big blue umbrella* (NOT *a blue big umbrella*)
- *large brown eyes* ▪ *a cheap black suit*

1 Find the end of each word.

red/green/pink/purple/orange/grey/dark blue/cream/brown/light blue/black/yellow/white

2 Write your answers.

- ▶ Red and yellow together make orange.
- 1 Red and blue together make _____.
- 2 White and blue together make _____.
- 3 Blue and yellow together make _____.
- 4 Red and white together make _____.
- 5 Black and white together make _____.
- 6 Black and blue together make _____.
- 7 Red and green together make _____.
- 8 Yellow and white together make _____.
- 9 Blue, yellow and purple are all _____.

3 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ My handbag's very large / *small*, so I can put lots in it.
- 1 I like these trainers, but they're very *comfortable* / *uncomfortable*.
- 2 I haven't got much money, so I don't wear *cheap* / *expensive* clothes.
- 3 He's only seven years old, so just buy him a *small* / *large* T-shirt.
- 4 You need your *long* / *short* coat today – it's really cold.
- 5 The good thing about the school café is that it's *cheap* / *expensive*.
- 6 You need *comfortable* / *uncomfortable* clothes when you are travelling.

4 Look at the pictures at the top of the page and describe the clothes and accessories.

- ▶ a cheap grey tie
- 1 a short skirt
- 2 a large shoes
- 3 a small handbag
- 4 a long skirt
- 5 a purple shoes
- 6 an expensive tie
- 7 a cheap handbag



TEST YOURSELF

B Size and appearance

What size are you?
What size do you take?

I'm a (size) 12.
I take size 40.

Is it OK?

No, it's the **wrong size**.
It doesn't fit.

Yes, it's the **right size**.
It fits well.

What's the matter?

It's **too long / too big**. 😞

It looks **nice/lovely/great**. 😊

Do you like it?

It looks **awful/terrible**. 😞

Yes, I like the **style**.



SPOTLIGHT **too and very**

There is a difference in meaning between **too** and **very**.

- Her coat is **very** long. (But maybe it's OK.)
- Her coat is **too** long. (It's not OK.)
- These trousers are **very** expensive, but I'm going to buy them.
- These boots are **too** small – I can't wear them.

GLOSSARY

appearance	the way that sb or sth looks
look	If sth looks good, you think it's good.
nice	good
lovely	very good SYN great
awful	very bad SYN terrible
style	the shape, colour and way sth is

5 Are the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ► It looks terrible. / It looks nice. <u>D</u> | 5 They're too big. / They don't fit. _____ |
| 1 It fits. / It's the right size. _____ | 6 What size does he take? / What size is he? _____ |
| 2 It looks great. / It looks lovely. _____ | 7 They're very short. / They're too short. _____ |
| 3 They're the right size. / They don't fit. _____ | 8 It's the wrong size. / It doesn't fit. _____ |
| 4 I like the style. / It looks awful. _____ | |

6 Complete the dialogues.

- What **size** are you? ~ I _____ size 34.
- What do you think of these trousers? ~ I like the _____ – they're very nice.
- Is the shirt OK for you? ~ I'm sorry. It's the _____ size.
- What size do you _____? ~ 42.
- Is that top comfortable? ~ No, it doesn't _____. It's _____ small.
- What do you think of these jeans? ~ Oh, they _____ terrible. Don't buy them.
- Are the shoes OK for you? ~ I take _____ 40, but these are _____ small.
- That suit looks _____. I ~ Yes, it's _____, isn't it? I'm going to buy it.
- Did this jumper _____? ~ No, it was _____ big for me.
- Do you like the trousers? ~ Yes, and they're also the _____ size.
- Christa thinks about her _____ a lot. ~ Well, she's a teenager. That's normal.



TEST YOURSELF

A Money in shops

You go into a shop to **buy** three books. They **cost** £9.50 each, so a **total** of £28.50. You think you have some **cash** (notes and coins) in your **wallet**, but when you look, you haven't got **enough** money with you to **pay in cash**, so you **pay by card**.

GLOSSARY

buy <i>pt</i> bought	give money to get sth
cost <i>pt</i> cost	How much does it cost ? = How much is it?
(£9.50) each	(£9.50) for one
total	the number you have when you add everything together
enough	(sounds like <i>stuff</i>) as much or as many as you need
pay <i>pt</i> paid	give sb money for sth. You pay in cash , but pay by debit/credit card .
debit card	If you use a debit card , the money comes out of your bank account (where you put money in and take it out).
credit card	A credit card is a bank card you use to buy sth and pay for it later.

SPOTLIGHT amounts of money

£10.99	ten pounds ninety nine (pence) / ten ninety-nine
€5.30	five euros thirty (cents) / five thirty
■ a one- pound coin	■ a ten- dollar note (NOT a ten-dollars note)



cash



notes



coins



debit card



wallet



purses

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You can pay for things in cash or by credit or debit card. **T**
- 1 If you pay in cash, you use coins and notes.
- 2 If you buy two things for £30 each, the total is £30.
- 3 If a cake costs \$5 and you have a ten-dollar note, you haven't got enough.
- 4 You can put a debit card in a wallet.
- 5 Things cost more if you pay in cash.
- 6 When you pay by debit card, the money comes from your bank account.
- 7 The past tense of *cost* is *cost*.

2 Complete the sentences using a word from the box.

- | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------|-------|------|--------|---------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|----------|------|
| cost | coins | cash | enough | -dollar | purse | total | dollars | credit card | bought ✓ | each |
|------|-------|------|--------|---------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|----------|------|
- ▶ She **bought** a new car yesterday.
 - 1 I paid in
 - 2 I put the notes in my
 - 3 I paid by
 - 4 I've got a few notes and
 - 5 The ticket €50.
 - 6 I need a ten note.
 - 7 It cost five twenty.
 - 8 That's a of £100.
 - 9 Have you got money?
 - 10 The peaches cost 50c

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you always have a lot of cash with you? Why? / Why not?
- 2 Where do you keep your money when you go out?
- 3 Do you have enough money with you today to buy a coffee? A book? Some jewellery?
- 4 Do you pay at the supermarket in cash or by debit/credit card?



TEST YOURSELF

B Money in adverts



Sell your car
for a great **price**
on eSellers.com!



Spend £50
on food and get
a **FREE** drink.



Pay your gas **bill**
online and **save** £40.

Earn \$30 an hour
in your own home.

☎ RING 0990 557731

Win cash
and **prizes!**
CALL US TODAY.



SALE
all products
50% off

GLOSSARY

sell <i>pt sold</i>	give sth to sb who pays you money for it OPP buy <i>pt bought</i>
price	the money you have to pay for sth
spend money (on sth) <i>pt spent</i>	pay money for sth
free	If sth is free , you don't pay for it.
bill	a piece of paper which shows how much you must pay
online	on the internet
save	If you save £40 on a bill, you pay £40 less.
earn	get money by working
win <i>pt won</i>	get money or a prize, often because you are better than others or lucky
prize	sth that you give to a person who wins a game, race, etc.
sale	a time when a shop sells sth for less money than usual
product	sth that people make or grow to sell
(50%) off	50% (= 50 per cent) taken off the normal price

4 Circle the correct answer.

- They're going to sell a new product / price.
 1 What's the **price** / **bill** of these shoes?
 2 I don't **spend** / **buy** a lot on food.
 3 I bought ten boxes and **earned** / **saved** £3.
 4 I **won** / **earned** £100 in a card game.
 5 The **prize** / **price** of the classes was \$400.

- 6 I bought this table **online** / **free**.
 7 Doctors can **win** / **earn** a lot of money.
 8 I **bought** / **sold** my old car and got a new one.
 9 She paid the restaurant **bill** / **price**.
 10 The shoes are 15% **out** / **off**.

5 Cover the glossary and write the past simple forms.

- pay paid
 1 buy
 2 spend

- 3 sell
 4 earn

- 5 win
 6 save

6 Complete the questions with a word from the glossary.

- How much do you spend on food every week?
 1 Do you ever shop?
 2 Do you pay restaurant in cash?
 3 Is water in restaurants?
 4 What's the of a litre of milk?
 5 Do you often buy things cheaper in a?
 6 Do women more than men?
 7 What kind of do men buy a lot?
 8 Have you ever won a?

ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

.....

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Places

PLACES	WHAT THEY SELL
shopping centre	everything
department store	everything (e.g. clothes, furniture, books, etc.) except food
supermarket	food, drinks, soap, cleaning products, etc.
chemist's/pharmacy	medicine, soap
baker's	bread and cakes
electrical store	TVs, computers, coffee machines, etc.
toy shop	dolls, model aeroplanes, building blocks
gift shop	T-shirts, toys, cups, etc.

toys



GLOSSARY

everything	all things
except	but not; not including
medicine	special liquids and pills to make you get better when you are ill
gift	sth that you give to or get from sb
toy	sth you present a thing for a child to play with

SPOTLIGHT noun + shop

For many shops, we often use a **noun + shop**, e.g. a shop where you buy books is a **bookshop**. ALSO **shoe shop**, **clothes shop**, **furniture shop**, **music shop** (for CDs, etc.), **fruit and vegetable shop**, etc.

1 Correct any spelling mistakes.

- ▶ furnishure shop furniture
- 1 cemist's chemist's
- 2 farmacy pharmacy
- 3 departement store department store
- 4 shoping centre shopping centre
- 5 medecine medicine
- 6 cloths shop clothes shop
- 7 pressent present
- 8 elektrical store electrical store

2 Underline the stressed part of the word. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ shopping centre bookshop department store clothes shop pharmacy
- supermarket electrical store furniture shop everything medicine except

3 Cross out the one wrong answer.

- ▶ I got the vegetables from the
 - a) supermarket
 - b) ~~baker's~~
 - c) fruit and vegetable shop
- 1 I got the medicine from the
 - a) chemist's
 - b) toy shop
 - c) pharmacy
- 2 I got these jeans from the
 - a) department store
 - b) gift shop
 - c) clothes shop
- 3 I got these boots from the ...
 - a) shoe shop
 - b) department store
 - c) furniture shop
- 4 I got Gemma's present from the ...
 - a) bookshop
 - b) fruit and vegetable shop
 - c) gift shop
- 5 I got this coffee machine from the ...
 - a) shopping centre
 - b) electrical store
 - c) music shop
- 6 I got the bread from the ...
 - a) baker's
 - b) shopping centre
 - c) chemist's

4 Where can you buy the following things? More than one answer is possible.

- A shop where you can buy ...
- ▶ sugar, rice and soap: a supermarket
- 1 cakes and bread:
- 2 something for a child to play with:
- 3 something for somebody's birthday:
- 4 a CD:
- 5 medicine:
- 6 new shoes:
- 7 a chair and a bed:
- 8 trousers and a shirt:
- 9 a TV and a fridge:



TEST YOURSELF

B Why go shopping?

Why go shopping?

A lot of people **shop online**, but sometimes they **prefer to** go shopping. Here's why:

- In the shops, you can **touch** and feel things, like clothes, and **try them on**.
- You can **choose particular** items, like fresh fruit or fish.
- You can see and **compare the quality** of items.
- You get a more **personal service** from a shop assistant than you do online.
- Often shops **reduce** the prices of items in the **sales**, which is very popular.

GLOSSARY

online	using a computer or the internet shop online
prefer	like one thing or person better than another: <i>Would you prefer juice or water?</i> <i>I prefer to buy fruit in a shop.</i>
touch	(sounds like <i>much</i>) put your hand or finger on sth or sb
try sth on	put sth on to see if you like it and it is the right size: <i>I tried the shoes on, but they were too small.</i>
choose particular	decide which thing you want choice n one only, and not any other: <i>She eats a particular kind of bread.</i>
compare	think about or look at things together so that you can see how they are different
quality service	how good or bad sth is the work that sb does for customers in a shop, restaurant, etc. serve v ; personal service service for one person
reduce sale(s)	make sth smaller or less a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual

5 Underline the correct word or phrase.

- good / big quality
- 1 compare two things / a choice
- 2 prefer to / or go home
- 3 try the shoes / the shoes on
- 4 a choice of two things / shop online
- 5 person / personal service
- 6 shop the sales / online
- 7 a particular shop / sales
- 8 reduce the sales / the price
- 9 touch the sky / somebody's face

6 Match 1–8 with a–h.

- They gave more choice
- 1 He tried the coat on
- 2 She reduced the price for me
- 3 We compared the prices
- 4 The shop assistant had to
- 5 The quality of clothes was terrible
- 6 I touched the jacket
- 7 I shop online
- a so I was very happy.
- b and it felt very nice.
- c when I can't find what I want in the shops.
- d but it was too small.
- e so I didn't buy anything.
- f to their customers. ✓
- g serve three customers at the same time.
- h and bought the cheapest chair.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the words in the questions.

- 1 Do you p..... supermarkets or small shops?
- 2 Is it easy for you to c..... clothes in shops?
- 3 Is good s..... in shops very important to you?
- 4 Is there a p..... kind of shoe that you wear?
- 5 When you buy new clothes, do you always t..... them ?
- 6 Do you prefer to go to the shops, or shop o..... ?
- 7 What time of year are the s..... in your country?
- 8 Do you like to t..... and feel things before you buy them?

8 Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

29 Possessions

A Family possessions



One of my favourite **possessions** is a **diary**¹ that **belonged** to my aunt.



A **recording**⁵ of my grandmother's **voice**. She was quite a famous singer. It has very **happy memories** for me.



My grandfather's old **camera**². I've also got some of his old **tools**³. I had his **gun**, but I haven't got it any **more** – I gave it to a museum.



A book of my mother's **recipes**⁴. I use it a lot.

GLOSSARY

possessions	the things that you have or own
belong to sb	That book belongs to me. = It is my book.
gun	a weapon that shoots out pieces of metal to kill or hurt people or animals
(not) any more	used at the end of negative sentences and questions to mean 'now'
recording	sounds on CD, video or film
voice	the sounds that you make when you speak or sing
memory	sth that you remember

1 These words all have the same weak sound in them, as in **important**, **remember** and **comfortable**. **Underline** the sound in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

► family 1 recipe 2 memory 3 diary 4 camera 5 possession

2 Write the name of the possession that matches the definition.

- You use this when you do a special job with your hands. a tool
- 1 You take photos with this. _____ 5 You use this when you're singing or talking. _____
- 2 You read these when you're cooking. _____ 6 You write what you're going to do in this. _____
- 3 things that belong to you _____ 7 sounds on a computer file, CD, etc. _____
- 4 This can kill people or animals. _____ 8 something that you remember _____

3 Complete the dialogues.

- Do you know the date of the party? ~ Yes, I wrote it in my diary.
- 1 Do you still sing? ~ I did a few years ago, but I don't.
- 2 How are you going to cut that wood? ~ I have a special _____ for it.
- 3 How did you make that pasta dish? ~ I used a _____ from my Italian cookbook.
- 4 Have you still got that photo of grandfather? ~ Yes, it brings back happy _____.
- 5 That man looks very dangerous. ~ Yes! He's got a _____!
- 6 I can't hear what she's saying. ~ No, she's got a very quiet _____.
- 7 Whose car is that? ~ It _____ to my brother.
- 8 You love that old diary of grandmother's. ~ I do. It's one of my favourite _____.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Have you got any important family possessions? If so, what are they? _____
- 2 Have you got happy memories of school? What did you like? _____
- 3 Do you use a camera, or do you use the camera on your phone? Why? _____
- 4 Have you got a recording of a family member's voice? If so, who and why? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Describing possessions



fan



electric fan



phone (ALSO telephone)




phone / mobile (phone)

A fan is an **unusual shape** and is used to make you cooler. It's made of **wood** and **material** or paper. There are also **electric fans**.

A **mobile phone** is a **device** made of **metal** and **plastic**. Modern phones are **flat** and thin. It has a lot of **different purposes** – a phone, an **alarm clock**, a **digital camera**, or a device for playing games.

GLOSSARY

unusual	If sth is unusual , you do not see it often or it does not happen often.
shape	A circle ○ and a square □ are two different shapes .
wood	Wood comes from trees.
material	cloth you use for making clothes, curtains, etc.
device	a piece of equipment you use for doing a special job
metal	Gold, silver and iron are types of metal .

plastic	an artificial substance that is used for making many different things, e.g. plastic flowers , plastic cups
flat	thin and wide and with no parts higher than the rest
purpose	the reason for doing sth
alarm clock	a clock that makes a noise to wake you up
digital	this is a digital clock —  ALSO digital camera/TV

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ Chairs are often made of wood. <u>T</u> | 6 The purpose tells you why you are doing something. |
| 1 Clothes are often made of plastic. | 7 If something is unusual, it's normal. |
| 2 Trousers are made of material. | 8 An electric fan is useful if it's very cold. |
| 3 A digital television is flat. | 9 Mobile phones and digital cameras are devices. |
| 4 An alarm clock is often made of material. | |
| 5 A circle and a square are different shapes. | |

6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ The / of that big electric fan is to make the room cooler. <u>purpose</u> | |
| 1 I use my mobile as an clock in the mornings. | |
| 2 My desk is made of and is very old. | |
| 3 What is the table? ~ I think it's round. | |
| 4 He's got a very alarm clock – it's made of wood. | |
| 5 The garden chairs are made of white and they're very hard. | |
| 6 A computer is made of and plastic. | |
| 7 What do you call the that turns the TV on and off? | |

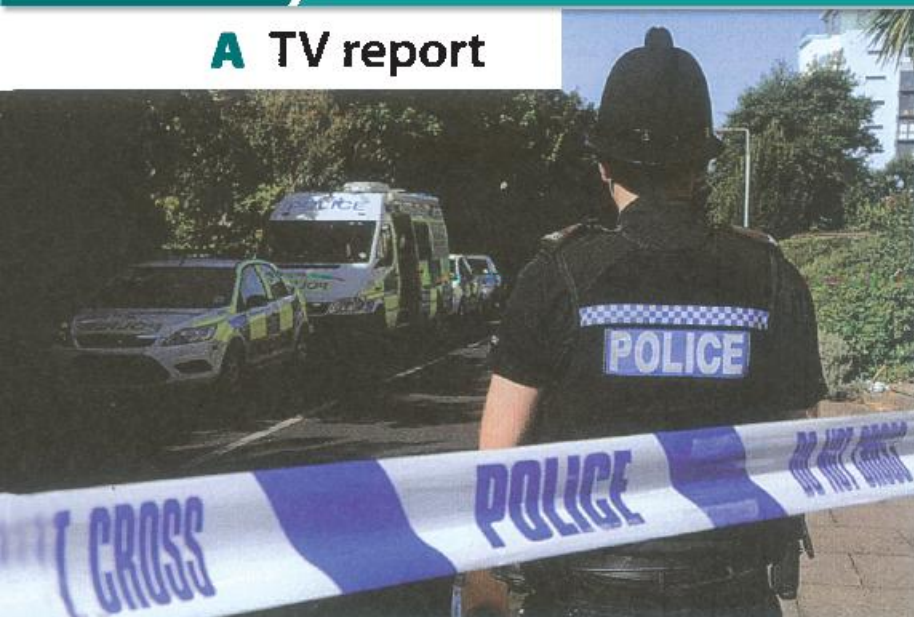
7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What shape is the table in your living room / dining room?
- Do you use the alarm clock on your mobile phone?
- What can you see in front of you that is made of wood? Plastic? Metal?
- Have you got a digital TV?
- Do you ever use a fan or an electric fan?



TEST YOURSELF

A TV report



Police have **found** the **body** of a 19-year-old man in a park in East London. The **dead** body was **discovered** by a woman walking her dog early this morning. The police have not **named** the man, but there has been a **series** of **crimes** in the **area** in **recent** weeks. They think the man was **killed** and the **attack** was **planned**.

GLOSSARY

find <i>pt/pp</i> found	see or get sth after looking
body	the whole form of a person or animal
dead	not living opp alive
discover	find or learn sth for the first time discovery <i>n</i>
name	tell people sb's name
series	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: <i>a series of accidents</i>
crime	sth that sb does that is wrong and against the law, e.g. if you attack or kill sb. A person who does this is a criminal .
area	a part of a town, a country or the world
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
kill	make sb die
attack	an act which is done to hurt sb or damage sth attack <i>v</i> : He attacked the man with a knife.
plan	decide what you are going to do and how you are going to do it plan <i>n</i>

1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ The girl was alive. / The girl was a criminal.
- 1 They found the body. / They discovered the body.
- 2 The dog was dead. / The dog was alive.
- 3 They named him. / They said who he was.
- 4 He attacked someone. / He killed someone.

D

- 5 It's a recent problem. / It's an old problem.
- 6 This is a nice area of town. / This is a nice part of town.
- 7 a series of crimes / a number of crimes
- 8 They planned the crime. / They discovered the crime.

2 Answer Yes or No.

- ▶ Does a person have a **body**? Yes
- 1 If someone is **dead**, can they speak? Yes
- 2 Can a **body** be a dead person? Yes
- 3 If you **kill** somebody, are they dead? Yes
- 4 Do the police look for **criminals**? Yes

- 5 If a crime was **recent**, was it a long time ago? Yes
- 6 Is a **series** more than one? Yes
- 7 If you **attack** somebody, are they happy? Yes
- 8 If you **discover** something, have you lost it? Yes

3 Complete the sentences.

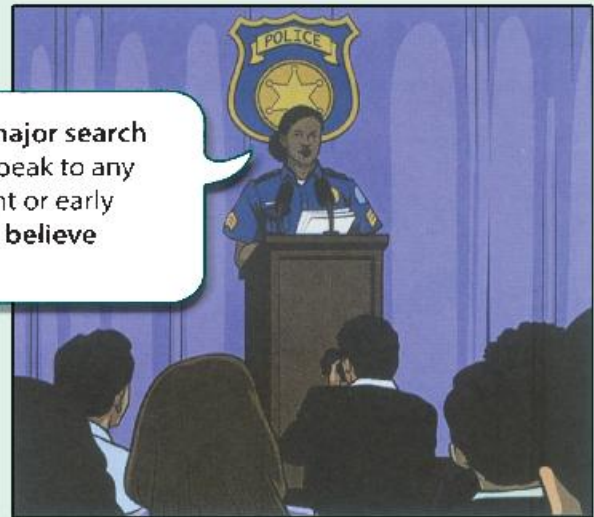
- ▶ There were purple marks on the body.
- 1 The police have _____ a body in the woods outside town.
- 2 I never go there because it's a dangerous _____ of town at night.
- 3 The woman was _____ by the police as Josephine Smith.
- 4 Two men _____ an old man in a bar, and he had to go to hospital.
- 5 The man died later in hospital but the police don't know who _____ him.
- 6 The police are worried about the number of serious _____ in the town.
- 7 There has been a _____ of car accidents on that road.
- 8 The old man was still _____ when they found him, and he was taken to hospital.



TEST YOURSELF

B Police statement

... We think the crime **happened late** last night, so a **major search** of the area is now **taking place** and we would like to speak to any **members of the public** who were in that area last night or early this morning. I would also like to **stress** that we do not **believe** there is any **danger** to the public.



GLOSSARY

statement	sth you say or write, which is often formal
late	near the end of a period of time: <i>He's in his late 20s</i> (– 27-29).
major	large or important
search	when you try to find sb or sth search v
member	sb who is part of a group or team
the public	people in general; everybody
stress	say sth strongly to show that it is important
believe	think that sth is true or possible
danger	the possibility that sth bad may happen: <i>You may be in danger if you are alone. dangerous adj OPP safe</i>

SPOTLIGHT *happen and take place*

These words have the same basic meaning, but **happen** usually describes something that is **not** planned:

- How did the accident **happen**?

Take place usually describes something that is planned:

- The meeting **took place** yesterday evening.

4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ a member of the team / one person in the team S
- 1 a major problem / a small problem D
- 2 They believe it's true. / They think it's true.
- 3 The place is dangerous. / The place is safe.
- 4 It was late last night. / It was early last night.
- 5 members of the public / members of the police
- 6 They're searching for him. / They're trying to find him.
- 7 They made a statement. / They made a decision.
- 8 It happens every year. / It takes place every year.

5 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ A statement is something you say or write.
- 1 If you search an area, you try to somebody or something.
- 2 A member is somebody who is part of a
- 3 If you stress something, you are saying it is
- 4 If you believe something is true, then you it is true.
- 5 The public are in general.
- 6 If something takes place, it

6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Have the police spoken to anyone? ~ Yes, they're talking to the public now.
- 1 He's about 28, isn't he? ~ Yeah, he's in his 20s.
- 2 Have the police said anything? ~ Yes, they've made a formal
- 3 Is he safe? ~ No, he could be in
- 4 Have the police found anything? ~ No, but they're the area now.
- 5 Is it important? ~ Yes, it's a problem.
- 6 Do you think they'll find the boy? ~ Yes, I they will.
- 7 How did the fire ? ~ I think it was a cigarette that started it.
- 8 Are the police talking to people? ~ Yes, they're interviewing members of the



TEST YOURSELF

A Common health problems

What's the matter?

I don't feel well.

I've got ...



a headache



toothache



stomach ache



backache



a cold



a cough



(the) flu



a temperature



I feel sick.

GLOSSARY

common	If sth is common , it happens often.
health	If you are in good health , you are well, not often ill. healthy adj OPP unhealthy
a cold	a common illness of the nose and throat
(the) flu 'U'	an illness like a very bad cold, and often with a temperature

SPOTLIGHT *be ill and be sick*

Ill means not well. An **illness** is a period of feeling ill.

■ *Rafa's not here today: he's **ill**. He didn't go to school because of **illness**.*

To **be sick** usually means to bring up food from your stomach (ALSO **vomit**). If you **feel sick**, you think you are going to **be sick**.

■ *I felt **sick**, so I ran to the bathroom. I **was sick** on the floor.*

1 Circle the correct answer.

► I'm /I've got a temperature.

1 What / What's the matter?

2 She feels / 's got a cold.

3 He doesn't feel / be well.

4 I feel / 've got toothache.

5 I've got headache / a headache.

6 Is / Has she got a temperature?

7 She's a healthy / health person.

8 I don't feel / be ill.

9 Do you feel / be sick?

10 A cold is a common / an often illness.

11 She is / 's got backache.

12 He's got flu / a flu.

13 I don't feel / haven't got a cough.

14 Does he feel / Has he got stomach ache?

2 Complete the sentences.

► I had to stand up for ten hours. Now I've got
backache.

1 She smokes a lot, and now she's got a bad

~ Yes, and she doesn't do any exercise. She's very

2 He's got a . Look, it's 39 degrees.

3 What's the ? You look terrible.

~ I don't feel and I've got
: I need to see a dentist.

4 I ate too much at lunch, and now I've got

5 My little boy had four ice creams and now he feels

6 I've got a temperature and a terrible headache. I think I've got

7 She's often ill. She's not in good

8 Flu is a horrible , and it's very in winter.

9 I don't think he's got flu. It's probably just a bad



TEST YOURSELF

B What should I do?



If you need **medical advice**, you **should** go to the **chemist's**.

Take some of those **tablets** to help you **rest** and sleep well.

You should **stay in bed** for a **couple of days**. You'll soon **get better**.

Have soup and hot drinks to **keep** you warm.

SPOTLIGHT *should* | verb

You use **should** when you tell people what you think is the best thing for them to do. **Should** is used for giving advice.

- I feel terrible. ~ You **should** go to bed.
- ~ You **shouldn't** go to work today.

GLOSSARY

weak	If you don't eat for a few days, you feel weak . OPP strong
catch an illness <i>pt caught</i>	get an illness, e.g. <i>a cold, a virus</i>
virus	a living thing that is too small to see but can make you ill. Flu is caused by a virus .
medical	connected to doctors, hospitals and medicine

advice	words you say that help sb decide what to do
chemist's	a shop where you get medicine ALSO pharmacy
rest	relax, sleep or do nothing
stay in bed	go to bed and not get up
a couple	two or a small number: a couple of days/weeks , etc.
get better	feel less ill SYN improve
keep (warm)	stay (warm)

3 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ illness / medical D

1 virus / advice

2 should / couple

3 weak / keep

4 couple / improve

5 catch / chemist's

6 advice / caught

4 True or false? Write T or F.

▶ If you stay in bed, you can rest. T

1 If you get better, you feel weaker.

2 A couple of weeks is about four weeks.

3 You can get tablets at the chemist's.

4 If you don't sleep for a week, you feel strong.

5 A chemist's is the same as a pharmacy.

6 A doctor can give you medical advice.

7 You shouldn't keep warm if you have flu.

8 If you stay in bed, you get up.

9 You shouldn't go to work if you have a virus.

10 If you start to improve, you get better.

5 Complete the text.

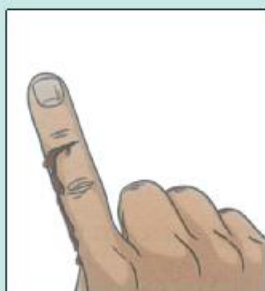
Last week, I got home from travelling around Europe and I felt really ill. I probably ▶ caught a virus on the plane. I (1) in bed for a (2) of days, but I didn't (3) I was worried, so I phoned my doctor to get some medical (4) She gave me the name of some (5) and told me I (6) go to the (7) and get some. She also said I had to stay in bed and (8) as much as possible. I had hot drinks to (9) me warm. I think I'm (10) better now, but I still feel quite (11)

Send



TEST YOURSELF

32 Injuries



I cut my finger and there was a lot of blood!



I fell over and now I've got a terrible pain in my leg.



My arm really hurts. I hit it on the table.



I burnt my hand when I picked up the pan.



We were in a car accident and I broke my leg – my friend also had serious injuries. We've been put on drugs for the pain.

GLOSSARY

cut <i>pt</i> cut	(see picture) cut <i>n</i>	accident	sth bad that happens, but not because you planned it
pain (in your back, leg, etc.)	the feeling that you have in your body when you are hurt or ill	break <i>pt</i> broke	(see picture) broken <i>adj</i> : a broken arm, leg, etc.
hurt <i>pt</i> hurt	feel pain	serious	very bad
hit <i>pt</i> hit	touch sth very hard SYN knock	injury	A cut finger, a broken arm, etc. are injuries to your body.
burn <i>pt</i> burnt/ burned	(see picture)	drug	medicine you take to make you feel well again

SPOTLIGHT injuries

We say:

- I **cut** my finger. (**NOT** I cut the finger.)
- She **hurt** her knee. (**NOT** She hurt the knee.)
- I **burnt** my arm. (**NOT** I burnt the arm.)

1 Complete the sentences.

- Did he break his leg in the accident?
- I hit my shoulder on the door, and it really
- She fell off her bike and has a small on her knee.
- Dad was driving at night in the rain and had a bad
- I fell and hurt my ankle and the pain is terrible. I think it's probably

- She's in hospital and they're giving her a lot of for the pain.
- Joe was in a terrible accident and had a really bad to his back.
- He went to the doctor because he had a terrible in his stomach.
- He had to go to hospital because he his hand with a bread knife.
- She had a car accident, but she's OK and it's not

2 Correct one mistake in each sentence.

- He's got a break arm. broken
- She had a pain on her arm.
- He had a serious injure.
- I hit my head at the door.
- I knocked in my head on the wall.

- I burnt the mouth on the hot soup.
- She cutted her foot on the broken glass.
- My arm is hurt a lot.
- The doctor gave me some drogs for the pain.
- I broken a bone in my ankle.

3 Complete the questions.

- Have you ever had a arm or leg?
- Have you ever taken for pain?
- Do you ever have bad in your back?
- When did you last cut finger or hand?
- Have you ever your hand when you were cooking?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

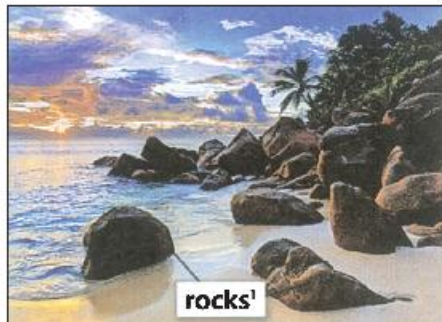
.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

ARE YOU GOOD at geography?



rocks¹

- How many **islands** are there in the **world**?
1,000 / 2,000 / 3,000
- Which is the largest **desert**?
the Gobi Desert / the Arabian Desert / the Sahara Desert
- How old are the **rocks**¹ at the bottom of the Grand Canyon?
half a billion / a billion / two billion years old
- Which is the **deepest** ocean?
the Atlantic Ocean / the Pacific Ocean / the Indian Ocean
- Which **region** of the Earth has the largest area of **forest**?
Siberia in Russia / the Amazon in Brazil / Quebec in Canada
- Is there **anywhere** on Earth where **humans** have never walked?
Yes, a few places. / No, **nowhere**.

GLOSSARY

island	a piece of land with water all around it
world	the Earth with all its countries and people
desert	a large, dry area of land, e.g. the Sahara
deep	Sth that is deep goes down a long way.
region	a part of a country or the world
forest	a large area of land covered by trees
human	a person human <i>adj</i>

SPOTLIGHT *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere, everywhere*

Somewhere means 'in or to a place', but you do not say or know where.
 ■ They are **somewhere** in the Sahara Desert.
Anywhere is used in questions and negative sentences.
 ■ Is there a house **anywhere** on the island? I can't see a house **anywhere**.
Nowhere means 'in no place'.
 ■ There is **nowhere** to stay in this region.
Everywhere means 'in every place'.
 ■ There are rocks **everywhere** on the beach.

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|---|
| ▶ rock / <u>everywhere</u> <u>D</u> | 3 world / <u>forest</u> | 6 <u>somewhere</u> / <u>nowhere</u> |
| 1 <u>desert</u> / <u>anywhere</u> | 4 <u>desert</u> / <u>region</u> | 7 <u>island</u> / <u>human</u> |
| 2 <u>island</u> / <u>somewhere</u> | 5 <u>desert</u> / <u>forest</u> | 8 <u>human</u> / <u>nowhere</u> |

2 Write Yes or No.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ▶ Is the world bigger than the sun? <u>No</u> | |
| 1 Is Sicily an island ? | 5 Are trees human ? |
| 2 Does it rain a lot in the desert ? | 6 Do you find rocks in the sea? |
| 3 Are there trees in a forest ? | 7 Is a river as deep as the middle of the sea? |
| 4 Is a region the same as a country ? | 8 Is everywhere the same as somewhere ? |

3 Complete the sentences with *anywhere/somewhere/nowhere/everywhere*.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ <u>Everywhere</u> in the world, there are good people and bad people. | |
| 1 Is there in the forest where we can buy a coffee? | 5 There was quiet in the forest; there were noises everywhere. |
| 2 Are there any seas in the desert?
~ No, | 6 Ali is in the forest, but I'm not sure where exactly. |
| 3 Are there any humans on the island?
~ Yes, they live in the north. | 7 There isn't in the region where humans live. |
| 4 The rocks are under the water.
I can see hundreds of them. | 8 The deepest river in the world is
in Africa, I think. |

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the quiz at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Environmental problems



Every year, we are **destroying** more and more forests. 15 billion trees are **disappearing** every year. As the world population **increases**, the **land** is being used to **build** cities, grow food and make furniture. This will be a **disaster** for the **environment** and will bring more **extreme** weather. **Governments** around the world need to work together to stop this disaster.

GLOSSARY

destroy	break sth completely so that you can't use it again or it is gone
disappear	If sth disappears , it goes away so that people can't see it.
increase	become bigger or more increase n
land	the part of the Earth that is not the sea
build pt/pp built	make sth by putting parts together: build houses
disaster	sth very bad that happens, and may hurt a lot of people
the environment	the air, water, land, animals, and plants around us environmental adj
extreme	very great or strong
government	The government is the group of people who control a country and decide what laws it will have.

1 Underline the stressed syllable. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ to increase 2 disaster 4 disappear
- 1 government 3 environment 5 destroy

2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Extreme weather is a disaster / *land* for growing food.
- 1 The number of people in the world is **destroying** / *increasing*.
- 2 Forests around the world are *building* / **disappearing**.
- 3 The **government** / *environment* has to do something quickly.
- 4 We need to *build* / **destroy** more cities for people to live in.
- 5 Unfortunately, we are *increasing* / **destroying** more forests every year.
- 6 People need *land* / **the environment** to build houses on.

3 Cover the glossary and complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you make something like a house or factory, you build it.
- 1 If something gets bigger, it _____.
- 2 The people who are in control of a country are the _____.
- 3 Something very bad that happens and hurts people is a _____.
- 4 The place where people build homes or grow food is the _____.
- 5 The water, air, land, animals and plants are all the _____.
- 6 If something goes away and you can't see it any more, it _____.
- 7 If you break something and can't use it again, you _____ it.
- 8 In the desert, you can have _____ heat and cold.



TEST YOURSELF

B Talking about the environment



coal



petrol



electricity



gas

Word	Example	Meaning
source	<i>The forests are a source of wood.</i>	a place, person or thing that you get sth from
energy	<i>Coal, petrol, gas and electricity are all sources of energy.</i>	Energy comes from gas, electricity, coal, petrol, etc. and is used to make machines work and to make heat and light.
develop	<i>Scientists are developing cleaner ways to use coal.</i>	think of or produce a new idea or product, etc.
pollution	<i>There is a lot of pollution in rivers and oceans.</i>	the act of making the air, rivers, etc. dirty and dangerous
cause	<i>What is the cause of the oceans getting warmer?</i>	the thing or person that makes sth happen cause v
recycle	<i>If we recycle more, we help the environment because we don't make so many products from new materials.</i>	do sth to paper, glass, etc. so that they can be used again

4 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- polution pollution
 1 recicle
 2 energie

- 3 gaz
 4 cole
 5 petrole

- 6 elektricity
 7 develope
 8 cuase

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- You can't see electricity. T
 1 Pollution is a good thing.
 2 Smoking cigarettes causes illness.
 3 If you recycle something, you use it again.
 4 Coal is black and hard.
 5 You can see gas.

- 6 You put petrol in cars.
 7 If you develop something, you destroy it.
 8 We use coal to get energy.
 9 Pollution is good for fish and animals.
 10 Humans are one cause of pollution.

6 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- We should recycle e
 1 Gas is a
 2 We need to develop
 3 We use electricity
 4 Pollution is the cause
 5 Coal is used to
 6 Petrol in cars causes

- a of serious illness.
 b a lot of pollution.
 c make a fire.
 d new types of energy.
 e more bottles. ✓
 f source of energy.
 g to keep our houses warm.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 In your home, what type of energy do you use?
 2 In your country, which is more expensive: gas, electricity or coal?
 3 Is there a lot of air pollution where you live?
 4 What causes pollution in your home town?
 5 Do you recycle a lot? If so, what do you recycle?



TEST YOURSELF

Where are you from?

Where do you come from?

Continents and areas in the world	Country <i>I'm from / I come from ...</i>	Nationality (and language) <i>I'm ...</i>
Europe	the Czech Republic	Czech
	France	French
	Germany	German
	Greece	Greek
	Hungary	Hungarian
	Italy	Italian
	Poland	Polish
	Portugal	Portuguese
	Russia	Russian
	Spain	Spanish
	Switzerland	Swiss (German, French, Italian)
	Turkey	Turkish
Asia	India	Indian (Hindi)
	China	Chinese
	Japan	Japanese
	South Korea	Korean
	Thailand	Thai
North America	Canada	Canadian (English, French)
	the United States (of America)	American (English)
Central America ALSO Latin America	Mexico	Mexican (Spanish)
South America ALSO Latin America	Argentina	Argentinian (Spanish)
	Brazil	Brazilian (Portuguese)
Africa and the Middle East	Egypt	Egyptian (Arabic)
	Saudi Arabia	Saudi (Arabic)
Australia	Australia	Australian (English)

The word for the language and the word for the nationality are usually the same word, e.g. *Czech*.

Jana is Czech. Do you speak Czech?

Sometimes they are different, e.g. people from *Mexico* are *Mexican*, but the language they speak is *Spanish*. Countries, nationalities and languages begin with capital letters: *Japan* (NOT *japan*).



GLOSSARY

country	e.g. France, China, Brazil
nationality	e.g. American, Swiss, French
language	e.g. German, Japanese, Arabic
continent	e.g. Asia, Europe, Africa
(Great) Britain	= England, Wales and Scotland
the United Kingdom / the UK	= England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland

SPOTLIGHT people from a country

To talk about people from a country, we often add *s* to the nationality.

- *Italians, Brazilians, Thais, Greeks*

Some plural forms are irregular.

- *The British, the French, the English, the Spanish, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Swiss*

1 Underline the stressed syllable for the nationalities. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- Poland / Polish
1 China / Chinese
2 Hungary / Hungarian
3 Germany / German
4 Italy / Italian
► Portugal / Portuguese
5 Japan / Japanese
6 Canada / Canadian
7 Korea / Korean
8 Egypt / Egyptian

2 True or false? Write T or F.

- Argentinians speak Spanish. T
1 Saudis speak Arabic.
2 Mexicans speak Spanish.
3 Thais speak Japanese.
4 Hungarians speak Hungarian.
5 Australians speak Australian.
6 Brazilians speak Portuguese.
7 Americans speak English.
8 The Swiss speak French, Spanish or German.

3 Complete the sentences.

- Northern Ireland is in the UK.
1 Scotland is in Great
2 Hungary is in
3 Mexico is in America.
4 Africa is a
5 Argentina is in America.
6 Egypt is in
7 Saudi Arabia is in
8 India is in
9 Asia is a

4 Write the first letter of each word. Remember, countries and nationalities begin with CAPITAL LETTERS. Then write C (country) or N (nationality) next to each one.

- S audi N
1 taly
2 ungary
3 exico
4 wiss
5 hina
► B ritain C
6 zech
7 gypt
8 panish
9 razil
10 urkey
11 reek
12 rench
13 ermany
14 ussia
15 rgentinian
16 ortugal

5 Complete the text.

My name's Magda, and I'm studying ► En glish in London at the moment. I'm from (1) Po , and I live with two students: Silvia, who's (2) Br , and Irina who's from (3) Ru . Irina speaks (4) Ru and (5) Po . We go to a language school in the centre. Our class has many nationalities: there are two (6) Ja students, a (7) Ko man, three (8) Tu women, a young (9) It girl, a (10) Ch boy and four students from (11) Sp . Our teacher is Dennis, and he's (12) Au .

6 Complete the boxes with nationalities ending in these letters.

-ian	-ish	-an	-ese
► Italian			
.....
.....
.....
.....

7 ABOUT YOU Do you know people from any of these countries? Put a (✓) next to the country if you do. If possible, tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Geography

Brazil is **enormous**. The Atlantic Ocean¹ is in the **east**. The **coast**² is 3,000 **kilometres** long. In the **north**, **south** and **west**, there are **borders**³ with ten different countries. The longest **river**⁴ is the Amazon, and Pico da Neblina is about 3,000 metres **high**: it's the **highest mountain**⁵ in Brazil. Many of the **major** cities are **on the coast**, but not the **capital**, Brasilia. The most **famous** city is Rio de Janeiro, which has Sugarloaf Mountain and Corcovada, plus some great **beaches**, like Copacabana. It is very **popular** with tourists.



GLOSSARY

enormous	very big SYN huge	capital	a city where a country has its government
3,000 kilometres (km) long	3,000 km from one end to the other	famous	If sth is famous , many people know about it: Rio is famous for Carnival.
3,000 metres (m) high	3,000 m from top to bottom (A mountain is high . NOT <i>tall</i>)	beach	an area of sand next to the sea, e.g. Copacabana
major	large and important	popular	If sth is popular , many people like it.

1 Study the map of Brazil and the text, then complete the sentences.

- Brasilia is the capital.
- 1 The Amazon is the longest
- 2 Pico da Neblina is the highest
- 3 Porto Alegre is on the
- 4 Pico da Neblina is 3,000 m
- 5 The Amazon is nearly 7,000 km
- 6 There's a between Brazil and Argentina.
- 7 The Atlantic is on the coast.
- 8 Sao Paulo is a city.
- 9 The Amazon is in the of Brazil.
- 10 Brazil is an country.
- 11 Rio's beaches are with tourists.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- Is Porto Alegre a small place? ~ No, it's a major city.
- 1 Is Iguape? ~ No, most people don't know about it.
- 2 China's enormous. ~ Yes, it's, isn't it?
- 3 Is California on the east coast? ~ No, it's on the coast.
- 4 Is New York in the south? ~ No, it's in the of the USA.
- 5 Is the Pacific a sea? ~ No, it's an
- 6 How is the Nile? ~ It's 6,853 kilometres
- 7 Is Copacabana the capital? ~ No, it's a famous
- 8 Do people go there a lot? ~ Yes, it's very

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

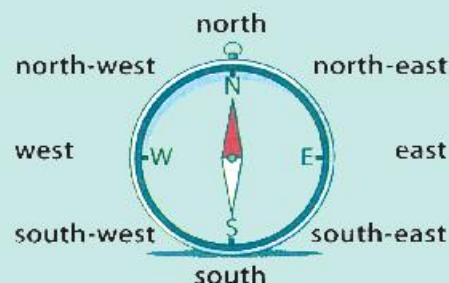
- 1 What's the capital, and where is it?
- 2 What are some of the other major cities?
- 3 Does it have borders with any other countries? If so, what are they?
- 4 What's the longest river?
- 5 What's the highest mountain?
- 6 Which are the most famous places in your country?



TEST YOURSELF

B Facts about places

I live in ...	
a big city	in the north-west of Poland
a town	on the coast
a small village	on the River Dee
It has a population of over / just under a million/100,000.	
Interesting facts: It's famous for ...	
its ancient buildings	
its industry (computers, cars, etc.)	
its culture	
its fantastic climate	



GLOSSARY

city	a very large town, e.g. 2 million people
town	smaller than a city, e.g. 30,000 people
village	smaller than a town, and in the countryside
population	the number of people who live in a place
over (a thousand)	more than (a thousand) OPP under
just under	a little under ALSO just over
fact	a piece of true information
ancient	very old OPP modern
industry	the work of making things, e.g. cars, electronics
culture	activities like art, music, theatre, literature, etc.
climate	the normal weather in a place

- 4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise the words.

- culture / industry D
- 1 town / south 3 famous / ancient 5 city / culture
- 2 ancient / climate 4 population / culture 6 village / just

- 5 Write the phrases in the correct columns.

in the north-east ✓ mobile phone industry about 3,000	on the coast just under 50,000 a large city	famous for its modern buildings on the River Duero a warm climate	a small village a small town	over two million south-west of the capital a city full of culture
SIZE	WHERE?	POPULATION	INTERESTING FACTS	
.....	<u>in the north-east</u>	.....	.....
.....	
.....	
.....	

- 6 Complete the text about Turin.

Turin is a large ► city, 140 km south-west (1) Milan, (2) the north-west (3) Italy. It is (4) the River Po and three other rivers. It has a (5) of about one million (in fact, it is 908,000). It is famous for one very important (6): car-making. It also has many (7) buildings, including palaces and castles. The (8) is cold in winter and hot in summer.

- 7 ABOUT YOU Write a similar text about your city/town/village.

.....

.....

.....



TEST YOURSELF

A What's the weather like?



It's **sunny**. The sun's shining. It's a bright day.



It's **cloudy**. There are a lot of grey clouds.



It's **raining**. The roads are wet. There's a lot of rain.



It's **windy**. The wind is blowing, or blew



There's **snow** on the mountains and ice on the river. **icy** adj

What's the weather like?

SPOTLIGHT *a lot (of) and a bit (of)*

a lot of / a bit of + noun verb + **a lot / a bit** **a bit** + adjective

- We had **a lot of** rain. ■ It snowed **a lot**. • It's **a bit** cold today.
- There's **a bit of** snow. ■ It's raining **a bit**. ■ It was **a bit** windy.

We don't usually use **a bit** with positive adjectives: **NOT a bit sunny/good**.

1 Match 1–9 with a–j.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------|---|------------------------------|
| ► It's | d | a | clouds in the sky today. |
| 1 It | ..... | b | it bright and sunny outside? |
| 2 The wind | ..... | c | isn't raining. |
| 3 It isn't | ..... | d | cold this morning. ✓ |
| 4 The sun | ..... | e | of snow on the roads. |
| 5 Is | ..... | f | rain a lot here. |
| 6 There's a bit | ..... | g | the weather like? |
| 7 There are lots of | ..... | h | very windy. |
| 8 It doesn't | ..... | i | blew my hat off. |
| 9 What's | ..... | j | is shining. |

2 Rewrite the sentences keeping the same meaning.

- There was a lot of rain. It rained a lot.
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 It isn't wet outside. It isn't | 5 Is it hot or cold today? What's the like? |
| 2 Is the sun shining? Is it? | 6 There are a few clouds. It's a bit |
| 3 We often have snow. It often | 7 Is there any ice on the roads? Is it? |
| 4 She doesn't like wind. She doesn't like weather. | 8 It's windy today. The wind is today. |

3 Write *a lot, a lot of, a bit or a bit of*.

- We had a lot of rain this morning, but it's good for the garden.
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 It's wet today. | 5 It snowed last night – only two centimetres. |
| 2 There was wind this morning. I couldn't use my umbrella. | 6 It rained yesterday – I couldn't go out. |
| 3 It snows in the mountains – sometimes over twenty centimetres a day. | 7 It's not a bad day. It's cloudy but with some sun. |
| 4 There's rain, but not much. You don't need your umbrella. | 8 Don't go out in your car. There's ice on the roads. |



TEST YOURSELF

B Weather in the seasons



GLOSSARY

change	become sth different
all the time	always or very often
dry	with no rain OPP wet
shower	a short period of rain
suddenly	quickly and often in a very surprising way
storm	(see picture)
better (than)	comparative form of good (here – nicer) OPP worse (than) : <i>the weather here is quite good, but the weather in the south is better.</i>
strong winds	A 50 kph wind is a strong wind .
heavy rain	a lot of rain
sky	the sky is above you when you look up into the air; clear skies are blue with no clouds in them
extremely	very

In my country, the weather in spring **changes all the time**. It can be **dry** and **warm**, but we often have **showers**. It can get very hot in the cities in summer and then **suddenly** we have a **storm**. It's a lot **better** on the coast, where it's cooler. In autumn, we have **strong winds** and **heavy rain**. Winter brings clear skies and sunny days, but it's **extremely** cold.

4 Circle the correct word.

► Warm weather is very nice / uncomfortable.

1 It was very sunny between the *showers* / *storm*.

2 *Suddenly* / *Extremely*, it started raining.

3 The sky is very *warm* / *clear* this morning.

4 Showers usually last a few *hours* / *minutes*.

5 We had some very *big* / *strong* winds last night.

6 The weather *changes* / *rains* all the time.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right and the word IN CAPITALS.

- | | | |
|---|--------------|-------------------------------|
| ► It's wet outside. | RAIN | It's <u>raining outside</u> . |
| 1 It rained a lot last night. | HEAVY | There was |
| 2 The weather here isn't as good as Spain. | BETTER | The weather in Spain |
| 3 There was a bit of rain in the afternoon. | SHOWER | There |
| 4 The weather's different every day. | CHANGE | The weather |
| 5 It isn't wet today. | DRY | It |
| 6 We had heavy rain and strong winds. | STORM | We had |
| 7 There are no clouds in the sky. | CLEAR | There are |
| 8 There's snow every day in winter. | ALL THE TIME | It |

6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Does your country have ...

- storms in summer? We often have storms in summer.
- 1 a lot of showers in spring?
- 2 much snow?
- 3 good weather in summer?
- 4 dry winters?
- 5 heavy rain in spring?
- 6 strong winds?

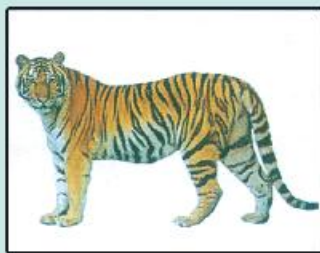


TEST YOURSELF

38 Animals, insects and birds



lion



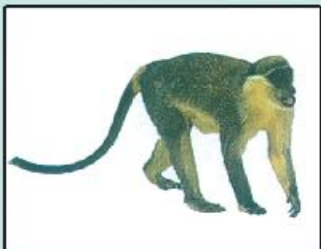
tiger



elephant



bear



monkey



snake



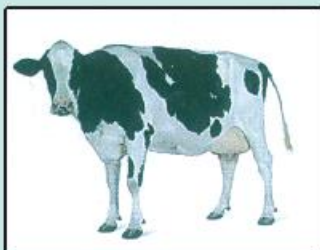
whale



bird



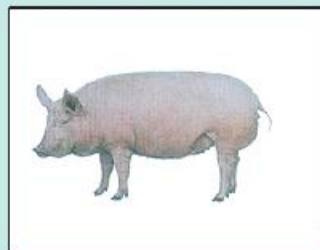
horse



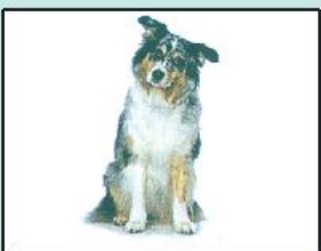
cow



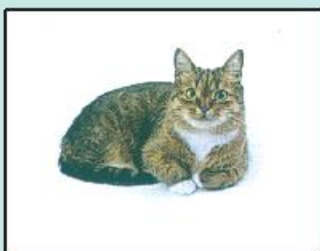
sheep (pl sheep)



pig



dog



cat



mouse (pl mice)



spider



fly



bee

wing

SPOTLIGHT *both*

Both means 'each of two'.

- *Dogs and cats are **both** common in England.* (= Dogs are common and cats are also common in England.)
- *Do lions swim? Yes, and tigers. They can **both** swim.*
- *Do you like cows and sheep? Yes, I like **both of them**.*

GLOSSARY

animal	any living thing that can move or feel. Animal is sometimes used to talk only about <i>cats, dogs, cows, etc.</i> and not about <i>people, birds, fish or insects</i> .
wild animal	A wild animal lives in nature, not with people, e.g. <i>a lion or an elephant</i> .
pet	an animal or bird that lives with people in their home. <i>Dogs and cats</i> are common pets in Britain.
insect	a small animal with six legs and usually wings, e.g. <i>a bee, a fly</i>
zoo	(sounds like you) a place, often in or near a town, where people can go and look at wild animals
farm	land and buildings where people keep animals and grow things. The person who does this is a farmer . <i>Pigs and cows</i> are farm animals.

1 Write the names of these animals and insects in order from big to small.

bear cat fly whale ✓ monkey sheep elephant lion mouse
big whale small

2 Put the animals in the correct column.

sheep ✓ elephant tiger cow cat fly dog horse pig bee lion bear										
PETS	FARM ANIMALS				INSECTS			WILD ANIMALS		
	▶ <u>sheep</u>									

3 Think about the pronunciation of the underlined letters, then answer the questions.

Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ Is cow the same as now or know? now
 1 Is both the same as most or dog?
 2 Is tiger the same as sit or lion?
 3 Is snake the same as back or whale?
 4 Is monkey the same as son or gone?
 5 Is bear the same as hair or hear?
 6 Is elephant the same as cat or tiger?
 7 Is spider the same as wild or miss?

4 Complete each sentence with one word.

- ▶ Lions and tigers can both swim
 1 Dogs usually live with
 2 People often sit on
 3 Whales live in the
 4 Birds often eat
 5 Birds and bees can both
 6 Cats sometimes catch and eat
 7 Pigs live on
 8 People often see wild animals in a
 9 Flies have two

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Elephants are one of the biggest animals in the world.
 1 Are dogs and cats common in your country?
 2 My uncle is a He has a with over 500 sheep and cows.
 3 You can see lots of animals in parts of Africa.
 4 Did you see a lion or tiger at the zoo? Yes, I saw of them.
 5 A spider is not an because it has eight legs.
 6 I've seen wild animals in the near where I live.
 7 The bird had a problem with one of its and it couldn't fly.
 8 I often go to the zoo with my brother: we like wild animals.

6 Which animal(s) or insect(s) has/have:

- ▶ eight legs? spider
 1 four legs?
 2 two legs?
 3 six legs?
 4 no legs?


7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

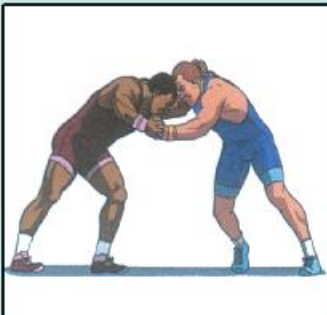
- 1 Do you have any pets? If so, what?
 2 Have you ever seen wild animals (not on TV)? If so, where?
 3 Are you afraid of any animals or insects?
 4 What animals are usually used as farm animals in your country?
 5 Do people often go to zoos in your country? What do you think about zoos?
 6 Is there an animal or insect on the opposite page that you especially like or dislike?



TEST YOURSELF

39 Irregular verbs

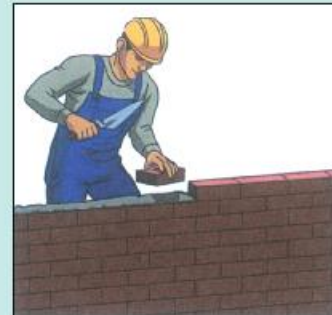
Here are some common irregular verbs in English, which follow similar patterns. They are all taught in different parts of the book, so use the Word List or  to help you if necessary. A more complete list is on page 198.



fight



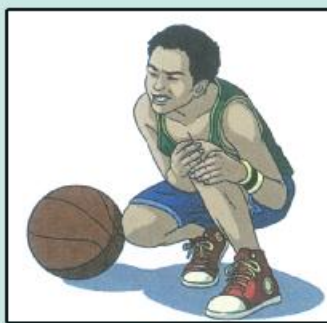
ring



build



hold



hurt



ride

pt/pp -a/-u	pt/pp – one vowel change	pt/pp -o/-en
sing/sang/sung	get/got/got	write/wrote/written
swim/swam/swum	forget/forgot/forgotten	drive/drove/driven
ring/rang/rung	sit/sat/sat	ride/rode/ridden
drink/drank/drunk	come/came/come	break/broke/broken
begin/began/begun	hold/held/held	speak/spoke/spoken
run/ran/run	fall/fell/fallen	wake (up)/woke/woken
	win/won/won	

pt/pp -ought/-ought	pt/pp -t	pt/pp – no change
bring/brought/brought	lend/lent/lent	put/put/put
think/thought/thought	send/sent/sent	cut/cut/cut
buy/bought/bought	spend/spent/spent	hurt/hurt/hurt
fight/fought/fought	build/built/built	cost/cost/cost
pt/pp -aught/-aught	spell/spelt/spelt ALSO spelled	shut/shut/shut
catch/caught/caught	lose/lost/lost	let/let/let
teach/taught/taught	burn/burnt/burnt ALSO burned	hit/hit/hit

SPOTLIGHT *ever*

We often use **ever** (= any time before now) in questions in the present perfect (has/have + past participle).

- Have you **ever** bought a car? ~ No, I haven't. OR No, I've never bought one.
- Has your sister **ever** written a blog? ~ Yes, she has. (NOT Yes, she ever has.)

1 Cover the left-hand page, then write the past tense of the verbs.

- | | | |
|------------------|---------|----------|
| ▶ sit <u>sat</u> | 5 buy | 10 hold |
| 1 teach | 6 sing | 11 spell |
| 2 put | 7 spend | 12 ring |
| 3 let | 8 drive | 13 sit |
| 4 bring | 9 speak | 14 burn |

2 For each question, which two verbs ...

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ don't change in the past tense? | <u>hurt</u> / <u>fight</u> / <u>shut</u> |
| 1 change <i>i</i> to <i>a</i> in the past tense? | swim / begin / hit |
| 2 change <i>i</i> to <i>o</i> in the past tense? | write / sit / drive |
| 3 change to -ought in the past tense? | buy / catch / think |
| 4 change from <i>d</i> to <i>t</i> in the past tense? | hold / send / build |
| 5 don't change in the past tense? | put / forget / cut |
| 6 have one vowel change in the past tense? | get / fall / cost |

3 Answer the questions using the same verb in the past tense.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| ▶ What did Olivia sing? | ~ She <u>sang a pop song</u> |
| 1 How far did you swim? | ~ I |
| 2 What did the teacher forget? | ~ He |
| 3 What did Ava send? | ~ She |
| 4 What did Mason lend you? | ~ He |
| 5 Where did your sister put the books? | ~ She |
| 6 Where did Liam fall? | ~ He |
| 7 How much money did Isabella lose? | ~ She |
| 8 How far did the children run? | ~ They |

4 Complete the sentences with verbs in the past tense from page 82.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ My sister <u>taught</u> in a school for five years. | 7 This book only £3.99. |
| 1 I across the river. | 8 The children home at 10.00 and went to bed. |
| 2 My dad a fish in the lake last week. | 9 Darius me early this morning to tell me the good news. |
| 3 I the horse, and Ben his bike. | 10 I went shopping and a pair of shoes. |
| 4 When Esther her finger, she said it really. | 11 Martina her new Italian course yesterday and really enjoyed it. |
| 5 My grandmother a car until she was 90. | 12 I at 6 a.m. because I had to get up early. |
| 6 an email to my aunt last week to thank her for my birthday present. | |

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions with the past participle of verbs from page 82. Then answer the questions about you.

Have you ever ...

- | | |
|---|-----------------------|
| ▶ <u>got</u> ill from eating eggs? | <u>No, I haven't.</u> |
| 1 a very fast car? | |
| 2 a horse? | |
| 3 your own hair? | |
| 4 a large amount of money? | |
| 5 to a famous person? What did you say? | |
| 6 somebody because you were very angry? | |
| 7 a bone in your body? | |
| 8 from a tree? | |



TEST YOURSELF

40 have got and have

A have got and have



My brother **has got** a small car.



His wife **has got** a large motorbike.



They **'ve got** two daughters.



The girls **haven't got** boyfriends yet.

SPOTLIGHT have got and have

You can use **have got** or **have** to talk about something that is yours (= belongs to you). You can also use **have (got)** to describe illness, relationships and appearance. **Have got** is the usual form in spoken British English.

- **Have you got** a car? ~ Yes, I **have**. (NOT Yes, I ~~have got~~)
- OR
- **Do you have** a car? ~ Yes, I **do**.

1 Change **have** to the correct form of **have got** in each sentence.

- ▶ I have an old car.
- 1 She has blue eyes.
- 2 They have a small dog.
- 3 I don't have a smartphone.
- 4 He doesn't have any money.
- 5 Do you have any sisters?
- 6 Does she have a flat in town?
- 7 They don't have a shop now.
- 8 Do they have a big office?

I've got an old car.

2 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ He have a car.
- 1 She got any children?
- 2 They has got a lovely garden.
- 3 Have she got long hair?
- 4 My sister no have a boyfriend.
- 5 Have you a computer?
- 6 We don't got any friends here.

He's got a car. OR He has a car.

3 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Have you got a car? If so, what kind?
- 1 Have you _____ a bike? If so, when do you use it?
- 2 _____ you have a computer? If so, what kind?
- 3 _____ your parents got a dog? If so, what's its name?
- 4 _____ your parents have a house in the country? If so, where?
- 5 _____ you got an English dictionary? If so, what's it called?
- 6 _____ you have any English-speaking friends? If so, who are they?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, I have. It's a Ford.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B have + noun

We use **have + noun** (NOT ~~have got~~) in a number of common expressions in English.

have a wash/shower/bath (NOT have got a wash , etc.)	<i>I had a quick shower before I left.</i>
have breakfast/lunch/dinner (NOT the breakfast , etc.)	<i>We had lunch in a pizzeria.</i>
have a drink/sth to eat	<i>I had a drink with Leo last night. Let's have something to eat.</i>
have a swim/walk/run (activities you do because you enjoy them)	<i>I didn't have a run this morning. We had a nice walk yesterday.</i>
have a (great/nice/terrible) time/day	<i>We had a great time in Kyoto.</i>
have a (good/nice) weekend/holiday/journey	<i>Have a nice weekend! Have a good journey.</i>
have a look (at sth) look at sth to see it closely or read it	<i>Can I have a look at your camera?</i>
have a break stop working for a short period and relax	<i>OK, let's have a break for 10 minutes.</i>
have a rest relax and do nothing	<i>I had a rest in the afternoon.</i>

5 Cover the table above. Make four more groups of phrases with *have* from the words below.

swim breakfast holiday bath journey rest ✓ lunch
shower weekend break ✓ dinner walk wash run

GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
rest				
break				

6 Complete the email.

Dear Carla,

We're having a great ► time here in Parati. The hotel's nice, and we've got a lovely view of an old church from our room. Yesterday we had a (1) _____ round the town and bought a few things. In the evening, we had a (2) _____ in the bar you recommended. Afterwards, we had (3) _____ in a very nice fish restaurant. We're going to spend this morning on the beach so I can have a (4) _____ in the sea, then maybe do some more shopping this afternoon. I think we'll have a (5) _____ after that. I hope you're enjoying yourself in Rio, and have a good (6) _____ back to Buenos Aires on Saturday. See you in two weeks' time.

Love, Nicky

Send

7 Complete the sentences.

- I got up late and didn't have any breakfast.
- 1 Would you like to have something to _____? We've got lots of food.
- 2 We often have a _____ after lunch – along the river or in the park.
- 3 We have a twenty-minute _____ between the lessons.
- 4 I want to have a _____ round town this afternoon, maybe buy a few things.
- 5 Did you have a good _____ in London yesterday?
- 6 I have a nice _____. See you on Monday.
- 7 They had a fantastic _____ in Mallorca. They were there for three weeks.
- 8 I always have a shower in the summer, but in winter I prefer to have a _____.



TEST YOURSELF

A make and do: general differences

Here are two common meanings of **make**:

1 produce or create sth:

The factory **makes** cars.
I'm **making** a cake for Tom's birthday.
This shirt is **made of** cotton.



2 produce a change in sb or sth:

Chocolate **makes** you fat.
Romantic films sometimes **make** me cry.
The book **made** them laugh.



Here are two common meanings of **do** as an ordinary verb (not an auxiliary verb):

1 used about activities:

What are you **doing** this evening?
I didn't **do** much at the weekend.



2 have a job, or study sth:

What do you **do**?
~ I'm a doctor.
I want to **do** medicine at university.



1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ did / what / do / yesterday / you What did you do yesterday? ?
- 1 does / his / wife / do / what ?
- 2 makes / his / software / company / programs ?
- 3 make / does / you / why / English / tired ?
- 4 school / Spanish / to / I / next / want / year / do / at ?
- 5 is / jumper / of / made / this / wool ?
- 6 you / night / did / do / what / last ?

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of **do** or **make**.

- ▶ The long walk made the children tired.
- 1 These shoes are of leather.
- 2 She doesn't work at the bank any more. ~ Oh. What does she now?
- 3 Matthew wants to law when he goes to university.
- 4 Flying me nervous.
- 5 I've just sandwiches for lunch. Is that OK?
- 6 Cheese is from milk.
- 7 What are you going to next year?
- 8 My nephew wants to a film about his school.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What kinds of things are made in your country?
- 2 Do you ever make things for other people, e.g. clothes?
- 3 Do films or music ever make you cry?
- 4 What subjects did you do at school? (or are you doing at school?)
- 5 What are you doing this evening?
- 6 What did you do last weekend?

4 Look at the example sentences at the top of the page. How would you translate **make** and **do** in each sentence? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your own language.



TEST YOURSELF

B Do or make?

Both **do** and **make** are used with a number of nouns with the meaning 'perform an action'.

do + action:	make + action:
your best	the bed
exercise [U] (in the gym)	a decision
exercises (in class)	a mistake
the housework [U]	money
your homework [U]	a noise
the shopping	sense



do exercise



do the housework



do your homework

GLOSSARY

do your best	do all that you can: <i>I may not finish the work today, but I'll do my best.</i>
make a decision	choose what you want to do
make money	get money, often from work: <i>She made a lot of money when she worked in America.</i>
make a noise	make a sound, especially one that is loud and not nice
make sense	be possible to understand: <i>This sentence doesn't make sense.</i>

5 Underline the correct verb.

- ▶ I always try to do / make my best.
- 1 Have you done / made the shopping?
- 2 I make / do most of the housework at the weekend.
- 3 Don't become a teacher if you want to do / make a lot of money.
- 4 The children did / made a lot of noise last night.
- 5 We did / made a couple of grammar exercises in class.
- 6 Mia did / made a terrible mistake in her essay.
- 7 This exercise doesn't do / make sense.
- 8 I have to do / make a decision soon about the flat.

6 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- ▶ do exercise d
- 1 make sense
- 2 make a mistake
- 3 do the shopping
- 4 do your best
- 5 make a decision
- a try as much as you can
- b buy food
- c choose what you want to do
- d move your body to keep it strong ✓
- e be possible to understand
- f do something wrong

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions.

- ▶ Do you do many written exercises in class? No, we usually do written exercises for homework.
- 1 Do you your own bed?
- 2 Do you often mistakes with English?
- 3 Do your neighbours often a lot of noise?
- 4 Do you much housework?
- 5 Do you often the shopping?
- 6 Is it important for you to a lot of money?
- 7 Do you always try to your best?

8 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student. If possible, also explain why / why not in your answers.



TEST YOURSELF

1 **arrive at/in:**
*We **get to** London at 6.00.*

2 **receive:**
*I didn't **get** your email.*

3 **become, start to be:**
*It's **getting** hot in here.*

get

pt got

4 **buy:**
*I **got** this watch last week.*

5 **be given sth by asking for it or buying it:**
*I have to **get** a visa.*

6 **travel (by bus, train, etc.):**
*Let's **get** the bus.*

SPOTLIGHT *get*

Get is a very common verb in spoken English. It has many meanings, and you need to write down new examples when you meet them. We don't usually use it in formal written English.

1 In column 2, rewrite each sentence with the correct form of *get*.

► I must buy some new clothes.	<i>I must get some new clothes.</i>	<i>buy</i>
1 Did you receive my message?		
2 He becomes angry if you're late.		
3 We arrived home late last night.		
4 It's becoming cold.		
5 I received three letters today.		
6 Where did you buy that bag?		
7 He needs to be given a job.		
8 Do you want to travel by train?		

2 Cover sentences 1–8 in Exercise 1. Look at the sentences you wrote. What does *get* mean in each one? Write your answer in column 3.

► *I must **get** some new clothes.* *buy*

3 Complete the sentences in a logical way using *get*.

- There weren't any buses, so we *got the train*.
- 1 Could you close the window? It's
- 2 What time did you?
- 3 Those shoes are lovely. Where did you?
- 4 Do you want to walk or?
- 5 I need a map of the town. Where can I?
- 6 She sent me an email but I didn't
- 7 I must go now, it's
- 8 I have to be at the cinema in ten minutes, so I'm going to
- 9 Tom worked hard for his maths and he
- 10 How many text messages do you?

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What time do you get home from work/college/school? *I get home from school at 5 o'clock each day.*
- 1 How often do you get the bus?
- 2 How cold does it get in your country?
- 3 How many texts do you get every day?
- 4 What was the last new item of clothing you got?
- 5 Where can you get information about your town/city?



TEST YOURSELF

1 know or notice sth with your eyes:

Can you **see** that church over there?



2 find out about sth by looking, asking, etc:

I'll **see** what time the train leaves.



3 visit or spend time with sb:

I went to **see** my parents at the weekend.



see
pt saw pp seen

4 watch a film / TV programme / game:

I **saw** a film at the cinema.



5 understand sth:

Do you **see** what I mean?



SPOTLIGHT see and watch

When you **see** something, you know about it with your eyes.

■ Can you **see** that bird in the tree? (NOT watch)

When you **watch** something, you look at it for a long time.

■ We **watched** a spider for about 15 minutes. (NOT saw)

You can **see** or **watch** a film, TV programme or game.

■ I **saw/watched** a football match in the park yesterday.

1 Write down the meaning (1–5) of see in each of the sentences.

► I saw them at the show last night.

1

1 I can't see the road from here.

.....

2 Martin wants to see if he can buy tickets for the concert.

.....

3 I want to see the new Spielberg film.

.....

4 We're going to see friends this evening.

.....

5 I may go, but it depends on the weather. ~ OK, I see.

.....

6 It was so dark I couldn't see.

.....

7 Did you see the news on TV?

.....

8 I can't see why he wants to leave his job.

.....

2 Underline the correct verb. Be careful: both verbs are correct in two of the sentences.

► Come and see / watch us for coffee next week.

1 I looked for Will, but I couldn't see / watch him.

2 The police know where the criminal lives, so they're going to see / watch his house.

3 Did you see / watch that new detective series on TV?

4 I must see / watch how much the tickets cost.

5 I have to see / watch the children carefully when they're in the street.

6 When are you going to see / watch the doctor?

7 I saw / watched in the paper that they're building a new theatre.

8 We saw / watched a great basketball game on Saturday.

3 Complete the questions with the correct form of see or watch or either.

► Can you see any trees from where you live?

1 Can you very well without glasses? Why? / Why not?

2 Do you ever your father when he's working?

3 Are there some programmes on TV that you always? If so, what?

4 What was the last TV programme you?

5 How often do you your best friend?

6 How often do you your parents?

7 Can you why get is a difficult verb for students learning English?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, I can see lots. We're opposite a park.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

44 Verbs and nouns with the same form

- Many verbs in English can be used as nouns, with the same form and a similar meaning.
Did you **promise** to help him? Did you **make a promise** to help him?
- When the verbs are used as nouns, you need to learn which verb to use with the noun.
She **surprised** me. She **gave** me a **surprise**.
Could I **look** at your paper? Could I **have a look** at your paper?
What **caused** the accident? What **was** the **cause** of the accident?



The boys were **fighting**.
The boys were **having a fight**.



I **called** Jim.
I **gave** Jim a **call**.



I **slept** well.
I **had** a good **sleep**.



Does it **smell nice**?
Does it **have a nice smell**?



I **dream** about Ava.
I **have dreams** about Ava.



She **smiled** at me.
She **gave** me a **smile**.

Here are some more examples.

Did you **reply**?
Did they **comment on** your work?
He can't **control** that dog.
I **emailed** you yesterday.
We often **chat**.
How much did the hotel cost?
Can you **copy** this?

Did you **write/send** Jana a **reply**?
Did they **make a comment on** your work?
He has no **control over** that dog.
I **sent** you an **email** yesterday.
We often **have a chat**.
What **was the cost** of the hotel?
Can you **make a copy** of this?

GLOSSARY

promise	say you will certainly do or not do sth promise <i>n</i>	control	make sb/sth do what you want control <i>n</i>
surprise	do sth that sb does not think you are going to do surprise <i>n</i>	chat (to sb)	talk in a friendly informal way to sb chat <i>n</i>
cause	be the reason why sth happens cause <i>n</i>	copy	write, draw or make sth exactly the same as sth else: We copied a list of words into our notebooks. copy <i>n</i>
comment (on sth)	say or write what you think about sth comment <i>n</i>		

1 Circle the sound that is different. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|---------|------------|----------|--------|
| ▶ promise | surprise | cause | 3 over | comment | cost |
| 1 comment | control | promise | 4 surprise | smell | cause |
| 2 promise | surprise | write | 5 copy | surprise | contro |

2 Do you need your hands and/or your mouth? Write H, or M, or H and M.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---|-----------------------|---|
| ▶ make a promise | M | ▶ send an email | H |
| 1 make a copy | | 4 give someone a call | |
| 2 give someone a smile | | 5 send a reply | |
| 3 have a fight | | 6 have a chat | |

3 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

control dream fight sleep surprise cost
cause promise smell comment ✓ chat

- ▶ The boss commented on your work – he was very pleased with it.
 1 The hotel was expensive, but I don't know exactly how much it
 2 The police caught the young men – they were outside a night club.
 3 It's a very big dog, and I'm afraid my wife can't it.
 4 I can't come tomorrow because I to take my children to the zoo.
 5 I stopped to with a couple of friends. We talked about the game last Saturday.
 6 Molly expected me at 8.00, so I arrived at 7.30 to her.
 7 I could something wonderful coming from the kitchen: roast beef.
 8 I was about our holiday when I woke up.
 9 There was something wrong with the computer, but I don't know what the problem.
 10 I went to bed early but I couldn't

4 Rewrite the sentences using the verb as a noun.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ She emailed me. | She <u>sent me an email</u> |
| 1 I dreamt about you. | I |
| 2 Did he comment on the report? | Did he? |
| 3 She promised to help me. | She |
| 4 Does this soap smell nice? | Does this soap? |
| 5 They surprised him. | They |
| 6 I must reply to Jilly's letter. | I must |
| 7 Did you call Mo? | Did you? |
| 8 I looked at her newspaper. | I |
| 9 Could you copy this? | Could you? |
| 10 He smiled at me this morning | He |

5 ABOUT YOU Write down something that ...

- ▶ you promised to do I promised to help my father at the weekend
 you sometimes dream about

 costs a lot of money in your country

 has a strong smell

 is the main cause of problems in your country

 surprises you about people in your country

 the world cannot control



TEST YOURSELF

45 Shopping for food

A Food



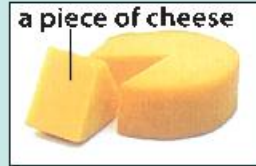
milk [U]



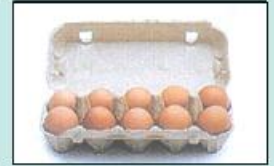
bread [U]



butter [U]



cheese [U]



eggs



sugar [U]



cake [U]



a cake



jam [U]



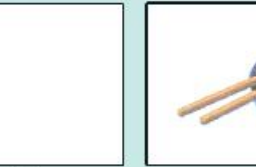
biscuits



olives



olive oil [U]



rice [U]



pasta [U]

SPOTLIGHT uncountable nouns

The nouns with a [U] are usually uncountable.

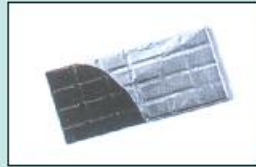
- **butter** OR **some butter** (NOT *a butter/butters*)
- *This bread is nice.* (NOT *These breads are nice.*)

We can use phrases to count or talk about an amount of an uncountable noun.

- **a piece of** cheese
- **two bars of** chocolate

Some nouns can be countable or uncountable. Uncountable is for the food, etc. generally. Countable is for a small unit of it

- I like **chocolate**. [U]
- Would you like **a chocolate**? [C]



chocolate [U]
a bar of chocolate



a box of chocolates

1 Tick (✓) the answers that are right, and correct the answers that are wrong. Use the APP to help you.

Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------|-------|
| ▶ a butter | <u>butter / some butter</u> | 6 some sugar | _____ |
| 1 biscuits | _____ | 7 an olive oil | _____ |
| 2 a piece of cheese | _____ | 8 rices | _____ |
| 3 two butters | _____ | 9 a jam | _____ |
| 4 a piece of chocolate | _____ | 10 olives | _____ |
| 5 a bread | _____ | 11 a cheese | _____ |

2 Circle the correct word.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ There <u>is</u> / are sugar in jam. | |
| 1 You make cheese / pasta with eggs. | 5 There's no sugar in chocolate / pasta . |
| 2 You can put cheese / cake on bread. | 6 I've got a box of milk / chocolates . |
| 3 There's a lot of sugar in cake / bread . | 7 Butter / Pasta comes from milk. |
| 4 You can eat rice / biscuits with meat. | 8 We have olives / biscuits with coffee. |

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the pictures. Which things do you: often buy? sometimes buy? never buy? Write your answers, or tell another student.

- ▶ I often buy eggs. _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Buying food



Customer Could I have a kilo of onions, please?

Shop assistant OK. Do you need a bag?

Customer No, I've got one, thanks. And have you got any peaches?

Shop assistant Yes. How many do you want?

Customer Four, please.

Shop assistant Are they ready to eat?

Customer Yes, they're lovely.

Shop assistant Great. That's all, thanks.



SPOTLIGHT *how much? and how many?*

We use **how much** with uncountable nouns and **how many** with countable nouns:

- **How much** butter do you want?
- **How many** apples do we need?

GLOSSARY

Could I have ..., please? This is a polite way of saying 'I want'.

kilogram = 1,000 **grams**. **Kilo** is short for **kilogram**.
Half a kilo = 500 **grams**.
(see picture)

bag Do you have any ...? (**Any** is usually used in questions.)

Have you got any ...? If sth is **ready to eat**, you can eat it now.

ready = I don't want any more things.

That's all, thanks. If you **need** sth, you must have it.

need OK. This means 'Yes, I understand you'.

right a little more than (a kilo) **opp** **just under**

just over (a kilo) = That's OK.

That's fine.

4 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------|---|---|
| ▶ Right. | d | a | a person who works in a shop |
| 1 shop assistant | ..... | b | I don't want to buy any other things. |
| 2 customer | ..... | c | OK to have it now |
| 3 that's all | ..... | e | must have something |
| 4 ready to eat | ..... | d | I understand what you mean. ✓ |
| 5 need something | ..... | f | a little less than |
| 6 just under | ..... | g | a person who buys things in a shop or on the internet |

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ all / that's / thanks That's all, thanks. / Thanks. That's all.
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 twelve / have / could / please / eggs / I | 4 much / do / pasta / how / need / you |
| 2 need / you / a / do / bag | 5 kilo / just / half / a / over / that's |
| 3 got / French / you / cheese / any / have | 6 oranges / many / need / do / how / you |

6 Complete the dialogues.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ A Yes? B I'd <u>like</u> six lemons, please. | 3 A I have a kilo of potatoes, please? |
| 1 A Have you any apples? | B Sure. That's under a kilo. |
| B Yes. How would you like? | A fine. |
| 2 A Could I some cheese, please. | 4 A These bananas don't look to eat. |
| B Sure, how ? | B No, they two or three more days. |
| A Oh, about 100 And that's , thank you. | |



TEST YOURSELF

46 Fruit and vegetables

A Fruit



banana



orange



peach



apple



pear



lemon



strawberry



grapes



pineapple



nuts

GLOSSARY

fruit [U] Oranges, pears and nuts are types of fruit: I buy my **fruit** at the supermarket.
taste If sth **tastes** of lemon, it's like lemon when you eat or drink it: This ice cream **tastes of** orange. It **tastes** sweet.
sweet tasting of sugar: These strawberries are very **sweet**.

1 Find the end of each word.

banana / grapes lemon nuts strawberries pineapple pear orange peach apple

2 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ Which fruit is green: strawberries or apples?
- 1 Which taste sweet: oranges or nuts?
- 2 Which are yellow: grapes or lemons?
- 3 Which are round: peaches or pears?
- 4 Which are big: pineapples or grapes?
- 5 Which are long: bananas or apples?
- 6 Which are hard: strawberries or nuts?

3 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ Apples can be green, red or yellow, and are round.
- 1 are long and yellow.
- 2 are like lemons but are sweet and round.
- 3 are yellow inside and have green leaves on top.
- 4 are small and dry, and hard on the outside.
- 5 things taste of sugar.
- 6 are green or red/purple, and we use them to make wine.
- 7 are small, soft and red.
- 8 are soft and round, with a big stone in the centre.
- 9 Pears and lemons are types of

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student.

Which fruit do you ...

eat every week?

eat every month?

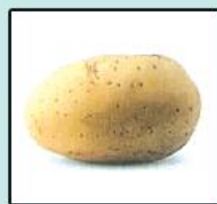
often eat in summer?

never eat?



TEST YOURSELF

B Vegetables



potato



beans



onion



carrot



peas



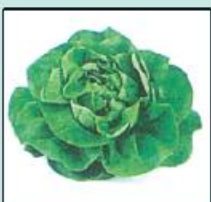
cabbage



mushroom



garlic



lettuce



tomato



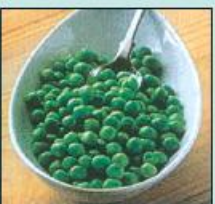
cucumber



red pepper /
green pepper



frozen



cooked



fresh

SPOTLIGHT *salad*

A **salad** can have different fresh **vegetables**. It usually has *lettuce*, and often has *tomatoes* and *cucumber*. *Red pepper*, *carrots* or *onion* are also possible.

5 Make vegetables from the letters. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ ladas salad
1 sape
2 nonio
3 prepep
4 oatotp

- 5 gacabeb
6 ecult:æ
7 naseb
8 meuccrub

- 9 oouhmsrm
10 motaot
11 ragcil
12 ractor

6 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ Carrots are small and round.

- 1 Potatoes and onions are vegetables.
2 Fresh peas are good to eat.
3 Lettuce is often frozen.
4 Garlic is usually cooked.
5 Mushrooms are green.

F

- 6 People eat frozen beans.
7 You often have tomatoes in a salad.
8 Salad is often cooked.
9 You need to cook carrots.
10 Cucumbers are long and green.

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

Questionnaire

Do you eat these things in your country? *Yes, we do. / Yes, a lot. / Yes, but not much. / No, we don't.*

cabbage

mushrooms

red peppers

fresh tomatoes

frozen peas

cooked onions

fresh cucumber

lettuce

frozen carrots




















beans

cold potatoes

garlic



TEST YOURSELF

animal	 cow	 sheep	 lamb	 chicken	 duck	 pig
types of meat (part of the animal or bird that you eat)	 beef	 lamb	 chicken	 duck	 pork	 ham
fish	 salmon	 tuna			 bacon	 sausages
seafood	 squid	 prawns	 crab			

SPOTLIGHT saying what you eat

- *I eat meat.* = Meat is OK for me.
- *I don't eat pork.* = Pork is no good for me.
- *I'm (a) vegetarian.* I don't eat meat or fish.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ Tuna is a kind of meat. F
- 1 Vegetarians eat salmon.
- 2 Lamb is an animal and a type of meat.
- 3 Duck is a type of fish.
- 4 You get bacon from cows.
- 5 You can make sausages from pork.
- 6 Prawns are smaller than crab.
- 7 Salmon and squid are both fish.
- 8 Pig is a type of meat.
- 9 Chicken is a type of bird.
- 10 You get ham from sheep.

2 Complete the names of meat, fish or seafood

- ▶ lam b
- 1 ee 2 a 3 un 4 uc 5 ra
- 6 qui 7 aco 8 ausa 9 or 10 raw

3 Which one is different? Why?

- ▶ cow sheep salmon pig Salmon, because it's a type of fish, not an animal
- 1 cow pig pork sheep because
- 2 ham lamb sausages bacon because
- 3 lamb pork beef tuna because
- 4 vegetarian squid chicken tuna because
- 5 sausage beef pork cow because
- 6 crab salmon prawns squid because

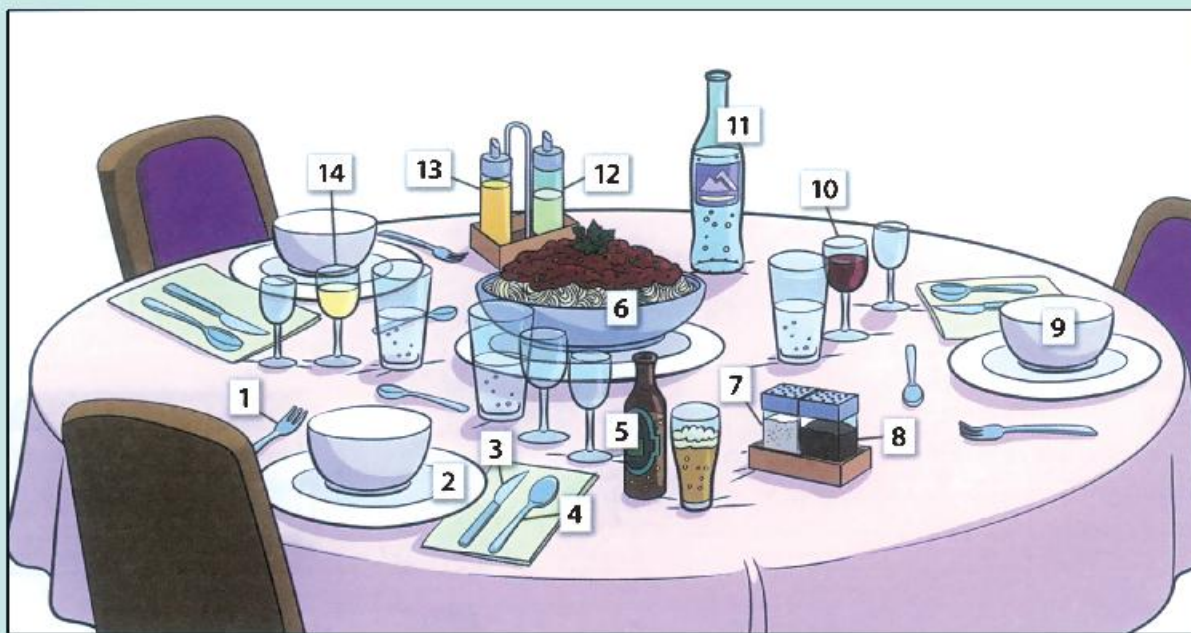
4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you eat these things? Why? / Why not?

- ▶ bacon Yes, I like bacon / No, I'm vegetarian / No, I don't eat bacon because I don't eat meat from pigs
- 1 beef 4 crab 7 duck
- 2 squid 5 tuna 8 lamb
- 3 salmon 6 prawns

**TEST YOURSELF**

48 A restaurant table



- | | | | |
|---|-----------------|----|-----------------------|
| 1 | fork | 8 | (black) pepper |
| 2 | plate | 9 | bowl |
| 3 | knife | 10 | glass of red wine |
| 4 | spoon | 11 | bottle of fizzy water |
| 5 | bottle of beer | 12 | vinegar |
| 6 | dish (of pasta) | 13 | oil |
| 7 | salt | 14 | glass of white wine |

SPOTLIGHT plural forms of nouns

For nouns ending in -sh, -ch, -s and -x, add -es in the plural.

- dish/dishes
- church/churches
- glass/glasses
- box/boxes

For nouns ending in -f or -fe, change to -ves in the plural.

- wife/wives
- knife/knives

1 Look at the picture. Write the numbers.

- How many glasses are there? 9
- 1 How many knives are there?
- 2 How many bowls?
- 3 How many spoons?
- 4 How many wine glasses?
- 5 How many plates?
- 6 How many bottles?
- 7 How many large dishes?
- 8 How many forks?

2 Look at the picture and complete the text.

On the table, each person has a ► knife, (1) fork, and (2) spoon. They each have a white (3) plate and a (4) bottle. To drink, there's a (5) bottle of (6) fizzy water, and two (7) glasses of (8) wine: one (9) red and the other (10) white, plus a (11) bottle of (12) beer. There is also some (13) salt and (14) black pepper, and little (15) oil of (16) vinegar and (17) oil.

4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Think about the things on the table, in the picture and complete the sentences.

On restaurant tables in my country, we usually or sometimes have
 We don't usually have
 We never have



TEST YOURSELF

49 Eating in a restaurant

A The menu

MENU

Starters
 tomato soup¹
 cold salmon with soy sauce²

Main courses
 Fried tuna³ with boiled rice and salad⁴
 Duck with orange sauce⁵ and boiled⁶ potatoes
 Pizza⁷ with Italian cheese and red peppers
 Sausages, chips⁸ and peas

Desserts
 Apple pie⁹ with cream¹⁰
 Ice cream¹¹ with chocolate sauce

GLOSSARY

fried	cooked in hot oil fry v
boiled	cooked in hot water boil v

SPOTLIGHT menus

A **menu** is a list of food you can have in a restaurant.

The **starter** (or **first course**) is usually small. The **main course** is the most important part of the meal.

Desserts are sweet and come at the end of the meal.

1 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ Chips aren't a **start**. starter
- 1 It's boil rice.
- 2 The potatoes are fry.
- 3 A cheese sorce.
- 4 The first course was salade.
- 5 Did you have ice creme?
- 6 There was fruit for desert.
- 7 I had tomato soap.
- 8 How was the apple pea?

2 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You eat the starter after the main course. F
- 1 You eat ice cream with a knife and fork.
- 2 You eat the main course before dessert.
- 3 You can have eggs fried or boiled.
- 4 You eat chips in a bowl of soup.
- 5 The list of food to eat is called a menu.
- 6 The starter is the first thing you eat.
- 7 People often have cream on pizza.
- 8 Chips are fried.
- 9 Pasta usually has a sauce on it.
- 10 Apple pie is a starter.

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I'd like fried **fish**
- 1 Do you like cheese s on pasta?
- 2 Could I have the apple p , please?
- 3 I don't like f chicken.
- 4 My starter was fish s
- 5 What's your main c ?
- 6 I love ice c
- 7 I had chicken with b rice.

4 ABOUT YOU Look at the menu. Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Which starter would you like?
- Which main course would you like?
- Which dessert would you like?



TEST YOURSELF

B Ordering the meal

- Waiter** Are you ready to order?
Customer Yes, I'll have the duck, please, but without the potatoes.
Waiter Sure. Would you like rice instead?
Customer Yes, please. And a glass of red wine, and some water.
Waiter Fizzy or still?
Customer Oh, still is fine.
(Later...)
Customer Could I have **another** bottle of water, please? Oh, and **some more** bread.
Waiter Yes, of course.
(Later...)
Waiter Was everything **all right** with your meal?
Customer Yes – the duck was **delicious**. Could I have the **bill**, please?
Waiter Certainly.



SPOTLIGHT *another and some more*

Say **another** (= one more) with countable nouns.

- **another** glass/biscuit/apple

Say **some more** with nouns in the plural and uncountable nouns.

- **some more** biscuits/glasses
- **some more** water/wine/bread

GLOSSARY

Are you ready to order?	= Do you know what you want to eat?	instead	in the place of sth or sb
order	ask for food or drinks in a restaurant, bar, etc.	still water	water without gas (fizzy water = water with gas)
I'll have tuna.	= I'd like/I want tuna.	all right	OK
without	<i>without sugar</i> = with no sugar	meal	Breakfast, lunch and dinner are meals .
sure / of course / certainly	These phrases all mean 'Yes, no problem'.	delicious	very good to eat
		the bill	a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay for sth

5 Circle the correct word.

- I like like a coffee, please.
 1 Could I have **some more** / **another** potatoes?
 2 Are you ready **order** / **to order**?
 3 Do you want **another** / **some more** bottle?
 4 We had a delicious **meal** / **food** last night.
 5 Is everything **right** / **all right** with your meal?
 6 There's no salmon. Would you like **some more** / **tuna instead**?
 7 Yes, **course** / **of course**.
 8 Could I have **a** / **the** bill, please?
 9 I / I'll have the prawns, please.
 10 Yes, **certainly** / **certain**.
 11 You order from the **customer** / **waiter**.
 12 Black coffee is **with** / **without** milk.

6 Complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

- W Are you ► ready to order?
 C Yes, I'll (1) the chicken, please.
 W And is that with or (2) cream sauce?
 C With, please. And a bottle of water.
 W Yes, of (3)
 Fizzy (4)?
 C Fizzy, please.

Conversation 2

- C Could I have (5) more water, please?
 W (6) And would you like a dessert?
 C Er, yes, I (7) have the ice cream. Then could I have the (8)?
 W Yes, (9)



TEST YOURSELF

A Food and drinks

DRINKS

- 1 (white) coffee
- 2 black coffee
- 3 tea (with milk or lemon)
- 4 hot chocolate
- 5 orange juice (with ice)
- 6 a fizzy drink

SNACKS

- 7 a sandwich (white bread)
- 8 a sandwich (brown bread)
- 9 a toasted sandwich
- 10 a roll
- 11 crisps
- 12 cakes



SPOTLIGHT *café, bar, pub*

In a **café**, you can have a *drink* or a *snack*. In a **bar** or **pub**, you can have *drinks*, e.g. *juice*, but also *alcoholic drinks*, e.g. *beer* or *wine*. People go to **pubs** in Britain to have a drink, meet people and often eat food.

1 Find the end of each drink or snack.

You can have a ► roll/crisps/snack/cheese/sandwich/cake/toasted sandwich
 You can have a ► hot chocolate/tea with lemon/drink/black coffee/fizzy drink/orange juice

2 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|--|-------|
| ► White coffee has milk in it. | T |
| 1 Ice is a drink. | ..... |
| 2 Crisps and rolls are snacks. | ..... |
| 3 Beer is an alcoholic drink. | ..... |
| 4 Hot chocolate is a snack. | ..... |
| 5 Cakes and orange juice are sweet. | ..... |
| 6 You can eat in a café or some pubs. | ..... |
| 7 You can have wine in a café. | ..... |
| 8 You can have a fizzy drink in a bar. | ..... |
| 9 Crisps are sweet. | ..... |
| 10 A toasted sandwich is hot. | ..... |

3 Complete the phrases.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| ► a ham <u>sandwich</u> | | |
| 1 brown | 5 black | 9 brown or bread? |
| 2 a toasted | 6 alcoholic | 10 or white coffee? |
| 3 hot | 7 drinks | 11 apple |
| 4 juice with | 8 bar, café or ? | 12 with milk |

4 ABOUT YOU Look at the drinks and snacks. Which do you like most? Which don't you like? Write a list, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Buying food and drinks

- A Hi, what can I get you?
 B I'd like a ham sandwich on brown bread and two cheese rolls, please.
 A Is that to have here or take away?
 B To have here, please.
 A Fine. Anything else?
 B Yes, can I have two coffees and an apple juice?
 A Would you like ice in the juice?
 B No, thanks.
 A Is that everything?
 B Yes, that's all, thanks.
 A OK, the food will be a couple of minutes.
 Take a seat.

SPOTLIGHT *please and thanks*

You use **please** when you ask for something politely.

■ Can I have a coffee, **please**?

Yes, please is a polite way of saying 'yes'.

No, thanks/thank you is a polite way of saying 'no'.

■ Would you like a drink? **Yes, please.** / **No, thanks.**

That's all, thanks. = I don't want anything else.

GLOSSARY

What can I get you?	a polite way to ask 'What do you want?' ALSO What would you like?
I'd like	I would like; a polite way to say 'I want'
have	You have (= eat) a sandwich. You have (= drink) a coffee.
take away	eat in another place, not the café
fine	= OK
anything else?	= Do you want any more things? ALSO Is that everything?
Can I have ...?	a polite way to say 'I want' ALSO Can I get ...?
two coffees	two cups of coffee ALSO three teas , etc.
food	things that people or animals eat
a couple of	two or three (e.g. minutes)
take a seat	sit down ALSO have a seat



5 The same or different? Write S or D.

- Would you like a drink? / Do you want a drink? **S**
- 1 a couple of minutes / two or three minutes
 2 Please sit down. / Please have a seat.
 3 Do you want some food? / Do you want something to drink?
 4 No, thanks. / No, thank you.
 5 What can I get you? / What would you like?
 6 That's fine. / No, thanks.
 7 Two teas, please. / Two cups of tea, please.
 8 I'd like a beer, please. / I like beer.
 9 Can I get a coffee, please? / Would you like a coffee?
 10 Anything else? / Is that everything?

6 Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversation.

- A please / yes **Yes, please**
 B two / sandwiches / ham / please / toasted / like / I'd
 A that / have / is / here / to / away / take / or?
 B have / please / to / here
 A everything / that / is?
 B teas / get / can / two / I / please
 A be / will / a / minutes / of / it / couple
 please / seat / a / take

7 One word is missing in each line of the conversation. What is it and where does it go?

- A Hi, What / I get you? Hi, what **can** I get you?
 B Can I a tea with lemon, please.
 A To drink here or away?
 B To here. And a chicken sandwich, please.
 A Would you brown bread?
 B Yes.
 A OK, anything?
 B Thanks.
 A Fine. It will be a couple minutes.
 a seat, please.
- 1
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
 8
 9

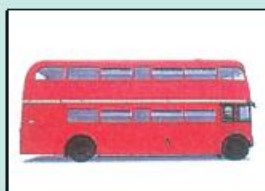


TEST YOURSELF

A Vehicles and public transport



car



bus



coach



van



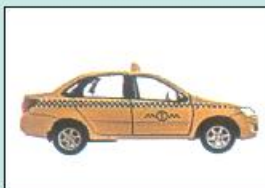
lorry/truck



bicycle/bike



motorbike/
motorcycle



taxi



the underground

GLOSSARY

vehicle	A car, a bus, a lorry, etc. are all types of vehicles .
public transport	buses, trains, etc. that everybody can use
coach	in Britain, a comfortable bus that takes people on long journeys
truck	is more common than lorry in American English.
motorcycle	is more common than motorbike in American English.
the underground	is called the subway in America.

SPOTLIGHT verbs used with vehicles

We **drive** a car, bus or taxi, but **ride** a bike or motorbike.
We often use **go** and **take** when we say how we travel.
■ I **go to work by bus or by car**. (BUT I **go to work on foot**. = walk)
■ My children **take the bus or the underground to school**.

1 Underline the correct answer(s). Sometimes both answers are correct.

- You don't see much if you take the bus / the underground.
- I go for / to work by bus.
 - She often drives her brother's car / bike.
 - He's just bought a new motorcycle / motorbike.
 - Do you often go by / on foot?
 - Can you ride / drive a motorcycle?
 - We often use public transport / the underground.
 - My uncle drives a lorry / truck.
 - I went from London to Scotland by bus / coach.

2 Complete the sentences.

- When it's late, I take a taxi but they can be very expensive.
- He never his bike in the winter: it's too cold.
 - I can take the train from Paris to Amsterdam but the is cheaper.
 - You often see very large on the motorways and other big roads.
 - I like taking the bus in big cities but the is usually quicker.
 - I'm too afraid to ride a big
 - I could drive, but I prefer to go on - and it's good exercise.
 - All can be dangerous, but especially large lorries.
 - Workmen often have so they can carry everything they need for their work.

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. If possible, ask someone else the questions.

- Can you drive? If so, when did you learn?
- When did you learn to ride a bike?
- How do you get to school, college or work? Are there different ways you can go?
- Can you ride a motorbike? If not, would you like to ride one?
- Is public transport good in your country? Is it expensive?
- Do you go anywhere by coach? Why? / Why not?



TEST YOURSELF

B On the road

Beth and Marco, who is from Italy, are talking about a **journey**.

Marco Beth, how far is it from London to Bath?

Beth Oh, about 110 miles. That's about 180 kilometres, Marco.

Marco And what's the best way to **get there**?

Beth I think the best way is the M4 **motorway** from London. Then, at **exit** 18, keep on the **main road**, the A46 – and that goes all the way to Bath. It's about ten miles.

Marco Right. And are the motorways very **busy**?

Beth Yes, **unfortunately** they are – there's a lot of **traffic**, especially in the **rush hour**, or if there is an accident.

Marco OK. And how fast can you go on motorways here?

Beth Well, the **speed limit** is 70 miles per hour, but lots of people go faster.

GLOSSARY

journey	an act of travelling from one place to another
How far is it?	= How many kilometres/miles is it?
get there / to a place	arrive at a place
motorway	a large and wide fast road between towns
exit	the place where you leave, e.g. a motorway, a cinema, etc.
main road	a large, important road
busy	A busy road has a lot of cars on it. OPP quiet
unfortunately	a word that shows you are not happy about sth
traffic [U]	all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
rush hour	the busy time when people are going to and from work
speed limit	the fastest that you are allowed to travel on a road
miles per hour (mph)	how fast sb is travelling (ALSO kilometres per hour OR kph)

4 Cover the glossary, then write your answers.

- ▶ the place where you leave somewhere such as a motorway
- 1 all the cars and vehicles that are on a road
- 2 a busy time when people go to and from work
- 3 an important road in or around a town
- 4 What does *mph* mean?
- 5 the fastest you can travel on a road
- 6 the opposite of a *busy road*
- 7 a very large fast road between big towns and cities

exit
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You can take a country road, but the motorway is quicker.
- 1 It's a very road in the rush
- 2 I saw an accident this morning on the road into town.
- 3 How is it from Paris to Marseille? ~ It's 740 kms.
- 4 Does it take long to there? ~ Yes, it does. It's very tiring.
- 5 It's a long and takes about five hours.

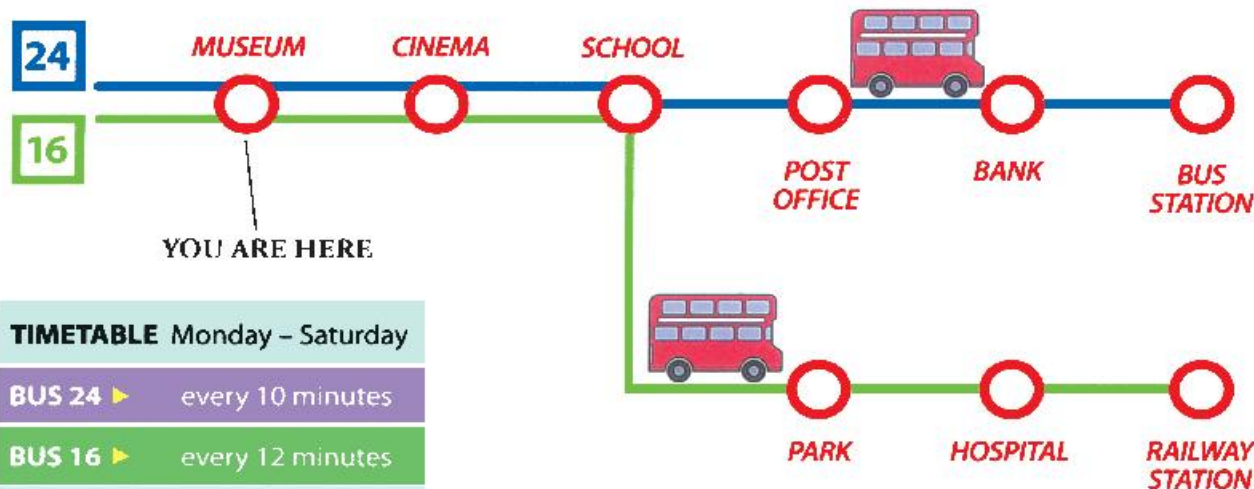
6 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is there a lot of traffic on motorways? If so, why?
- 2 How fast can cars travel on motorways?
- 3 Do you use motorways a lot? Why? / Why not?
- 4 Do you drive on the left in your country?
- 5 What time is the rush hour in the morning and evening?
- 6 What was the last long journey you went on?



TEST YOURSELF

BUS ROUTES 24 and 16



TIMETABLE Monday – Saturday

BUS 24 ▶ every 10 minutes

BUS 16 ▶ every 12 minutes

3 minutes from stop to stop

Questions	Answers
Excuse me, which bus do I get to the park?	The 16.
Does the 24 go to the railway station?	No, it doesn't.
Does the 24 stop near the bank?	Yes, it does.
Does the 16 stop outside the park?	Yes, it does.
How often does the 16 run?	Every 12 minutes.
How many stops is it to the park?	Three.
Which is the last stop for the 24?	The bus station.
Where do I get off for the cinema?	At the next stop.
How long does it take to the bus station?	It takes about 15 minutes.

GLOSSARY

route	the way you take to go somewhere. A bus route is the way a bus usually takes.
timetable	a list of times when sth happens: a bus/train timetable
excuse me	We say excuse me when we start talking to sb we don't know, especially in the street to ask a question.
get a train, bus, etc.	travel on a bus, train, etc. ALSO take a train, bus, etc.
go	travel to a place
near the bank	outside the bank
run	take passengers on a bus, train, etc.
every (12 minutes)	e.g. 9.00, 9.12, 9.24, etc.
(bus) stop	the place where you get on or off a bus
last stop	the bus stop at the end of the route
get off	leave the bus OPP get on
next stop	the first stop after now

SPOTLIGHT *How long does it take?*

How long? = how much time? (NOT *how-long-time?*)

■ **How long does it take** (to get) to the station?

~ It takes about 10 minutes.

~ It takes a long time.

~ It doesn't take long. = It takes a short time.

- 1 Match a word or phrase from group A to a word or phrase from group B to make a new phrase or sentence.

A	▶ bus ✓	get off	How long	the next	It doesn't	Excuse
B	the bus	stop	me	take long	route ✓	does it take?

▶ bus route

- 2 Write the words in the correct order to make questions.

- ▶ near / bank / stop / does / the 24 / the Does the 24 stop near the bank ?
- 1 post office / the 24 / does / outside / stop / the
- 2 off / do / get / 1 / where / cinema / for / the
- 3 park / the 24 / does / to / go / the
- 4 often / run / does / the 24 / how
- 5 which / stop / at / is / for / the 16
- 6 stops / many / to / how / it / railway station / is / the
- 7 school / me / bus / which / excuse / get / 1 / to / do / the
- 8 take / the / long / how / does / to / railway station / it

- 3 Answer the questions in Exercise 2, using the bus information on page 104. Remember, you are at the museum.

- ▶ Yes, it does.
- 1 5
- 2 6
- 3 7
- 4 minutes. 8 minutes.

- 4 Complete the text, using the bus map information on page 104.

If you ▶ get a bus from the museum, there are two bus
 (1) you can take: the 24 and the 16. For the 24, the first
 (2) is the museum, and the (3) stop
 is the cinema. The (4) stop is the bus station, where
 everybody has to (5) the bus. The 16 starts at the
 museum too, but it (6) to the railway station. The
 (7) tells you how often the buses (8)
 The 24 route is very frequent: it runs (9) ten minutes. It
 only (10) two or three minutes to get from the school
 to the park, and it stops (11) the park. After that, it goes
 to the hospital. And it doesn't take (12) - only another
 three or four minutes.



- 5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Is there a bus stop near your house? If so, where is it?
- 2 Which bus routes stop there?
- 3 Where do they go?
- 4 How often do they run?
- 5 Do you often get the bus? If so, where to?
- 6 How many stops is it?
- 7 How long does it take?



TEST YOURSELF

A At the station



GLOSSARY

get/take a train	travel by train
the 12 o'clock train	= the train that leaves at 12.00
journey	an act of travelling from one place to another
fare	money that you pay to travel by train, and also by bus, taxi, etc.
a fast train	a train that goes very quickly OPP a slow train
railway/train station	a place where trains stop and people get on and off. People meet at a station .

SPOTLIGHT *last*

Last has different meanings:

- 1 final: *The **last** train leaves at 11.30 p.m.*
(= there are no trains after 11.30 p.m.)
*Marseille is the **last** stop.*
- 2 most recent, the one before now:
*My **last** train journey was two weeks ago.*

1 Answer the questions.

- ▶ What's another verb for *get a train*?
- 1 What's the opposite of *a slow train*?
- 2 What's the opposite of *get on the train*?
- 3 What do you call the money you pay to travel by train?
- 4 What's another way of saying *the train that leaves at 7*?
- 5 What do you sit on in a train?
- 6 Where do you get a train?
- 7 Where do you look for the train times?
- 8 What's another word for a *coach* on a train?

take a train

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We can get the 7.45 *train*.
- 1 How much was the train _____?
- 2 Our seats are in the second _____.
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late. I _____ the train.
- 4 We can _____ a train from Zug to Bern.
- 5 The _____ train is just after midnight.
- 6 Quickly, _____ the train before it goes.
- 7 We _____ for the train in the café.
- 8 Look at the _____ for a later train.
- 9 They had to wait _____ the last train.
- 10 Don't take the 7.15 – that's a _____ train.
- 11 It's long train _____ from Rome to Paris.



TEST YOURSELF

B Buying a ticket

It's now 9.30. A **passenger** is talking to someone at the **ticket office** in the station.

- Passenger** A return to Cardiff, please.
Ticket office That's £21.40.
(The passenger takes the ticket.)
Passenger Thank you ... when's the **next** train?
Ticket office There's one that **leaves** at 10.07.
Passenger OK. Do I have to **change**?
Ticket office No, it's **direct**.
Passenger That's good. And when does it **get to** Cardiff?
Ticket office 10.56.
Passenger Right. And which **platform** is it?
Ticket office Platform 6, **over there**.
Passenger OK. Thanks a lot.



over there

GLOSSARY

passenger	a person travelling or going to travel in a train, bus, etc.
ticket office	the place where you buy tickets at a station
return (ticket)	a ticket to travel from a place and back again OPP single one way only
next	The next train is the first one after now.
leave	go away from a place or person OPP get to / arrive at (Oxford, the station, etc.)
change (trains)	get off one train and get on another
direct	A journey is direct if you don't need to change trains.
platform	the part of the station where you get on and off the train
over there	(see picture) OPP over here a place or position near you

SPOTLIGHT *book/reserve something*

If you **book/reserve a seat**, you buy a train ticket days or weeks before you travel, with a seat number on the ticket. For a hotel, you can **book/reserve a room**, and in a restaurant you can **book/reserve a table**.

3 Complete the sentences using words from the box.

direct London office change train is it ✓ there return passengers seat

- ▶ Which platform is it?
- 1 Can I book a _____?
- 2 Do I have to _____?
- 3 Do you want a single or _____?
- 4 Is the train _____?
- 5 Were there many _____?
- 6 When do we get to _____?
- 7 Where's the ticket _____?
- 8 When's the next _____?
- 9 The ticket office is over _____.

4 Look at the timetable and complete the text.

Platform	Cheltenham	Kemble	London Paddington
2	dep 8.35	9.08	
		9.22	arr 10.45

I'm going from Cheltenham to London Paddington next month. There isn't a ▶ **direct** train around 8.30, so I have to (1) _____ at Kemble. The train (2) _____ Cheltenham at 8.35 from (3) _____ 2, and it (4) _____ to Kemble at 9.08. Then I have to (5) _____ the 9.22, which gets (6) _____ London Paddington at 10.45. A (7) _____ costs £22, but if I want to come back the same day, I'll get a (8) _____. I'll probably (9) _____ my seat because it will be very busy at that time in the morning.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 When was your last train journey? _____
- 2 Was it a single or a return? _____
- 3 Where did you go, and why? _____
- 4 Can you remember the train fare? _____
- 5 Did you book a seat before you travelled? _____
- 6 Was it direct, or did you have to change trains? _____



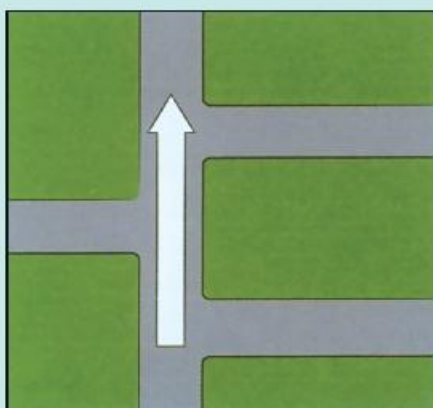
TEST YOURSELF

54 Directions

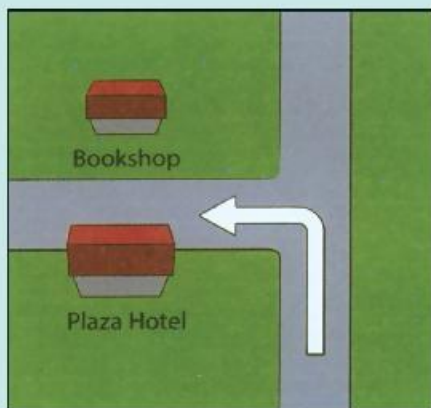


GLOSSARY

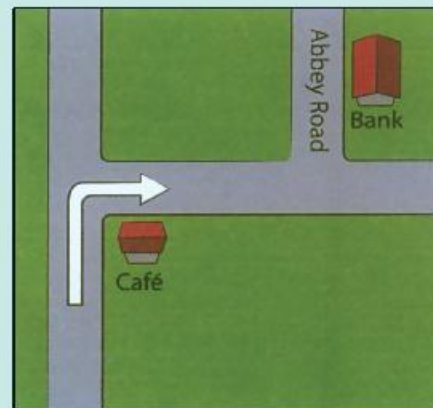
directions	words that tell you how to get to a place
excuse me	When you want to talk to sb you don't know, especially in the street, it is polite to say Excuse me .
near	not far away, close to sb or sth
nearest	the first one from where you are
way	a road that you must take to get to a place



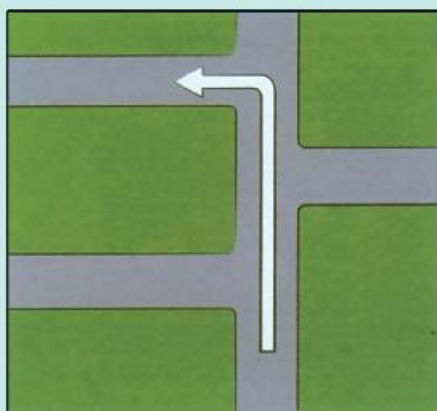
Go straight on. OR Keep going.
It's about ten minutes.



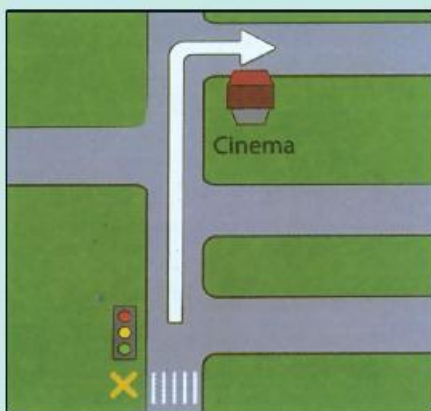
Go along here and turn left.
The bookshop is opposite the Plaza Hotel.



Turn right at the café, then left into Abbey Road, and the bank is on your right.



Go along here and take the second turning on the left.



OK. Cross the road at the traffic lights, then go straight on and it's the third turning on the right. There's a cinema on the corner.

1 Cross out one word in each sentence.

- ▶ Turn right into ~~the~~ Duke Street.
 1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.
 2 Go straight on and keep to going.
 3 Is there a cinema near from here?
 4 It's on your left side.
 5 Turn to left and go straight on.
 6 It's the third road turning on the right.
 7 Where's the most nearest post office?

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ here / there D
 1 cross / corner
 2 third / turning
 3 second / opposite
 ▶ here / near S
 4 straight / way
 5 right / opposite
 6 there / thanks

3 Make sentences from the words.

- ▶ turn / and / go / right / here / along Go along here and turn right.
 1 excuse / I / get / do / museum / the / me / how / to?
 2 here / left / along / and / turn / go
 3 post office / me / near / there / is / a / excuse / here?
 4 the / turning / it's / right / on / the / third
 5 way / the / excuse / to / know / me / do / station / the / you?
 6 traffic / the / lights / road / at / the / cross

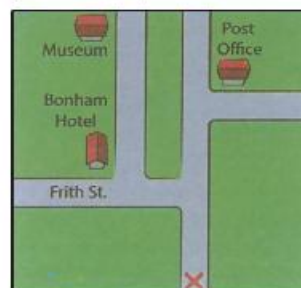
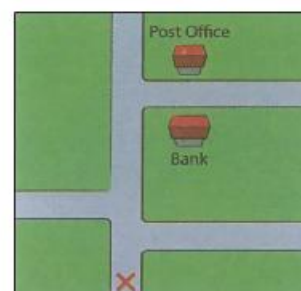
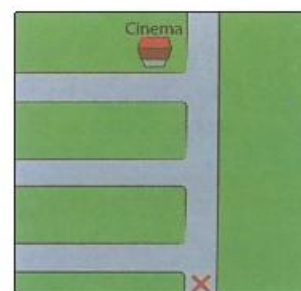
4 Complete the phrases with a single word.

- ▶ turn left (OR right)
 1 Take the second
 2 Thanks very
 3 It's on the
 4 Excuse
 5 Cross the
 6 Keep
 7 Go straight
 8 Go along
 9 I want to go to the bank. Do you know the?
 10 Turn left at the traffic

5 Complete the dialogues. Use the maps to help you.

- A Excuse me How do I (1) to the cinema from here?
 B OK. Go (2) on, and it's the second ... no, the third (3) on the (4)
 A Thanks very (5)
 B That's OK, no (6)

- 2 A (1) me. Is there a post office (2) here?
 B Yes. Go (3) here and (4) the second (5) on the (6) The post office is (7) the bank.
 A (8) very much.
 B (9) OK. No problem.



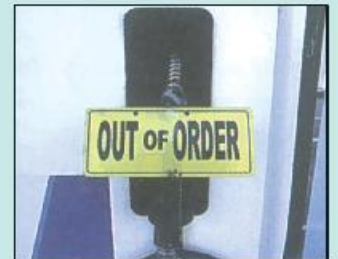
6 Look at the map. Give directions.

- 1 A Excuse me. Do you know the way to the Bonham Hotel?
 YOU Yes. Go straight on, then
 2 A Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?
 YOU
 3 A Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?
 YOU



TEST YOURSELF

55 Signs and notices



SPOTLIGHT allow and let

If you **allow** somebody to do something, you say that they can do something **syn let**.

- My parents **allow me to go** on holiday with friends.
- My parents **let me go** on holiday with friends.

Allow is often used in the negative.

- Smoking **is not allowed** = no smoking.

In spoken English, you can say.

- You **aren't allowed to smoke** in cinemas. (NOT #s not allowed to smoke in cinemas.)

GLOSSARY

sign	a small piece of writing or a picture that tells you sth
notice	a piece of writing that tells you sth, usually information
closed	not open syn shut
toilet	(see picture)
exit	a way to go out of a building syn way out
sale	a time when a shop sells things for less money than usual
keep left	stay on the left also keep right
out of order	broken; not working correctly
no parking	= do not leave your car here
danger	the possibility that sth bad may happen
entrance	a way to go into a building enter v
feed	give food to sb or sth
no vacancies	In a hotel window, no vacancies means that the hotel is full.
queue	wait in a line of people
mind	be careful of sb or sth: mind the step ; mind your head (above a low door)
gap	the space between two things (here, the space between a train and the platform)
keep off (the grass)	do not go on (the grass)

1 Match 1-9 with a-j.

▶ NO SMOKING

1 No parking

2 Exit

3 Please queue here

4 OUT OF ORDER

5 Mind the gap

6 SALE

7 Entrance

8 No vacancies

9 DANGER

g

a The hotel is full.

b It's broken.

c It's not safe here.

d You can go in here.

e Everything is cheaper at the moment.

f You can't leave your car here.

g Do not smoke here. ✓

h This is the way out.

i Be careful when you get off the train.

j Wait in a line here.

2 Where can you see these signs? Circle the correct answer.

▶ Keep left: on the underground / in a supermarket

1 No Parking: in a road / in a shop

2 Toilets: in a restaurant / in a kitchen

3 Entrance: in a school / in a house

4 SALE: in a shop window / in a restaurant

5 OUT OF ORDER: on a menu / on a drinks machine

6 No vacancies: on a bridge / in a hotel window

7 DANGER: near the sea / near a shopping centre

8 Please queue this side: in a bank / on a telephone

3 Complete the sentences.

▶ It clearly says no parking in front of the garage doors.

1 There are NO SMOKING everywhere on the underground.

2 Did you read that sign? It said, dogs are not allowed on the beach.

3 There was a big sign for a sale in the window of that clothes shop.

4 The notice says that you aren't allowed to walk on the grass.

5 It said CLOSED on the door, but the sales assistant asked me to go in and buy something.

6 You have to mind the gap when you get off the train.

7 I'm afraid the shop is closed for lunch at the moment. It doesn't open again until 2.30.

8 The sign says: 'Don't feed the ducks'. Bread is bad for them.

9 Mind the step when you go out of the door.

10 We found the sign for women, but we couldn't find one for men.

4 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Can we go up on the right side?

~ No, the sign says keep left.

1 Can I leave my car here?

~ No, it says no parking.

2 Can we go out here?

~ No, it says entrance.

3 Can I have a cigarette?

~ No, the sign says no smoking.

4 Can we walk across the park here?

~ No, look, the sign says no walking.

5 Can we use the machine over there?

~ No, it says out of order.

6 Can we give this bread to the monkeys?

~ No, the sign says no feeding.

7 Can we take the dog in the park?

~ No, it says that dogs aren't allowed.

8 Can we stand and wait over there?

~ No, it says, please wait here.

9 Is it safe to swim here?

~ No, it says no swimming.

10 Can we walk up the left side?

~ No, it says keep right.

5 Complete these notices.

NO

PARKING

NO

PLEASE

MIND

MIND

KEEP



TEST YOURSELF

A Buildings and places in a town



castle



palace



church



museum



art gallery



market



park



library



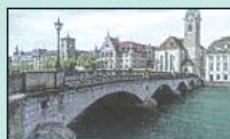
post office



tower



square



bridge

GLOSSARY

building e.g. a shop, a church, a castle (**NOT** square, park, etc.)

place a particular building, shop, town, country or area: *This is a good **place** to eat. Prague is a lovely **place** to visit. The park is a nice **place** to go for a walk.*

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ place / park D

1 castle / market

4 library / bridge

7 park / art gallery

2 square / park

5 palace / bridge

8 church / bridge

3 tower / post office

6 church / museum

9 market / castle

- 2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. More than one answer is possible.

▶ You can see all the main town buildings in the square.

1 You can see pictures and paintings in an

2 You can buy fruit and vegetables at a

3 You can read and study in a

4 You can learn about how people lived in the past in a

5 Children enjoy playing in the

6 You can see the city below from the top of the

7 You can buy stamps at the

8 The best place to see the river is if you stand on the

9 Some people get married in a

10 Churches, libraries and post offices are different kinds of

11 Squares, bridges and parks are different in a town.

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences true for you? If not, write true sentences about where you live, or tell another student.

▶ There are no bridges where I live. False. There are three bridges in my town.

1 There is one post office where I live.

2 There's a good library and I often go there.

3 There's an art gallery and a museum.

4 There are a lot of parks where I live.

5 The buildings are all very old.

6 There's a market where I live every day.

7 There's a big square where people sit.

8 It's a terrible place to live.



TEST YOURSELF

B Describing a town

Word	Example	Meaning
opinion	<i>What's your opinion of the new bridge? ~ I think it's wonderful. In my opinion, it's too big.</i>	Your opinion is what you think about something. SYN view
busy	<i>It's busy in the summer when the tourists arrive.</i>	If a place is busy , it is full of people, cars, activity, etc. OPP quiet
crowded	<i>The bars get very crowded at night.</i>	full of people or too full of people crowd (of people) <i>n</i>
safe	<i>It's safe during the day, but can be dangerous at night.</i>	If a town is safe , there is not much crime there. OPP dangerous
dirty	<i>Some of the old buildings are very dirty.</i>	OPP clean
pollution	<i>There's a lot of pollution because of all the industry.</i>	dirty and dangerous air, gas, water, etc.
there's a lot to do there's lots to do	<i>There's a lot to do in the evening – clubs, cinemas, and so on.</i>	= there are many activities and places to visit OPP there's nothing to do
noise	<i>There's too much noise at night. It's impossible to sleep.</i>	something that you can hear that is often loud and not nice noisy <i>adj</i> OPP quiet

4 Underline the correct word.

- The trains are usually crowded / *crowd* when people are going to work.

- It's noise / *noisy* down by the station.
- There's lots / *lot* to do in the city.
- What's your view / *think* of the town?
- In my opinion / *idea*, it's quite safe.

- Is your town a dangerous / *safe* place to live?
~ Yes, there isn't much crime.

- It's a dirty / *busy* place – there's so much paper on the streets.

- It's / *There's* nothing to do in the village.

- What do you think about the noise / *pollution* in the river?

5 Do the speakers like the places they're talking about? Tick (✓) yes or no.

- | | YES | NO |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ► 'The streets are very dirty.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 'I think there's a lot of pollution, don't you?' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 'There's lots to do during the day.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 'I always feel safe at night.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- | | YES | NO |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4 'It's always very crowded at the weekends.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 'There's nothing to do at night.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 'It's so clean on the coast.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 'There's very little noise at night.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 'It's a really dangerous city.' | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

6 Complete the dialogue.

A What's your ► view of Walton?

B Well, in my (1), it's a great place to live and work.

A Yes, but is it safe?

B Well, every town or city is a bit (2) at night, but there's a lot to (3) here.

A And is it very (4) in the centre?

B There aren't so many people on weekdays, but there are big (5) of people at the weekends, mainly local people and tourists. One thing I don't like is that there is so much traffic. The air isn't very (6) because there's a lot of (7) from the cars.

A How about outside the centre?

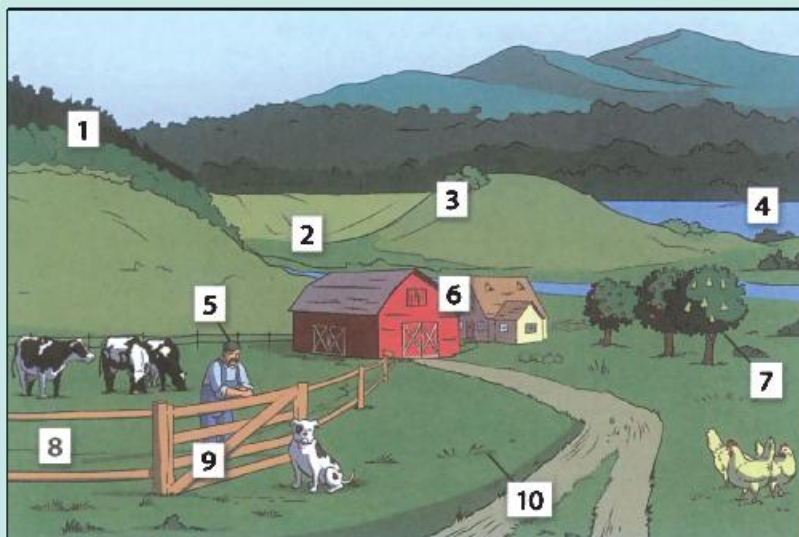
B Well, there are some beautiful parks, and nice, (8) places to sit in the sun and do nothing.



TEST YOURSELF

57 The countryside

A On a farm



- 1 wood
- 2 valley
- 3 hill
- 4 lake
- 5 farmer
- 6 farm (the house and the fields)
- 7 tree
- 8 field
- 9 gate
- 10 grass

Jack Robson's family have been in **farming** for over a hundred years, and Jack now **owns** Eatwell Farm. He keeps cows and **produces** about a million litres of milk a year. He also **grows** fruit: pears and apples.

GLOSSARY

farming managing a **farm**, or working on it
own If you **own** sth, it is yours. The person who **owns** sth is the **owner**.
produce make or grow sth, e.g. milk, cheese, cars
grow Farmers **grow** potatoes, rice, fruit, etc. to sell.

1 Circle the verbs.

wood have valley own gate grass field produce tree farmer lake grow hill

2 Look at the picture. Are the sentences true or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ There's a lake near the trees. T
- 1 There is nothing in the field.
- 2 The dog's next to the gate.
- 3 The farmer owns fruit trees.
- 4 The wood is on the hill.
- 5 A dog lives on the farm.
- 6 Some of the cows are eating grass.
- 7 The owner of the farm produces milk.
- 8 There are a lot of trees near the farmer.
- 9 The farmer grows vegetables.
- 10 The lake's in the valley.

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the words.

- ▶ Do you live near a w o o d?
 - 1 Do you live in a v l l y or on a h i l l?
 - 2 Is there a l a k e near your home?
 - 3 Can you see any g r a s s where you are now?
 - 4 Can you see a g a t e where you are now?
 - 5 Are there any f a r m e r s near your home?
 - 6 Do you o w n a dog?
 - 7 Is f a r m i n g very important in your area?
 - 8 What do farmers g r o w or p r o d u c e in your country?
- Yes, I do. There's one up the hill.

4 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.

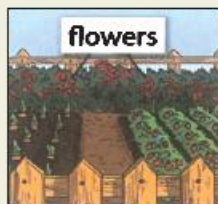


TEST YOURSELF

B In a garden

WHY I LOVE **my garden** (Joel, 38)

My **garden** is so important to me because it's the place where I can be **creative**. I love being out there in the **fresh air**, enjoying the beauty of **nature**. In one **area** of my garden, I grow fruit and vegetables. My children love to get their fingers dirty in the **earth** when they **plant** our strawberries. They **water** the strawberry plants and **pick** the strawberries in summer. Another area is full of **flowers**, but I leave another part **wild** and **natural** to help birds and insects.



flowers

garden



earth

plant v plant n



water v



pick v

GLOSSARY

creative	Someone who is creative has a lot of ideas or is good at making new things. create v
fresh air	clean and cool air
nature	all the plants, animals, etc. in the world, and all the things that happen in it that are not made or caused by people natural adj
area	part of a place that you use for a particular activity
wild	Plants or animals that live and grow in nature are wild .

5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------|-----------------------|
| ▶ Plants grow in | e | a flowers. |
| 1 Don't pick the | ..... | b some beans. |
| 2 I need fresh | ..... | c a beautiful garden. |
| 3 Please water | ..... | d area in my garden. |
| 4 I've planted | ..... | e earth. ✓ |
| 5 She created | ..... | f air. |
| 6 I've got a wild | ..... | g the plants. |

6 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

water nature creative pick earth garden ✓ natural area fresh

- Do you grow fruit and vegetables in your garden ?
- You have to plants in the summer if it doesn't rain.
- air is good for you; get as much as possible.
- Some people like to have an where they can grow vegetables.
- You grow plants in the ; then they just need water.
- Nowadays, people like gardens which are
- Freida's garden is full of interesting ideas – she's very
- The strawberries in dad's garden are ready to eat. Let's go and them.
- My sister is very interested in : trees, plants, animals, etc.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Do you ever pick flowers from a garden?
- Do you ever pick fruit?
- Do you grow any plants – inside or outside your home? If so, what?
- How important are these things to you?
 fresh air the beauty of nature
 wild flowers areas in towns with plants and grasses



TEST YOURSELF

A Flats



- 1 roof
- 2 flat/apartment
- 3 (on) the top floor
- 4 (on) the second floor
- 5 (on) the first floor
- 6 (on) the ground floor
- 7 steps *pl*
- 8 front door
- 9 stairs *pl*
- 10 lift
- 11 lock
- 12 key (Put the key in the lock to open the door.)
- 13 neighbour (Miki and Ferdy are neighbours.)

1 Look at the picture. Write your answers.

- ▶ Who lives on the second floor?
- 1 Who lives on the ground floor?
- 2 Where does Miki live?
- 3 Who is Josh's neighbour on the first floor?
- 4 Which floor does Ferdy live on?
- 5 What is above the top floor?
- 6 How many flats are there?
- 7 Where are the steps?
- 8 What's below the top floor?
- 9 Where does Lucy live?
- 10 How does Ferdy get up to his flat?
- 11 How do you get in the front door?

Hannah and Simon

At the

He uses _____ or _____

2 Complete the words.

▶ k e y

1 l _____ t

2 ap _____ nt

3 g _____ d f _____ r

4 f _____ t d _____ r

5 s _____ s

6 ne _____ r

7 r _____ f

8 s _____ s

9 t _____ p f _____ r

3 Complete the words.

- 1 Do you live in a flat/apartment _____? If so, which f _____ do you live on? _____
- 2 What's on the g _____ floor? _____
- 3 Who are your n _____?
- 4 Has the building got a l _____, or just s _____?
- 5 Are there s _____ to the front door?
- 6 Do you need a k _____ to open the front door?

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Houses



BATHFORD

Modern family **home** in this quiet village with lovely **views** of the countryside. Through the **hall**¹, you come to the **living room**², **dining room**³, **study**⁴ and a **kitchen**⁵. **Upstairs** there are four good-sized **bedrooms**⁶ and a family **bathroom**⁷. **Outside** there is a large garden and **parking** for two cars.

GLOSSARY

modern	of the present time OPP old
view	what you can see from a place
upstairs	to or on a higher level in a building OPP downstairs
outside	not in a house or other building OPP inside
parking [U]	a place where you can park (= leave) your car

SPOTLIGHT *flat, house, home*

A **flat** is a number of rooms on one floor of a building.

SYN apartment

A **house** is a building that is made for people to live in. It can have more than one floor.

Home is where you live (in a flat or a house).

5 Find the end of each word.

study / view modern living room hall kitchen home dining room upstairs bedroom parking bathroom

6 Complete the texts.

I live in a small ► **modern** house – it's only four years old. It's got a (1) _____ room, dining room, kitchen, two bedrooms and a (2) _____. It's in the town centre, and from the living room I've only got a (3) _____ of the railway station, which is not very nice. To the left of the house, I've got a space to (4) _____ my car, and there's a beautiful, small garden, so I can eat (5) _____ when the weather is nice.

My brother's got a big house in a village near me, and from the house you can see fantastic (6) _____ of the countryside. Through the front door, you come into the (7) _____, and from there you can see the living room, dining room, large (8) _____ and a (9) _____, where my brother works. (10) _____, there are four (11) _____ and two (12) _____, so there's lots of space when I visit with friends. There's also enough (13) _____ for two cars, and a large garden. In the summer, they eat (14) _____ all the time, and I think that's better than being (15) _____.

7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

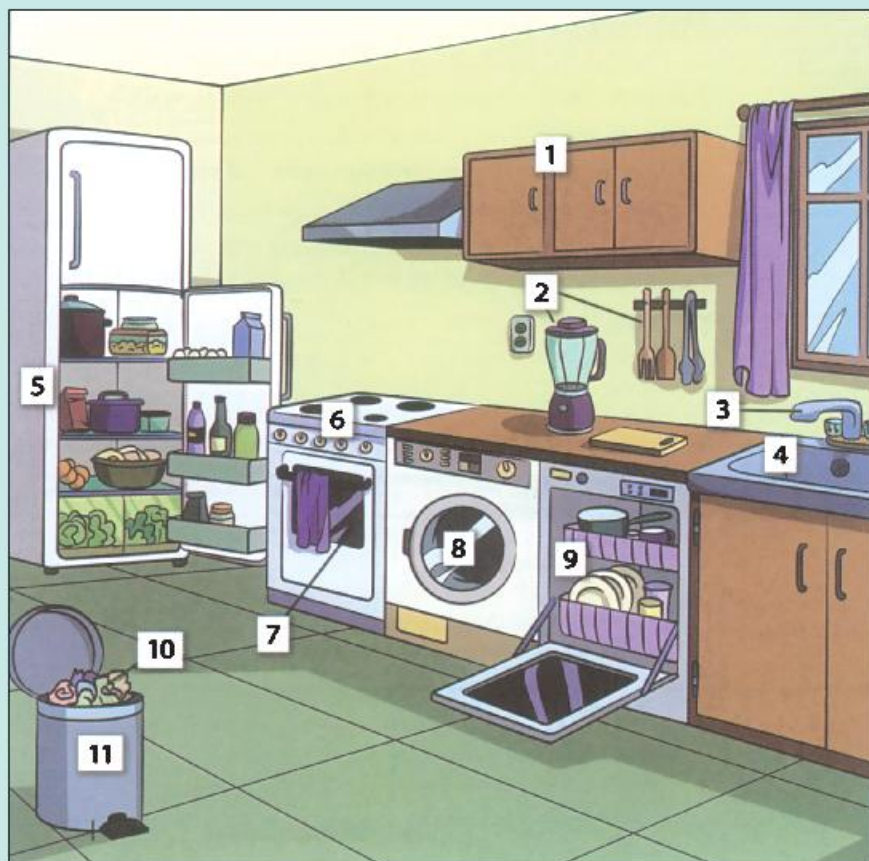
- Where you live, do most houses have two floors, or more? _____
- Do houses have the same rooms as the picture, or something different? _____
- Do they have parking? If so, inside or outside? _____
- Are most houses modern where you live? _____
- Are there more houses in towns or the countryside? _____
- Are houses more expensive if they have a good view or a garden? _____



TEST YOURSELF

59 Kitchen

A In the kitchen



- 1 cupboard
- 2 (kitchen) equipment [U]
- 3 tap
- 4 sink
- 5 fridge
- 6 cooker
- 7 oven
- 8 washing machine
- 9 dishwasher
- 10 rubbish
- 11 bin
(The bin is **full**. **OPP** empty
You need to **empty** the bin.
OPP fill)

SPOTLIGHT *turn something on/off*

You can **turn on/off** something electrical.

- **Turn the light on. Turn the dishwasher off.**
- **Turn on/off the washing machine.**

You can also **turn on/off** water and gas.

- **Turn the tap on. Turn the gas cooker off.**
(**NOT** Open/close the tap/gas.)

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ kitchen / <u>fridge</u> | <u>D</u> | 4 tap / <u>machine</u> | ..... |
| 1 <u>oven</u> / <u>cupboard</u> | ..... | 5 <u>equipment</u> / <u>empty</u> | ..... |
| 2 <u>turn on</u> / <u>rubbish</u> | ..... | 6 <u>dishwasher</u> / <u>machine</u> | ..... |
| 3 <u>cooker</u> / <u>cupboard</u> | ..... | 7 <u>cooker</u> / <u>full</u> | ..... |

2 Complete the sentences using vocabulary from the picture.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ Put the milk in the <u>fridge</u> . | |
| 1 Put those dirty clothes in the w..... | 7 Is the dishwasher f.....? |
| 2 Put the dirty plates in the d..... or the s..... | 8 Can you t..... the oven....., please? |
| 3 Put the cups and bowls in the c..... | 9 Is the r..... bin full? |
| 4 Put the empty boxes in the b..... | 10 Can you e..... the bin, please? |
| 5 Put the meat in the o..... | 11 Could you turn the hot water t..... off? |
| 6 Put the dessert in the f..... | 12 Have you got a lot of kitchen e.....? |
| | 13 The oven is part of the c..... |

3 **ABOUT YOU** Write down anything in the picture you have got or haven't got in your kitchen.

- ▶ We've got a dishwasher.
We haven't got a washing machine in the kitchen. It's in another room.

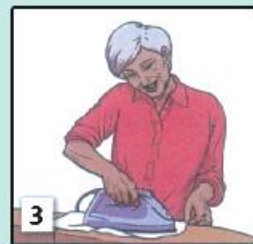


TEST YOURSELF

B Jobs in the kitchen

Everyday tasks: I have to ...

- do the housework [U]
- do the washing up¹ [U]
SYN wash the dishes [pl]
- do the washing² [U]
- do the ironing³ [U]
- clean⁴ the cooker and cupboards
- prepare and cook⁵ meals for the family
- look after the children when they come home from school
- feed⁶ the cats



GLOSSARY

everyday task	normal, not special a piece of work that you must do, often difficult and not nice	do the housework [U]	do work in the house, e.g. cleaning and washing. Be careful: housework = cleaning the house; homework = work teachers give students to do after class.
have to (do sth)	used for saying that sb must do sth, or that sth must happen: <i>I have to cook the meals / clean the house.</i>	prepare look after sb	make something ready: prepare the lunch/dinner do the things for sb that they need: <i>I look after my grandmother because she can't see very well.</i>

4 Circle the correct word.

► a daily task / ironing

1 I feed / prepare the breakfast.

2 I do my housework / homework on the bus.

3 I make / do the washing up.

4 I clean / feed the kitchen.

5 I look after / cook the dog.

6 I have to / have cook the dinner.

5 Complete the sentences using different words

- Do you do it daily? ~ Yes, it's an everyday task.
- 1 Do you give the cats their food? ~ No, I never them. My mother does.
- 2 Do you wash the clothes? ~ No, I don't the My cousin does it.
- 3 Is it an easy job? ~ No, actually it's quite a difficult
- 4 Do you wash the dishes? ~ Yes, my mum says I have to do the
- 5 Do you clean the house? ~ Yes, I always the Nobody else does it!
- 6 Do you do the tasks your teacher gives you? ~ Yes, I my
- 7 Do you spend a lot of time with the children? ~ Yes, I them all day.
- 8 Is it necessary for you to do all these tasks? ~ Yes, I do them.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

WHO DOES THE MOST WORK IN YOUR HOME?

Who does the housework?

Who cooks the dinner?

Who does the washing-up?

Who cleans the kitchen?

Who does the washing?

Who does the ironing?

Who does most of the everyday tasks? Why?



TEST YOURSELF

60 Bedroom and bathroom

A Bedroom

Hi! I'm Kimiko and I'm living in an **international** student house where I have all I need. There's a **bed**¹ with **sheets**², and a small **table**³ and **lamp**⁴ next to the bed. There's a large **wardrobe**⁵ for my clothes, and a desk and chair, which I use all the time when I'm studying. I've put a **few pictures**⁶ on the **wall**⁷ to make it feel like home. There's **space** under the bed for my **suitcase**⁸ and boxes. The **furniture** is all **wooden** and quite nice.



GLOSSARY

international International student accommodation has people from many different countries. **National** is about one country: **national** newspapers/holidays
a few some, but not many

space [U] a place that is big enough for sth or sb to go into
room [U]: There's **space/room** for you to sit here. There's **space/room** for three chairs here.
furniture [U] tables, chairs, beds, etc. A bed is a **piece of furniture**.
wooden made of **wood** (see picture)

- 1 Put the words below into the correct group, according to the pronunciation of the underlined sound. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

cat ✓ tuna ✓ national ✓ picture seat Portuguese match
international suitcase table nature dictionary sheet furniture

GROUP A ► cat

GROUP B ► tuna

GROUP C ► national

- 2 Look at the picture. Match 1–9 with a–i.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------|---|---------------------------|
| ► The table's | d | a | made of wood. |
| 1 The lamp's | ..... | b | pictures above the bed. |
| 2 The sheets are | ..... | c | under the bed. |
| 3 The pictures are | ..... | d | next to the bed. ✓ |
| 4 The furniture's all | ..... | e | the furniture she needs. |
| 5 The wardrobe's | ..... | f | on the table, by the bed. |
| 6 There are a few | ..... | g | next to the desk. |
| 7 The suitcase is | ..... | h | on the wall. |
| 8 Kimiko's room has all | ..... | i | on the bed. |

- 3 Write the answers.

- | | | |
|--|----|--|
| ► You sleep on it: <u>a bed</u> | 8 | If something is made of wood, it's |
| 1 A place where you keep clothes: | 9 | You put books or a clock by the bed on this: |
| 2 You put these on a bed: | 10 | It means 'connected to just one country'. |
| 3 You put pictures on this in a room: | 11 | It means 'from many different countries'. |
| 4 You put clothes in this when you travel: | 12 | If you don't have many books, you only have |
| 5 You need it to read at night: | | |
| 6 It means 'room to put something'. | | |
| 7 A bed, a desk and a chair are all | | |

- 4 ABOUT YOU Look at Kimiko's text about her bedroom. Write a similar text about your bedroom at home.



TEST YOURSELF

B Bathroom

- You **have** a wash with **soap** [U].
- You **brush/clean** your teeth with a **toothbrush**.
- You **brush/do** your hair with a **brush/hairbrush**.
- You **have** a shave with a **razor** or an **electric razor**.
- You **put on** **make-up**.

SPOTLIGHT **have + noun**

Notice these phrases with **have**:

- I **have a shower** every day.
- I **don't have a bath** very often.
- Do you **have a shave** every morning?
- I **have a wash** after work.



5 Circle the correct word.

- I wash / clean my teeth after eating.
- 1 I do / put on my hair with soap / a brush.
- 2 Do you have / do a bath every day?
- 3 She puts on / has make-up when she goes out.
- 4 Do you often have a shave / wash with an electric razor?
- 5 I brush my teeth at the toilet / washbasin.
- 6 I use a towel / soap after I have / make a shower.
- 7 I lie down in the shower / bath for fifteen minutes after work.
- 8 I brush / make my hair in front of the mirror / brush.

6 Complete the text.

AMELIA: When I get up in the morning, I usually have a quick ► shower, but in winter, if I have time, I like to have a (1) _____. I dry myself with a (2) _____, and quickly get dressed. Then I look in the (3) _____ and do my (4) _____. I (5) _____ my teeth standing in front of the (6) _____, and after that, I (7) _____ some make-up. I'm ready to go to work.

HARRY: I look terrible in the morning when I wake up. The first thing I do is to clean my (8) _____, and that makes me feel better. If I don't have time for a shower, I have a quick (9) _____ with soap and hot water. My hair is very short so I don't have to (10) _____ it, but I always have a (11) _____ with an electric (12) _____.

7 Complete the questions.

- How many times a week do you have a bath or shower _____?
- 1 Do you brush your t_____ before or after breakfast?
- 2 How many times a day do you do your h_____?
- 3 How many times a day do you look in the m_____?
- 4 Do you carry a b_____ in your bag?
- 5 If you wear m_____, do you p_____ it _____ every day or only sometimes?
- 6 If you shave, how often do you h_____ a shave? Do you use a r_____ or an e_____ r_____?

ABOUT YOU

I have a shower every day.

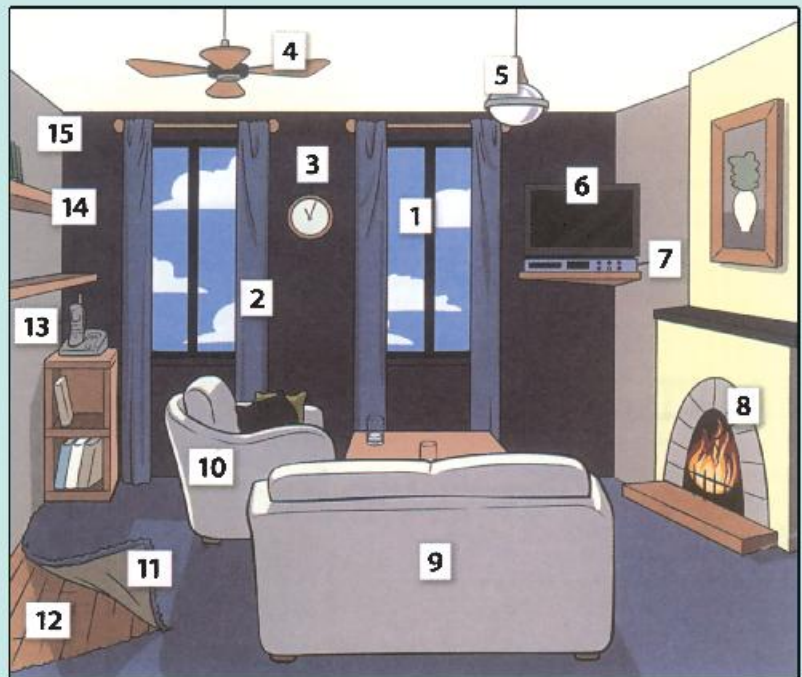
8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 7, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

61 Living room

- 1 window
- 2 curtain
- 3 clock
- 4 fan
- 5 light
- 6 TV/television
- 7 DVD player
- 8 fire
- 9 sofa
- 10 armchair
- 11 carpet
- 12 floor
- 13 telephone/phone
- 14 shelf (pl shelves)
- 15 the corner of the room



1 Complete the words.

► co r n e r

1 arm _____ r

2 car _____ t

3 f _____ r

4 li _____ t

5 wi _____ w

6 f _____ c

7 s _____ a

8 sh _____ f

9 te _____ n

10 cur _____ n

11 c _____ k

12 te _____ e

2 Look at the picture. True or false? Write T or F.

In the living room, there is only one ...

► DVD player T

1 window

2 TV

3 sofa

4 clock

5 armchair

6 telephone

7 fan

8 corner

9 light

10 curtain

11 floor

12 carpet

13 shelf

14 fire

3 Complete the answers.

► You watch this in the evening:

1 You talk to somebody on this:

2 You sit on this:

3 You close these at night:

4 You check the time with this:

5 You need this when it's hot:

6 You need this when it's cold:

TV/television

7 You need this when it's dark:

8 You can put a clock on this:

9 This goes over the floor:

10 This is where two walls meet:

11 You look through this:

4 ABOUT YOUR HOME Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 What furniture have you got in your living room?

2 Which electrical things have you got in your living room?

3 Have you got these in your living room: a clock? a telephone? a carpet? If so, where are they?



TEST YOURSELF

62 Adjectives with prefixes

Are you sure you have the correct answers?

Are you a **lucky** person?

How's your brother these days?

Did you need to buy a new car?

Did you think the manager was being **rude**?

Can you get home before six o'clock?

Did you enjoy the meeting?

Is 'fall' a **regular** verb?

~ No, I'm **uncertain** about two of them.

~ I'm **lucky** with money, but **unlucky** in love.

~ Well, he smokes a lot – I think he's very **unhealthy**.

~ No, it was completely **unnecessary**.

~ Yes, I thought he was very **impolite**.

~ No, that's completely **impossible**.

~ Yes, thanks. It was quite **informal** and fun.

~ No, it's **irregular**: *fall, fell, fallen*.

GLOSSARY

uncertain	not sure OPP certain SYNS unsure/sure
lucky	If you are lucky , good things happen to you that you cannot control. OPP unlucky
unhealthy	not well, often ill OPP healthy
unnecessary	If sth is unnecessary , you don't need to do it, or you don't need it. OPP necessary
rude	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation SYN impolite OPP polite : In Britain, it is rude/impolite to eat with your mouth open.

SPOTLIGHT -in-, -im-, -ir-, -un-

Some adjectives form opposites with prefixes *in-*, *im-*, *ir-*.

formal **OPP** **informal**

possible **OPP** **impossible** (*im-* before *p*)

regular **OPP** **irregular** (*ir-* before *r*)

Some other adjectives form opposites with the prefix *un-*.

certain **OPP** **uncertain**

healthy **OPP** **unhealthy**

1 Correct the mistakes. Be careful: two answers are correct.

- ▶ informal informal
- 1 incertain uncertain
- 2 inlucky unlucky
- 3 irregular irregular
- 4 impossible impossible

- 5 innecessary unnecessary
- 6 inhealthy unhealthy
- 7 unsure unsure
- 8 unpolite impolite

2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Can you help me? I'm sure / unsure what to do next.
- 1 People who open the door for you in a shop are very **polite** / **rude**.
- 2 Words like *hi* and *yeah* are **formal** / **informal**.
- 3 Remember is **a regular** / **an irregular** verb.
- 4 We had two weeks of sunny weather for our holiday, which was very **lucky** / **unlucky**.

- 5 It was **necessary** / **unnecessary** to take a taxi because the hotel was very near the station.
- 6 If you don't say *thank you* for a present, people may think you are **polite** / **impolite**.
- 7 He has to decide where to go, but at the moment he is very **certain** / **uncertain**.
- 8 My sister watches TV all day and eats lots of cakes. She's very **healthy** / **unhealthy**.

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- ▶ I think spelling in English is impossible.
- 1 Where I live, the neighbours are all very polite.
- 2 I forget verbs are difficult to remember in English.
- 3 My English lessons are interesting and fun.
- 4 I'm very unlucky on holiday. The weather is always terrible.
- 5 I'm unsure where to go for my holidays next summer. I just can't decide.
- 6 I think it's impolite to eat your food too quickly.
- 7 I think it's important to look at your phone when you're having a meal with people.
- 8 I think it's important to be clean, but it's unnecessary to have a shower every day.

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? If not, write them so that they are true.

- ▶ I think spelling in English is impossible I think it's difficult, but not impossible!

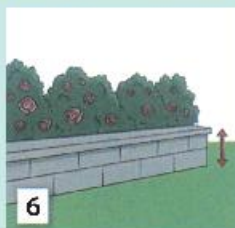


TEST YOURSELF

63 Adjective opposites

A Common opposites 1

- 1 She's **asleep**.
OPP awake
- 2 The river is **wide**.
OPP narrow
- 3 The man is **weak**.
OPP strong
- 4 This is **heavy**.
OPP light
- 5 It feels **soft**.
OPP hard
- 6 It's a **low** wall.
OPP high
- 7 The woman is **rich**.
OPP poor
- 8 The bird is **dead**.
OPP alive



SPOTLIGHT position of adjectives

Adjectives usually go before a noun. They can also go after *be*.

■ It's a **quiet** village. The village **is quiet**.

You can't use **alive**, **awake** or **asleep** before a noun.

■ The man **is alive**. (NOT ~~an alive~~ man)

1 Write Yes or No.

- Is a 120 kg person heavy? Yes
- 1 Is the River Nile narrow?
 - 2 Does wood feel hard?
 - 3 Is Nelson Mandela still alive?
 - 4 Are mobile phones light?
 - 5 Are elephants very strong?

- 6 Are you asleep at the moment?
- 7 Is America a rich country?
- 8 If you are walking, are you awake?
- 9 Are all the buildings in Dubai low?
- 10 Is rice soft before you cook it?

2 Write the opposite.

- The bed is **hard**. soft
- 1 His legs are **weak**.
 - 2 The dog's **asleep**.
 - 3 They're very **rich**.

- 4 The roof is **high**.
- 5 The road is **narrow**.
- 6 The cat is **dead**.
- 7 The bag was **heavy**.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- Is it safe to walk on this bridge? ~ Yes, it's very strong.
- 1 Did you sleep well? ~ No, the bed was too It was like sleeping on the floor.
 - 2 Can Rowena walk very far? ~ No, she's still after her illness.
 - 3 Has Eric got a lot of money? ~ Yes, he's very
 - 4 Has Kelly still got a dog? ~ No, it's I'm afraid.
 - 5 Can you see over the wall? ~ No, it's too I can't see a thing.
 - 6 Can we carry that table to the garden? ~ Yes, it's quite
 - 7 Can you swim across the river here? ~ Yes, it's quite – that will be easy.
 - 8 Dan's eyes are closed. ~ Yes, I think he's He said he was very tired.
 - 9 That family lives in one room. ~ Yes, they're very
 - 10 What a lovely little baby! ~ Yes, his skin is so lovely and



TEST YOURSELF

B Common opposites 2

OPPOSITES QUESTIONNAIRE

- Is it **common** or **unusual** for you to get a cold or flu?
- Do you prefer **traditional** houses or **modern** houses?
- Do you prefer to sleep in a **dark** room or a **light** room?
- Do you and your best friend enjoy **similar** things or **different** things?
- For you, is **social media** a **positive** thing or a **negative** thing?
- On holiday, do you prefer to have **general** plans or more **specific** plans?
- Is knowing about history **useful** or **useless** in your daily life?
- Do other people think you are **lazy** or **hardworking**?

GLOSSARY

common	If sth is common , it happens often, or you find it in many places: a common name OPP unusual
traditional	If sth is traditional , it is typical of things that people have done for a long time. tradition <i>n</i> OPP modern
dark	with no light, or not much light OPP light
similar	the same in many ways, but not completely the same OPP different
social media	websites, e.g. WhatsApp, Instagram, where you can communicate with people who have similar interests
positive	thinking or talking about the good parts of a situation OPP negative
general	not in detail, giving only the main parts of sth OPP specific
useful	good and helpful for doing sth OPP useless
lazy	A lazy person doesn't like working hard. OPP hardworking

- 4 Tick (✓) the words with the main stress on the first syllable, like narrow and tiny. Put a cross (X) for the others. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ modern ☒ prefer ☒
 1 useless ☐ 3 different ☐ 5 general ☐ 7 unusual ☐ 9 tradition ☐
 2 common ☐ 4 specific ☐ 6 media ☐ 8 useful ☐ 10 similar ☐

- 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ A useful book is one that helps you to do something. T
 1 Two similar things are almost the same.
 2 You can read easily in a light room.
 3 The style of a traditional building is modern.
 4 An unusual event happens a lot.
 5 Specific instructions are clear and with a lot of detail.
 6 A useless thing will help you.
 7 If a type of car is common, you see it a lot.
 8 A lazy person works very hard.
 9 In the middle of the day, it's usually dark.
 10 If somebody is on social media, they are online.

- 6 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Do the two brothers look different? ~ No, they look very similar.
 1 Did you talk about anything specific? ~ No, it was a very conversation.
 2 Did you go to class yesterday? ~ Yes, we had a very lesson on prepositions.
 3 Is Paco's flat dark? ~ No, it's very with lovely views of the sea.
 4 Is Bythesea a common name? ~ No, it's very I've never heard it.
 5 Do you like modern architecture? ~ No, I prefer styles.
 6 Mariella seems a bit lazy to me. ~ No, that's not true. She's very
 7 Was the weather information helpful? ~ No, it was, and we got very wet.

- 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in the questionnaire, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Showing that something is important

Adverb	Example	Meaning
only	<i>She was only 17 when she got married.</i> (It's unusual to get married at 17.) <i>We can walk to the station – it's only five minutes.</i> (NOT 15 or 20.)	We use only to say 'no more than'.
even	<i>It's cold here, even in summer.</i> (In most places, it's warm in the summer.) <i>My older brother is 1.90 m, and my younger brother is even taller.</i>	We often use even before a fact that is surprising or difficult to believe, or to make (a comparative) another word stronger.
still	<i>After 25 years, I still love my job.</i> (I continue to love my job.) <i>Do they live in Paris now? ~ No, they're still in London.</i>	We use still to say that a fact or situation continues to be true.
especially	<i>We liked the towns in the south, especially Seville.</i> (Seville was the best.) <i>It's very hot here, especially in July and August.</i> (July and August are the hottest.)	We use especially to say 'more than others'.

1 Underline the correct answer.

- The food is good there, only / especially the fish.
- 1 He was only / even 15 when he left school.
- 2 I've seen the film five times and I even / still enjoy it.
- 3 The students are very nice, still / especially Marcel.
- 4 There are even / only three bridges like this in the world.
- 5 It was cold yesterday, but it's even / only colder today.
- 6 I study hard, but my English is still / only terrible.

2 Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

- It's six kilometres to the next town. (only) It's only six kilometres to the next town.
- 1 He's 75 and he plays tennis. (still) _____
- 2 It's nice there, in the morning. (especially) _____
- 3 There are three students in the class. (only) _____
- 4 He works on Sundays. (even) _____
- 5 She's at university. (still) _____
- 6 Rio is big, but Sao Paulo is bigger. (even) _____

3 Complete the sentences.

- He's ninety, but he still _____ drives a car.
- 1 _____ four people came to the party.
It was a bit sad.
- 2 They have been in Singapore for ten years and they _____ like living there.
- 3 I love fish, _____ salmon.
- 4 He can't drive – he's _____ 15.
- 5 This question isn't difficult. _____ a child could answer it.
- 6 She enjoyed the book, _____ the first part.
- 7 He lives in Italy now, but he _____ speaks English most of the time.
- 8 The sign was difficult to read, _____ with my glasses.



TEST YOURSELF

B Degree

0%

100%

a bit / a little

quite/pretty/rather

very

really

extremely

a bit / a little	Use a bit or a little before an adjective or comparative adjective, but not before a positive adjective. (NOT a bit good) <i>The lesson was a bit boring. It's a little warmer than yesterday.</i>
quite pretty inf	= more than <i>a bit</i> , but less than <i>very</i> <i>The film was quite/pretty interesting. The town is quite/pretty big.</i>
rather	= <i>quite</i> <i>The test was rather difficult. She was rather tired after the journey.</i> If you use rather with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased. <i>The restaurant was rather nice.</i>
extremely	= a bit stronger than <i>very</i> . You can use extremely with adjectives, but not with verbs. <i>I was extremely tired by 6 o'clock. We were extremely busy on Saturday.</i>
really	= <i>very, extremely</i> You can use really with adjectives and verbs. <i>The restaurant was really good. The weather was really terrible.</i> <i>We were really tired. I really liked the film.</i>

4 Circle the correct answers. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- ▶ It was quite / *a bit* interesting.
- 1 She's pretty / *quite* untidy.
- 2 Her new shoes are really / *a bit* wonderful.
- 3 My sister is a bit / *a little* untidy.
- 4 I really / *extremely* enjoyed the meal.
- 5 She was really / *extremely* friendly.
- 6 Tina's flat is a bit / *quite* nice.
- 7 The restaurant was rather / *really* good.
- 8 The hotel's a bit / *really* comfortable.

5 Rewrite the sentences using an adverb with a similar meaning to the underlined words.

- ▶ The film was a bit boring. *The film was a little boring.*
- 1 He was very good.
- 2 The holiday was quite interesting.
- 3 She's a little unfriendly.
- 4 The kitchen was extremely clean.
- 5 The room was a bit small.
- 6 Her new boyfriend is rather unfriendly.
- 7 They're really nice people.
- 8 The exam results were quite surprising.

6 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- ▶ I went to bed because I was extremely tired.
- 1 The food was excellent, but the service was rather
- 2 I like Maria's new boyfriend. He's extremely
- 3 I went to see a concert last night and I really
- 4 Nobody talked to me at the party, so I felt pretty
- 5 I thought the lesson might be boring, but in fact it was rather
- 6 We waited thirty minutes for the bus, so we arrived a bit
- 7 The dog looked horrible, but in fact it was quite
- 8 People think he's hardworking, but I know he's really



TEST YOURSELF

65 Adverbs of manner

CLASS 9

Monday 3.30 - 5.30

- Cora always does her homework very carefully. ✓
- Juno is clever and answers most questions correctly. ✓
- Eliane speaks very clearly. ✓
- Rocco speaks too fast; he needs to speak more slowly. ✓
- Lucas speaks too loudly, but Ines speaks too quietly. ✓
- Jan speaks English very well, but he writes badly. ✓
- Ewa always arrives late but just smiles happily. ✓
- Mahmud tries very hard, but he thinks the lessons are difficult. ✓
- Layla passes all her exams very easily. ✓

SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Adverbs of **manner** are used with verbs to tell you more about the way you do something, or the way that something happens. They often end in *-ly*.

sad adj / **sadly** adv; **quiet** adj / **quietly** adv;
careful adj / **carefully** adv

■ He opened the door **quietly**. ■ Shona looked at me **sadly**.

A few adverbs are irregular.

fast adj / **fast** adv; **late** adj / **late** adv; **hard** adj / **hard** adv;
good adj / **well** adv

Adjectives ending in *-y* have adverbs ending in *-ily*.
happy / **happily**; **easy** / **easily**; **angry** / **angrily**

GLOSSARY

manner the way you do sth or the way that sth happens: Jacques has a friendly **manner**. = He acts in a friendly way.

clearly in a way that is easy to hear, understand or see

fast adv quickly: He drives **fast**.

fast adj: She has a **fast** car.

late adv after the correct time **late** adj **OPP** early

hard adv a lot: work/try **hard**

hard adj difficult: The test was **hard**.

1 Write the adverb form.

- careful carefully
- 1 slow _____
- 2 bad _____
- 3 angry _____
- 4 late _____

- 5 clear _____
- 6 happy _____
- 7 good _____
- 8 hard _____

- 9 easy _____
- 10 quiet _____
- 11 correct _____
- 12 fast _____

2 Rewrite the sentence using the verb in CAPITALS and an adverb.

- Jesse is bad at playing football. PLAY Jesse plays football badly.
- 1 I have very clear writing. WRITE I _____
- 2 My cousin is a good singer. SING My _____
- 3 My boss is a hard worker. WORK My _____
- 4 Lola is a careful driver. DRIVE Lola _____
- 5 Robina's answers to the questions were correct. ANSWER Robina _____
- 6 Julio's pronunciation of words isn't clear. PRONOUNCE Julio _____
- 7 The exercise was easy for Miriam. DO Miriam _____
- 8 Amina is very fast at doing the work. WORK Amina _____
- 9 My little boy is a slow reader. READ My _____
- 10 She was angry when she spoke to Sam. SPEAK She _____

3 Complete the questions.

- Do you speak English slowly or fast ?
- 1 Do you arrive for work/classes at the right time or _____ ?
- 2 Do people in your family speak quietly or _____ ?
- 3 Does your teacher speak _____ so that you can understand?
- 4 Do you drive well or _____ ?
- 5 Do you think _____ about what you want to say in English?
- 6 Do you relax in class, or do you work _____ ?

ABOUT YOU

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.

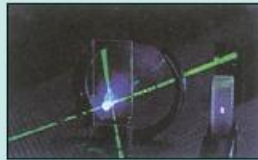


TEST YOURSELF

SCIENCE SUBJECTS



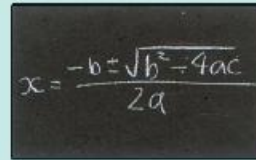
chemistry



physics



biology



maths



computer science

ARTS SUBJECTS



geography



history



literature



languages



art



PE



design and technology

GLOSSARY

subject	Physics, history, etc. are school subjects .
maths	short for mathematics
PE	sport and exercise as a school subject, short for physical education
design	(sounds like <i>fine</i>) pictures or plans that show how to make sth
technology	the science or information about how things work

SPOTLIGHT *be good at something*

If you are **good at something**, you do it well. If you are **bad at it**, you do it very badly. SYN **terrible at sth**

▪ I'm (quite) **good at** languages. ▪ I'm **terrible at** maths.

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------|--|-------|
| ▶ art / <u>maths</u> | <u>D</u> | 4 <u>history</u> / <u>story</u> | ..... |
| 1 design / <u>physic</u> s | ..... | 5 <u>chem</u> istry / <u>techno</u> logy | ..... |
| 2 <u>bi</u> ology / <u>scie</u> nce | ..... | 6 computer / <u>lan</u> guage | ..... |
| 3 <u>bi</u> ology / <u>geo</u> graphy | ..... | 7 <u>litera</u> ture / <u>pic</u> ture | ..... |

- 2 Write the name of a school subject or subjects.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ algebra, geometry | <u>maths</u> | 7 CO ₂ , H ₂ O | ..... |
| 1 exercises in the gym | ..... | 8 Apple and Google | ..... |
| 2 Shakespeare, Tolstoy | ..... | 9 parts of a flower or animal | ..... |
| 3 wars in the past | ..... | 10 create a new product | ..... |
| 4 rivers in Africa | ..... | 11 What is light? | ..... |
| 5 Picasso, Da Vinci | ..... | 12 History and geography are | ..... |
| 6 Japanese, Arabic | ..... | 13 Maths and chemistry are | ..... |

- 3 **ABOUT YOU** Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form. If possible, tell another student.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 At school, I'm / I <u>was</u> good at | 4 I <u>don't</u> / <u>didn't</u> study |
| 2 I'm / I <u>was</u> also quite good at | 5 The subject I <u>like</u> / <u>liked</u> most is / was |
| 3 I'm / I <u>was</u> terrible at | 6 And the subject I <u>hate</u> / <u>hated</u> most is / was |



TEST YOURSELF

A The education system



In the **education system** in England and Wales, you **start school at the age of** four or five and **continue up to** the age of 16. At 16, you can **leave school**, and then you must **either get a job** with **training**, or do some training in a **college** for a particular job, e.g. working in the hotel business. The other **option** is to **stay at school** for two more years. After that, you can get a job or go to university.

GLOSSARY

education system	learning or teaching sb at a school or college
uniform	a group of things or parts that work together
start school	special clothes that children wear at school
at (the age of) five	go to a school for the first time
continue	= when you are five (years old)
	not stop happening or doing sth
	SYN carry on
up to	until; as far as
leave school	stop going to school
job	the work that you do for money
	get a job find a job
training	more work or practice to get ready for a job or sport
college	a place where you can go to study after you leave school
option	a thing you can choose; a possibility
stay at school	= continue at school

SPOTLIGHT *either ... or ...*

We use **or** to show there are two things/people you can choose, and we use **either ... or ...** to make this contrast stronger.

- After 16, you can **either** do arts subjects **or** science subjects.
- **Either** you go to university, **or** you get a job.

1 Put the story in order.

- He then went to a local college
- He carried on up to the age of 16.
- When Tom was five,
- and finally he got a job in a local hairdresser's,
- when he decided to leave school,
- where he trained to become a hairdresser,
- he started school.

1

2 Complete the text with words from the glossary.

► At _____ the age of 16, French students can (1) _____ school and (2) _____ a job, but around 65% (3) _____ at school for another two years. They then have two (4) _____: they can (5) _____ go to a *lycée général* (6) _____ go to a *lycée technique* or *lycée professionnel*. At the *lycée général*, many students go on to university. At the other types of school, students do some (7) _____ in order to prepare for a particular job.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Complete the questions, but don't write answers.

ABOUT YOU

- At what age do children **start** _____ school?
- Do they usually wear a _____?
- At what age can they _____ school?
- At this age, do they _____ a job or do more _____?
- Do many students _____ at school after 16?
- What can they do when they leave school _____ 18?
- What did you do? **OR** What are you going to do?

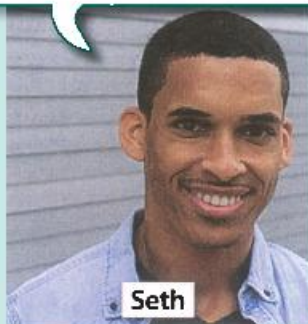
4 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Exams

When I was at school, I went to all the lessons and **did my homework**, but I didn't **work very hard**. So, when I **took exams** at 16, my **results** weren't fantastic. I **passed** six, which was good, but I **failed** physics. It was my **worst result**— I got a **grade F**, which was terrible. After that, I went to a college where I **worked hard and did well**. I **passed** all my exams at 18 and went to university. That's where I am now.



GLOSSARY

lesson	a period of time (e.g. 45 minutes) in school when you learn/teach
do homework [U]	do work the teacher has given you at home (NOT <i>homeworks</i>)
work hard	work a lot
result	the grade or mark you get in an exam, e.g. A or 9/10
(the) worst	superlative of bad OPP (the) best superlative of good
grade	You get a grade , e.g. A or B, or a mark , e.g. 15/20, in a test or an exam.
do well	be good at sth and get better at it OPP do badly

SPOTLIGHT *exams*

Exam is short for **examination**. It's an important test at the end of a period of study. We say:

take/do an exam sit down and write your answers in the exam

pass an exam take an exam and do well, e.g. grade A / a mark of 85%

fail an exam take an exam and do badly, e.g. grade D / a mark of 35%

5 Look at Rafael's exam results on the right and answer the questions.

- ▶ How many exams did he take? 7
- 1 Did he take an exam in chemistry?
- 2 How many did he pass?
- 3 How many did he fail?
- 4 What was his best grade?
- 5 What was his worst grade?
- 6 What did he get in English?

EXAM	GRADE A, B, C = pass / D, E = fail
French	B
IT	C
Geography	D
Biology	A
English	C
History	B
Maths	E

6 Complete the sentences.

- Six out of ten isn't a very good mark.
- 1 I have to take an English exam tomorrow.
- 2 Did you finish your homework last night?
- 3 Paula did very well in her German exam; she got a good mark.
- 4 I got my exam results yesterday. I passed all of them.
- 5 Andre is very unhappy at the moment. He's doing poorly at school, and last week he failed an important maths exam.
- 6 Maths is my weakest subject. I'm terrible at it.

7 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences about yourself using the right verb form, then write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

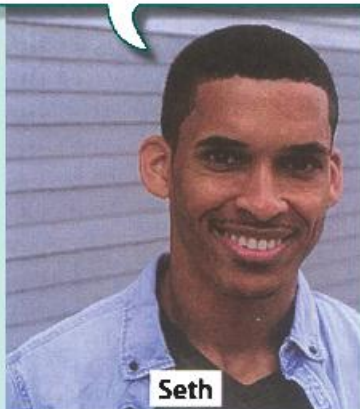
- 1 How long **are** / **were** your lessons at school?
- 2 **Do** / **Did** you work hard at school most of the time?
- 3 At what age **do** / **did** you take important exams?
- 4 How many **did** / **will** you take?
- 5 **Did** / **Will** you pass all of them?
- 6 What's your best subject?



TEST YOURSELF

A A university degree

I started university two years ago when I was nineteen, and I'm **doing a degree in** Spanish and French. The **course lasts** four years, and there are three **terms** a year. I work in the **library** a lot because I have to **write** lots of **essays**. I also have to take exams, and last term I failed one and **had to take it again**. I got the result two weeks ago – **fortunately** I passed this time. When I've got my degree, I want to **do research**.



Seth

GLOSSARY

do a degree (in sth)	study a subject or subjects at university. You do a degree in a subject.
course	a number of classes on a subject. e.g. an English course
term	a period of study, usually about ten weeks
library	a place where you can read and borrow books (Be careful: a bookshop is a place where you buy books.)
write an essay	do a piece of writing on a subject
again	one more time
fortunately	We say fortunately when we start talking about sth good. OPP unfortunately
do research	study a subject for a long time (usually after a first degree) to learn new information about it

SPOTLIGHT *How long does it last? / How long does it take?*

Last means 'continue for a period of time'.

- A university term **lasts** ten weeks.
- My French course **lasts** a year.

We use **take** (often with *it*) to talk about how long we need to do something.

- **It took me** three years to do my research.
- **He took** two days to write the essay. **It took him** two days to write the essay.

1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ She did an English course / term.
- 1 I want to **do** / **make** a degree in maths.
- 2 A **term** / **degree** lasts about ten weeks.
- 3 I have to **learn** / **write** essays.
- 4 Most lessons **take** / **last** an hour.
- 5 I study a lot in the **library** / **bookshop**.
- 6 I want to **do** / **make** some research.
- 7 **Fortunately** / **Unfortunately**, I failed the exam.
- 8 **Before** / **After** a degree, some people do research.
- 9 It **takes** / **lasts** a long time to do a degree.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ How long does the term last ? ~ About twelve weeks.
- 1 Are you doing a ? ~ Yes, Medicine.
- 2 Are you planning to do ? ~ Yes, when I've got my first degree.
- 3 Did he get his exam results? ~ Yes, he passed.
- 4 Can he take the exam if he fails the first time? ~ Yes, in September.
- 5 Did she have to write an ? ~ Yes, and it her a long time.
- 6 How long does the course ? ~ It's only one term.
- 7 Did you buy that new dictionary? ~ Yes, I got it in the college
- 8 Did Miriam pass all her exams? ~ No, she failed two subjects.

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

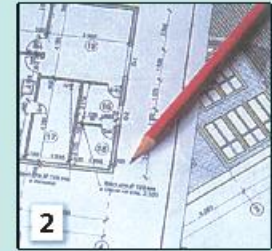
- 1 How long do you need to study for a degree in Medicine?
- 2 What percentage of young people do a degree?
- 3 Do many students go on and do research?
- 4 How long does a university term last?
- 5 If you fail your exams, can you always take them again?



TEST YOURSELF

B University subjects and people

	Degree Subject	Person
1	medicine	a doctor
2	architecture	an architect
3	engineering	an engineer
4	law	a lawyer
5	business studies	a businessman/woman
6	journalism	a journalist OR a reporter
7	computer science	e.g. software designer, IT manager



SPOTLIGHT teacher, lecturer, professor

A **teacher** is a person who teaches for a job, usually in a school (NOT a professor). In the UK, a person who teaches in a university is a **lecturer**, and they give **lectures** (NOT lessons). A **professor** in a university is a lecturer of the highest level.

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|---|----------|---|-------|
| ► design / medic <u>i</u> ne | <u>D</u> | 4 computer / wo <u>m</u> an | ..... |
| 1 law / fo <u>u</u> r | ..... | 5 law <u>y</u> er / bo <u>y</u> | ..... |
| 2 co <u>m</u> puter / do <u>c</u> tor | ..... | 6 sci <u>e</u> n <u>c</u> e / de <u>s</u> ign | ..... |
| 3 bu <u>s</u> iness / jo <u>u</u> rnalist | ..... | 7 tea <u>ch</u> er / archi <u>t</u> ect | ..... |

5 Complete the sentences. Use the word on the right to help you.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| ► He always wanted to be a <u>teacher</u> | TEACHING |
| 1 She wants to be a | MEDICINE |
| 2 When did Tom become an | ENGINEERING |
| 3 Emily is studying to become an | ARCHITECTURE |
| 4 My sister is a | LAW |
| 5 Edward now works as a | LECTURE |
| 6 After his degree he became a software | DESIGN |
| 7 Is it difficult to become a | JOURNALISM |
| 8 I knew he'd become a | BUSINESS STUDIES |

6 Complete the words in the sentences.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| ► He wants to be a hospital <u>doctor</u> | 6 My degree was in b..... studies. |
| 1 My uncle is a university p..... | 7 I studied journalism to be a r..... |
| 2 It's not easy to get a place to study I..... | 8 I enjoyed my e..... degree. |
| 3 My friend got a job as an IT m..... | 9 She wants to do computer s..... |
| 4 He's a j..... for a national paper. | 10 She's a b..... now. She works |
| 5 I don't go to all my university l..... | for a large company. |

7 ABOUT YOU Take six jobs from this unit and put them in order from 1) a job I would like, to 6) a job I would not like. If possible, talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

What do you do?

What's your job?

I'm ...



a police officer/
policeman/policewoman



a businessman/
businesswoman



a secretary
in a company



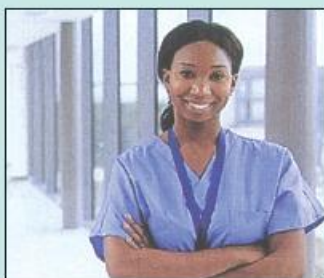
a dentist



a model



a shop assistant/
sales assistant



a nurse



a fashion designer



a soldier



a pilot



a builder



a teacher



a chef



a cleaner



a lorry driver



a hairdresser

(ALSO a train/bus/taxi driver)

GLOSSARY

job	the work that you do for money: <i>I've got a job as a waiter (NOT as waiter.)</i>
work !U!	the job that you do: <i>I need work.</i> (NOT a work OR works) work v
boss	a person who tells people what to do in their job
career	the work you do for many years: <i>I want a career in teaching. His career is very important to him.</i>

SPOTLIGHT *employ*

If you **employ somebody**, you pay somebody to work for you.

- The factory **employs** 800 people.

A **company** is a group of people who work together and make or sell things. A person or company who does this is the **employer**, and the person who works for somebody is the **employee**.

- We have 800 **employees** in the company.

If you are able to work but don't have a job, you are **unemployed**.

1 Circle the correct answer.

- A lorry driver / chef works in a kitchen.
 1 I'm looking for a work / job.
 2 A shop assistant / bus driver sells things.
 3 A model / nurse works in a hospital.
 4 A career is work that you do for a short / long time.
 5 A fashion designer designs clothes / furniture.
 6 An unemployed person has / hasn't got a job.
 7 If you are an employer / employee, you work for other people.
 8 A boss / hairdresser tells people what to do.
 9 A pilot / dentist looks after people's teeth.
 10 Models / Secretaries are usually very tall.
 11 A builder / cleaner works outside a lot.
 12 You can have a career in the police / when you stop work.

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- fashion / assistant D
 1 pilot / entist
 2 pilot / drive
 3 business / builder
 4 police / model
 5 teacher / chef
 6 work / nurse
 7 designer / drive

3 Complete the sentences with jobs from page 134.

- You have to walk a lot if you are a nurse, a police officer or a soldier.
 1 You probably have to go to university to be
 2 You need to work with your hands to be
 3 You may need to be good at maths if you are
 4 You have a lot of free time if you are
 5 You usually have to wear a uniform if you are
 6 You work in an office a lot of the time if you are

4 Complete the dialogues.

- Does he work in a shop? ~ Yes, he's a sales assistant.
 1 Do you work for the boss? ~ Yes, I'm her
 2 Does he work for British Airways? ~ Yes, he's
 3 Does Lisa cut people's hair? ~ Yes, she's
 4 Does he tell people what to do? ~ Yes, he's
 5 Do you see her clothes in magazines? ~ Yes, she's
 6 Is her picture in fashion magazines? ~ Yes, she's
 7 Does your brother work in a school? ~ Yes, he's
 8 Does Fergus work in that restaurant? ~ Yes, he's
 9 Hashem sells computers, doesn't he? ~ Yes, he works for a very big

5 ABOUT YOU Think about your family and people you know. Do you know anybody who does these jobs? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- a nurse My neighbour, Mrs Petrova, is a nurse.
 a soldier I don't know anyone who's a soldier.
 1 a secretary
 2 a chef
 3 a hairdresser
 4 a teacher
 5 a taxi driver
 6 a dentist
 7 a businessman or businesswoman
 8 a boss



TEST YOURSELF

70 Describing jobs

A Basic information

Where does he work?

He works in an office¹ / a factory² / a hospital³.

What does she do?

She's a **manager**.

She works as a secretary.

She **manages** a company.

She's in **advertising** / in the army.

Who does he work for?

He **works for**

a car **company**. (e.g. Toyota, Mercedes)

an **airline**. (e.g. Cathay Pacific, KLM)

What **hours** does she work?

She **works**

from nine to five.

long hours.

12 hours a day.

How much does he **earn**?

He **earns** a lot. His **salary** is \$100,000 a year.



GLOSSARY

manager	a person who controls an organization, e.g. a company or shop
manage	v
advertising	the business of telling people about things to buy
army	a large group of soldiers who fight on land
earn	get money for the work that you do
salary	money you get every month/year for the work that you do

1 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

an office an American airline a factory she work ✓ hours a day work for
long hours earn much a year ten to six advertising does he earn

- ▶ Where does she work ?
- 1 She works
- 2 I work in
- 3 He works in
- 4 Who do you ?
- 5 How much ?
- 6 I work eight
- 7 She works for
- 8 She doesn't
- 9 He earns €50,000
- 10 I work from

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Who does he work for ?
- 1 She's a doctor in the local Her husband works a factory.
- 2 I work for a computer, and my is now €60,000 year.
- 3 He doesn't work hours: he only works 9.00 3.00.
- 4 She's a nurse, so she doesn't much money.
- 5 My brother is a soldier the
- 6 Who do you work ? ~ I'm a pilot. I work for a Spanish called Air Europa.
- 7 I V gets a lot of money from
- 8 He a large company in France. He has worked there for 15 years and he has been the for the last five.

3 ABOUT YOU If you have a job, write your answers. If not, ask someone with a job, or write about somebody in your family.

- 1 What do you do?
- 2 Who do you work for?
- 3 Where do you work?
- 4 What hours do you work?
- 5 Do you think people in your job earn a lot of money?



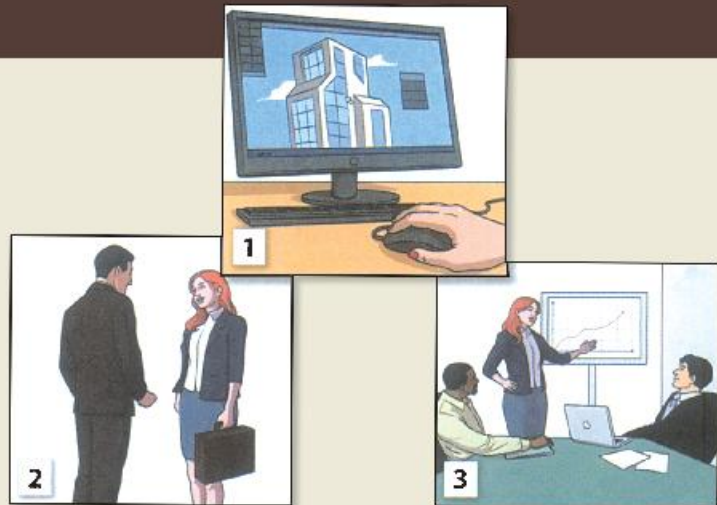
TEST YOURSELF

B What does it involve?

Daniela Alessi, architect

My job **involves** many things:

- I **design** buildings¹, mostly big **projects**.
- I **meet**² **clients** and **discuss** problems with them.
- I **organize** meetings³ with **colleagues**.
- I **send** hundreds of emails.
- I write **reports**.
- I **spend** a lot of time talking to people.



GLOSSARY

involve	have sth as a part: <i>The job involves using a computer.</i>
project	a big plan to do sth, e.g. <i>a project to build a new airport</i>
client	a person who pays an architect, lawyer, etc. for their work
discuss	talk about sth seriously (<i>NOT discuss about</i>)
organize	If you organize a meeting, you find a time and a place when everybody can go to it.
colleague	a person who works with you
send	You write a letter or email, then you send it to sb.
report	a piece of writing that gives information about your work
spend time doing sth	do sth for a period of time

SPOTLIGHT *meet and meeting*

Meet has different meanings:

1 see and speak to somebody for the first time:
*I haven't **met** my boss's wife.*

2 come together, usually because you planned it: (*see picture 2*)

A **meeting** is a time when people come together, usually to talk about something (*see picture 3*).

4 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------|---|----------------------|
| ▶ spend time | ..... | a | problems |
| 1 meet | ..... | b | emails |
| 2 organize | ..... | c | making phone calls ✓ |
| 3 send | ..... | d | bridges |
| 4 discuss | ..... | e | clients |
| 5 design | ..... | f | meetings |

5 Correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| ▶ I have sended the letters. <u>sent</u> | |
| 1 We discussed about our problems. | 4 Could you organize the meeting? |
| 2 I have a meet this afternoon. | 5 My job involves to use a computer. |
| 3 She spends a lot of time travel. | 6 I knew her for the first time last week. |

6 Complete the text.

I work for Daniela's company as her secretary. I often ▶ meet many of her (1) when they come to her office to (2) work. At the moment, we have a big (3) : Daniela is (4) a new department store for the town centre. My job (5) doing other things as well: I (6) meetings with different people about the project; I receive and (7) lots of emails, and sometimes I write (8) about the project for Daniela. Fortunately, I am not alone. I have two other (9) in the office with me. We work hard but we also (10) time talking to each other.



TEST YOURSELF

Two months ago, I saw an **advertisement** online for a job working with young people in the **community**. You needed a university degree, but no **experience**, so I decided to **apply**. I **filled in the form** and **posted** it, and two weeks later I went for an **interview**. I was very nervous and the **interviewer** asked some difficult questions, but they **offered** me the job, by email. The money is not bad and I will get a lot of **training**, so I **accepted**. I'm starting next week.



GLOSSARY

advertisement	a notice, picture or film telling people about a job, product or service ALSO advert/ad
community	all the people who live in a place; the place where they live
experience	knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it
apply (for sth)	write to ask for sth
form	a piece of paper or a document with questions and spaces for you to write answers fill in a form write answers on the form
post	send a letter
interview	a meeting when sb asks you questions to decide if you will get a job. The person who does this is the interviewer . interview v
offer	say you will give sth to sb, e.g. a job or help, if they want it offer n
training	the activity of learning how to do a job
accept	say yes to sth

1 Put the story in order.

- She offered me the job.
- I went for an interview.
- I posted it.
- I decided to apply.
- I saw an advertisement for a job.
- I accepted the job.
- I filled in the form.
- The interviewer asked me questions.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

2 Complete the sentences.

- Life in a small fishing community is different from life in a big city.
- 1 My boss was very busy, so I _____ to help her.
- 2 Don't _____ the form. You should email it instead.
- 3 My brother has an _____ for a job next week. I hope he gets it.
- 4 The company asked me to _____ in a form.
- 5 I have a friend who is doing a lot of _____ in his new job at the bank.
- 6 At the moment I'm _____ for a place at university. I want to go next year.
- 7 It's easy to get a job in a shop, but you need more _____ to become a manager.
- 8 The job they offered me wasn't very interesting, so I didn't _____ it.
- 9 I saw a funny _____ on TV last night for a new Italian car.
- 10 I was surprised at some of the questions the _____ asked me.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Have you applied for any jobs? If so, what are they? _____
- 2 Do you have experience of interviews? If so, what? _____
- 3 Have you had training for a job? If so, what? _____
- 4 What forms have you filled in this year? _____
- 5 Would you like a job working in the community with young people? Why? / Why not? _____



TEST YOURSELF

My first day **at work** was **surprising**. I was nervous when I **entered** the building, but everyone was **so** friendly **that** I didn't need to **worry**. I was **part** of a small **unit** (six of us), and it was our job to **support** local **charities** in the community. Caroline, my boss, introduced me to the rest of the group, and I spent the **whole** day watching and listening. It was **such** an **amazing** day.

GLOSSARY

at work	This shows where you are. ALSO <i>at school/home</i> , etc.
surprising	If sth is surprising , it is different from what is normal or usual.
enter <i>formal</i>	come or go into a place
worry	think or feel that sth bad will happen worry <i>n</i>
part of sth	some but not all of sth
unit	one complete thing or group that may be part of sth larger
support	If you support sb, you are there to help them if they need it.
charity	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
whole	all of sth
amazing	If sth is amazing , it is difficult to believe, and usually very good. SYN <i>incredible</i>

SPOTLIGHT **so and such**

So and **such** are used before words to make them stronger. You use **so** before an adjective without a noun, and **such** before an adjective with a noun.

- My job is **so** interesting.
- I've got **such** an interesting job.
- I'm **so** busy **that** I can't go.
- I've got **such** a busy day **that** I can't go.

1 Answer the questions. Write Yes or No.

- ▶ If something is surprising, is it what you think it will be? No
- 1 Does a charity help people?
- 2 If you worry about something, are you happy?
- 3 Does the whole day mean all of the day?
- 4 If something is amazing, is that good?
- 5 If you enter a building, are you leaving?
- 6 Is a unit a complete thing?
- 7 If something is *so good*, is that more than good?
- 8 Does *amazing* mean the opposite of *incredible*?

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ He's got such a quiet voice. **SO** His voice is so quiet.
- 1 He's in the office today. **WORK** He
- 2 This book is so good. **SUCH** This is
- 3 Stand up when she comes into the room. **ENTER** Stand up
- 4 It was such a long film. **SO** The film
- 5 She's one person in a small group. **PART** She's
- 6 This job is so difficult. **SUCH** This is

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ This book has 100 units.
- 1 She always that she won't have enough money.
- 2 Last month I spent the time working with Caroline.
- 3 I left the job because the money was bad.
- 4 You can the building at the front or the back.
- 5 It was an interesting job – I loved it.
- 6 There are a number of that help people in poor of the world.
- 7 It's important to people who are very young or new in a job.
- 8 It's difficult working with these children, and I think she does an job with them.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

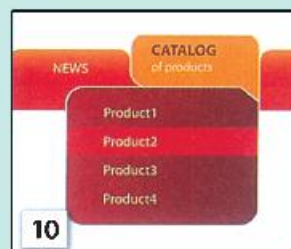
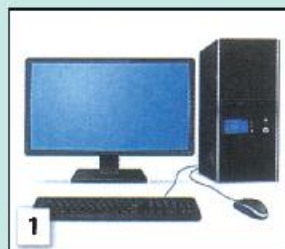
- 1 What was your first day at work like?
- 2 Did you worry about anything before starting?
- 3 Did your colleagues support you?
- 4 Were you part of a unit?



TEST YOURSELF

A Devices

- | | |
|----|------------------------|
| 1 | PC (personal computer) |
| 2 | printer |
| 3 | screen |
| 4 | mouse |
| 5 | keyboard |
| 6 | laptop |
| 7 | window |
| 8 | tablet |
| 9 | program |
| 10 | menu |

SPOTLIGHT *keep*

Keep means to put something in a place so that you know where it is.

- I **keep** my laptop in a bag in my office.
- Where do you **keep** your tablet?
- I **keep** it in my handbag.

1 Complete the words.

- k e e p

- 1 k _ _ _ b _ _ _ _ _ d
2 w _ _ _ _ _ w
3 l _ _ _ _ _ p

- 4 m _ _ u
5 t _ _ _ t
6 m _ _ e

- 7 sc _____ n
8 p _____ r
9 p _____ q _____ m

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You type information using the **keyboard**.

- 1 A small computer you can carry is called a
- 2 You read your e-mails on the
- 3 A list on the screen that shows what you can do is a
- 4 You can make a paper copy of something using a
- 5 A very small computer you use where you touch the screen is a
- 6 A set of instructions that we put into a computer is a
- 7 On a computer, you can open or close a
- 8 You can move things on the screen using the
- 9 You can pictures on a computer, tablet or laptop.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

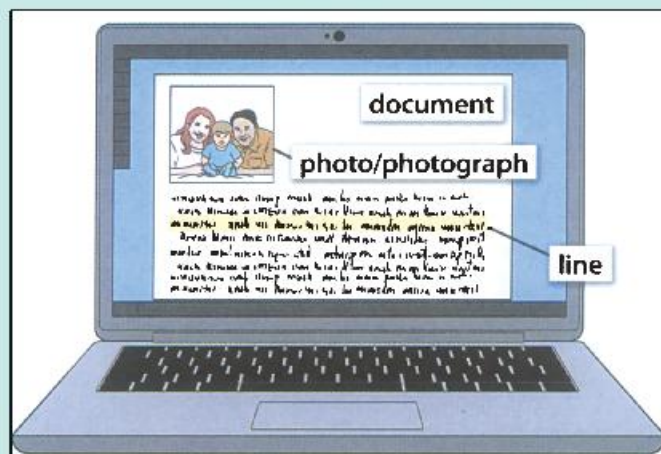
- 1 Have you got a PC? If so, what kind is it?
- 2 Have you got a printer? If so, how often do you use it?
- 3 Have you got a laptop or tablet? If so, where do you keep it?
- 4 Do you keep photos on your computer? If so, what kind of photos?
- 5 Which is better for you: a PC or a laptop? Why?



TEST YOURSELF

B Working on a computer

For homework, our teacher asked us to write a short **text** about our families. I **opened** a new **document** on my laptop, and **typed** ten lines about my husband and son. Then I **moved** a **photo** from my personal **files** into the document. It didn't look good, so I **cut** it and **replaced** it with a different photo. I read the text **carefully** to see if it was all correct. Then I **saved** it and **printed** a **copy** to give to my teacher.



GLOSSARY

text	a piece of writing	replace sth (with sth)	put a new or different thing in the place of another: <i>I replaced my old computer with a new laptop.</i>
open	start sth: <i>open a document/file</i> OPP close	carefully	If you do sth carefully , you think about what you are doing so that you don't make mistakes. careful <i>adj</i>
type	write sth using a keyboard	save	You must save a document before you close it, or you will lose it.
move	take sth and put it in another place	copy	a thing that is exactly the same as another thing: <i>make/print a copy; copy v</i>
file	information that is stored on a computer with a particular name: <i>I must save that file on my computer.</i>		
cut	take text or pictures away from a document		

4 Circle the verbs.

open carefully save move photo type remove line replace file close text document

5 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a | I saved the text. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b | I printed a copy. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c | I didn't like it, so I removed it. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d | I moved a photo into the document. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e | I typed a text. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f | I read the text carefully. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| g | I closed the document. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| h | I opened a document. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

6 Complete the sentences.

- I opened a new document and started typing.
- 1 The text has about 15 _____ in it.
- 2 I have to be very _____ when I'm typing in English.
- 3 I always make two _____ of my work: one for me, and one to give to my teacher.
- 4 I keep my letters to the doctor in a medical _____ on my PC.
- 5 Can you _____ a copy of the letter for me, please?
- 6 Remember to _____ your work before you close a document.
- 7 I'm going to _____ my old laptop _____ a new one.
- 8 I wasn't happy with the second paragraph in the text, so I _____ it.
- 9 Her fingers are painful so she _____ very slowly.
- 10 She opened the email, started reading it and quickly _____ it when her father came in.



TEST YOURSELF

A Email and letters

Have you **checked** your messages today?

No, I haven't got wifi or the internet where I'm staying.

What's your **email address**?

It's **lucy@gmail.com**

Can you **email** the documents to me, please?

Oh, but I've already **sent** them **by post**.

Oh no! The post is very slow here, and **letters** often **get lost**.

Have you **received** Donna's email?

Yes, I have. I'll **reply** this evening.

GLOSSARY

email	= electronic mail a message that is written on one computer and sent to another email v
check	look to see if sth is there
message	words that one person sends to another
the internet	the international computer system: I saw it on the internet .
send	make a letter or email go somewhere
post [U]	the system for sending and receiving letters, parcels, etc: send sth by post ; post v
letter	a piece of writing on paper sb sends to another person
get lost	If sth gets lost , you don't know where it is.
receive formal	get sth that sb has sent to you
reply (to sb)	say or write sth as an answer to sb reply n

SPOTLIGHT saying email addresses

@ = at . dot
We say **jo.xi@gmail.com** like this:
'jo dot xi at gmail dot com'.

1 One word is not correct. Cross it out.

- ▶ send a **letter** / ~~post~~ / **message**
- 1 **get** / **send** / **reply** a message
- 2 reply to **the internet** / **a letter** / **an email**
- 3 send something **by post** / **email** / **document**
- 4 check **your emails** / **a reply** / **your messages**
- 5 get **a letter** / **the internet** / **a message**

2 One word is missing. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I got an _____ from Luisa this morning. **email**
- 1 Did you _____ the email I sent you yesterday?
- 2 The letter lost in the post – it never arrived.
- 3 Have you _____ to Juan's letter yet?
- 4 I can't email you because I'm not _____ the internet here.
- 5 My email address is 'jamie gmail dot com'.
- 6 Could you _____ me the information, please?
- 7 I need _____ my emails before I go out.
- 8 Did you give Zach _____ the letter, or send it by?
- 9 Email me at 'sue 1 at gmail com'.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- A** Hi, Arun. Have you **checked** _____ your messages this morning?
- B** Yes, I have. Malu (1) _____ me an email with some documents from our lawyer.
- A** Oh? I thought the lawyer sent you a (2) _____ with the documents, not an email.
- B** I didn't get them. I think they got (3) _____ in the post.
- A** Did you (4) _____ the email I sent you last night?
- B** Yes, I'm sorry I haven't had time to (5) _____ yet.
- C** A I emailed the information to Jesse, but I haven't had a (6) _____ yet.
- B** He's camping this week, so he probably isn't (7) _____ the (8) _____.



TEST YOURSELF

B The internet

STAY SAFE online

- When you **shop online**, only use **websites** which you know or **recognize**.
- If you get an email with a **link**¹ in it, don't **click on**² it if you don't know the person who sent it. It could **contain** a **virus**.
- Make sure your children are safe online. Only let them go online and **search** for information and look at **blogs** and **videos** when you are at home with them.
- Never tell anybody your **passwords**.



GLOSSARY

online	using a computer or the internet shop online buy things on the internet
website	a place on the internet that you can look at to get information about sth ALSO site
recognize	know sb or sth because you have seen them or heard of them before
contain	have sth inside: <i>The website contains the information you need.</i>
virus	a program that enters your computer and stops it working correctly
search (for sth)	use a computer to look for information
blog	a personal record that sb puts on their website saying what they do or what they think about things
video	a short film made digitally that you can watch on the internet
password	a secret word that allows you to start using a computer

- 4 Circle the words which contain the same vowel sound as in **buy**, **right**, **wine**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

link like website contain video virus recognize click online

- 5 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- | | |
|---|----------|
| ▶ click on something / search for something | <u>D</u> |
| 1 a website / a site | ..... |
| 2 search for something / look for something | ..... |
| 3 a video / a blog | ..... |
| 4 recognize somebody / meet somebody | ..... |
| 5 contain something / click on something | ..... |
| 6 password / passport | ..... |
| 7 a link / a virus | ..... |
| 8 online / on the internet | ..... |

- 6 Complete the questions with words from the box.

websites passwords blog virus click
recognize online ✓ videos search contains

- What kinds of things do you buy online?
- Do you watch many on YouTube?
- Do you ever tell people your?
- Have you ever written a?
- Which do you use a lot?
- Has your computer or tablet ever had a?
- Do you use Google to for information on the internet?
- Do you on a link if you don't the person who sent you the email?
- What do you do if you think an email a virus?

ABOUT YOU

Mostly books and things for the house.

- 7 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Phone vocabulary

PHONE NUMBERS	What's your phone number?	~ It's 245731.
	What's your mobile number?	~ It's 07700 900154.
PHONE VERBS	call/phone/ring (pt rang) somebody	speak to sb by phone ALSO make a (phone) call
	answer the phone	pick up the phone when it rings and speak
	message somebody	send sb a message / text (message)
	take a message	take information during a call and give it to sb else
	leave a message	give information to sb on the phone, who then gives it to another person
PHONE PROBLEMS	The line is busy.	The person you phoned is speaking on the phone already.
	It's the wrong number.	You make a mistake with the number.



mobile phone
smartphone (= with internet)



landline

SPOTLIGHT saying phone numbers

Say each number.

■ 245731 is: **two four five, seven three one.**

Say **double** when two numbers are the same.

■ 33 = **double three.**

For '0', say **oh** or **zero**.

■ 602448 is: **six oh/zero two, double four eight.**

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- | | | | |
|---|-------|---|-------|
| ▶ What's your landline / mobile number? | D | 4 I messed him. / I sent him a text. | ..... |
| 1 He phoned / rang his sister. | ..... | 5 She made a call / answered the phone. | ..... |
| 2 He's got a smartphone . / He's got a landline. | ..... | 6 Please call / ring me later. | ..... |
| 3 six two four four / six two double four | ..... | 7 four oh seven nine / four zero seven nine | ..... |

2 Complete the words in the dialogues.

- Did you ▶ **ring** Jo this morning? ~ Yes, but she was out, so I left a m.....
I r..... her mobile too, but she didn't a..... the phone.
- What's your phone n.....? ~ It's 345489.
- Did you c..... Sue last night? ~ Yes, but the line was b..... I'll p.....
her later.
- Hello, can I speak to Charlie, please? ~ Sorry, you've got the w..... number.
- Did you speak to Lisa? ~ I tried to call her but she was on the p....., so I m..... her
and I'm waiting for a reply.
- Can you come to the meeting? ~ Yes, but I just need to m..... a call first.
- Can I speak to Riccardo? ~ I'm sorry, he's busy. Can I take a m.....?
- What's your m..... number? ~ It's zero d..... seven double oh, nine double oh, one
six nine.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What's your phone number and mobile number? (Write it in words.)
- Who do you ring most often?
- Do you send a lot of texts? If so, who to?
- What do you say when you answer the phone?
- Do you often get the wrong number?



TEST YOURSELF

B Phone conversations

A Hello?

B Is that Mia?

A Yes, speaking.

B Oh, hello. This is Laura, Laura Freebairn.

A Hi, Laura, how are you?

B I'm fine thanks. Is Jessica in, please?

A Yes, just a moment – I'll get her for you ...

C Hello?

D Oh, hello, can I speak to Mr Ellis, please?

C I'm sorry, but he's out at the moment. Who's calling?

D It's Leo Jackson from Delta Electronics.

C Right. Do you want to leave a message for him?

D Yes, please. Can you tell him I'll ring him back after lunch?

C Of course, no problem.

D Thanks very much. Goodbye.

GLOSSARY

Is that Isabella? (NOT *Are you Isabella?*)

speaking You say **speaking** when you are the person sb on the phone has asked to talk to.

This is Laura. OR It's Laura. (NOT *I am* / *Here is Laura*.)

in at home **OPP** out

just a moment wait a minute

get sb

at the moment

Who's calling?

phone/call/ring sb back

goodbye

go and find sb and bring them to the phone now

This is a polite way of asking 'Who are you?'

phone sb again

short form: **bye inf**

4 Tick (✓) the correct answers.

► Can I speak to Martyn Ellis, please?

1 Hello?

2 Can I speak to Lia Ponte, please?

3 Hello, is that Gosia?

4 Hello, this is Jamie Little.

5 Hello, can I speak to Alfonse, please?

6 Mohammed's not here at the moment.

7 See you this evening, Dmitri.

~ I le's not in at the moment. ☒ / He's not in just a moment. ☐

~ Speaking. ☐ / Oh, hello, is that Jackie? ☐

~ Just a moment ... ☐ / It's Natasha. ☐

~ Oh hello, this is Carla. ☐ / Speaking. ☐

~ Oh, hello, how are you? ☐ / Who's calling? ☐

~ I'm sorry, he's out. ☐ / I'm sorry, he's in. ☐

~ OK, I'll call back later. ☐ / OK, I'll get him. ☐

~ Yes, bye. ☐ / Speaking. ☐

5 Complete the conversations.

1 A Hello?

B Hello. ► Is that Marisa?

A Yes, (1) _____.

B Oh, hello. (2) _____ Alice.

A Oh, hello, Alice.

B Is Mikki (3) _____, (4) _____?

A I'm sorry, he's out (5) _____. Can I take a message?

B Yes, please. Tell him I'll (6) _____ him _____ after lunch.

A OK, (7) _____.

2 A Hello?

B Oh, can I (8) _____ Ben, please?

A Yes, (9) _____ moment. I'll (10) _____ him for you.

3 A Hello?

B Oh, hello. (11) _____ Joanna?

A Yes, (12) _____.

B Hello, Joanna, (13) _____'s Luke.

A Hi, Luke. How are you?

6 ABOUT YOU Look at the conversations again. Think about the way people answer the phone in English, and the phrases they use. Is it very different in your language? If possible, talk to somebody who speaks your language.



TEST YOURSELF

76 -er / -or / -r nouns

It is common in English to add **-er**, **-or** or **-r** to a verb to describe the person who does the action of the verb.

Teachers are people who **teach** as a job.

Visitors are people who **visit** a place, often as tourists.

Here are more examples.

A **driver** is a person who **drives**, often as a job: a *bus/taxi driver*.

Workers are people who **work**, especially in a particular kind of work: *office/farm/factory workers*.

The **listener** is the person who is **listening**, e.g. to the radio, the **speaker** is the person who is **speaking**, e.g. to an audience, and the **reader** is the person who is **reading**, e.g. a book.

An **owner** is a person who **owns** something:

I'm the owner of that car. I bought it last week.

An **actor** is a person who **acts** as a job: a *TV/film actor*.

The **winner** is the person who **wins** something, e.g. a **competition** or a **race**.

Travellers are people who are **travelling**:

Rail travellers often have difficult journeys.

An **instructor** is a person who **instructs** people.

GLOSSARY

winner	the person who is the best or the first in a game, competition or race
competition	a game or test that people want to win: a <i>painting competition</i>
race	In a <i>race</i> , people run, drive, ride, etc. in a competition to see who is fastest.
instructor	a person who teaches you how to do sth: a <i>driving instructor</i>

1 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A person who teaches is a teacher.
- 1 A person who owns something is the
- 2 A person who visits somewhere is
- 3 A person who travels is a
- 4 A person who wins something is a
- 5 A person who instructs people is an
- 6 A person who drives is a
- 7 A person who acts on television is a
- 8 A person who works in a factory is a

2 Make six phrases using a word from each box.

radio office	film air ✓	bus English	driving	travellers ✓ listener	instructor teacher	worker actor	driver
▶ <u>air travellers</u>							

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ My cousin has been a film actor for a few years.
- 1 The museum gets a lot of every year.
- 2 Mr Jacobs is the of that big house on the corner of the road.
- 3 He was the winner of the last year.
- 4 I have a neighbour who is a taxi
- 5 The farm employs about ten
- 6 The BBC Radio morning programme has about five million
- 7 Some always want books to have a happy ending.
- 8 I often have to ask the to repeat what they said.
- 9 My brother came second but I don't know who the was.
- 10 Our English explains things to our class very well.



TEST YOURSELF

77 -ing forms

In English, we often add **-ing** to a verb to describe an activity in these situations:

- 1 As the subject of a sentence: **Reading English is easier than writing.**
- 2 After prepositions: **I'm not very good at spelling.**
- 3 After certain verbs: **I love driving.**

These words with **-ing** are also called gerunds.

Other common **-ing** forms include:



camping¹ spending a holiday in a tent:
Camping is great fun when the weather's good.



painting² I used to enjoy painting at school.



sightseeing³ visiting interesting places as a tourist:
I don't enjoy sightseeing.

smoking having a cigarette:
Smoking is bad for you.

understanding knowing about something:
Understanding computers is not easy.

shopping buying things from shops:
I don't mind shopping.

flying travelling in a plane:
I'm frightened of flying.

working the activity of work:
Working for a bad boss is terrible.

teaching working as a teacher:
Teaching is a great job, but not very well paid.

1 What activities are described here?

▶ looking at words and understanding them reading

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 travelling in a plane | 5 visiting interesting places as a tourist |
| 2 buying things | 6 knowing about something |
| 3 spending a holiday in a tent | 7 helping students in a classroom |
| 4 writing a word in the correct way | 8 controlling a car, bus, etc. |

2 Do you agree or disagree? If you disagree, say why.

▶ Smoking is bad for you. Agree ▶ Learning English is easy. Disagree. Learning English is really difficult.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Swimming is good for you. | 5 Camping is good fun. |
| 2 Running is good fun. | 6 Teaching is a job I would like. |
| 3 Reading English is easier than speaking. | 7 Shopping is boring. |
| 4 English spelling is easy. | 8 Working is something you must enjoy. |

3 Make phrases with the **-ing** form of a verb from the first box and a word or phrase from the second box.

write	paint	sleep	run ✓	listen to	play	learn	buy	cook
football	clothes	in a tent	English	languages	meals	music	for miles ✓	pictures

▶ Running for miles

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write sentences that are true for you, using the phrases in Exercise 3. Compare with another student if possible.

▶ Running for miles is not something I do.



TEST YOURSELF

A Nouns ending in -ion

Can you **predict** the result of a football match?

No, it's very hard to make a **prediction**.

Someone's **invented** a way to clean plastic from the oceans.

That's a great **invention**!

Do you always **celebrate** your birthday?

Yes, I often have a small **celebration** with friends.

I have to **organize** my son's wedding.

Well, that will need careful **organization**.

Can you **describe** the criminal?

Yes, I can give the police a good **description**.

How do we **solve** the population problem?

I've got no idea. There's no easy **solution**.

We have to **decide** where to live.

That's a very important **decision**.

GLOSSARY

predict	say what you think will happen (make a) prediction <i>n</i>
invent	make, design or think of sth for the first time invention <i>n</i>
celebrate	do sth to show that you are happy for a special reason, or because it is a special day (have a) celebration <i>n</i>
organize	plan or arrange sth organization <i>n</i>
describe	say what sb or sth is like, or what happened (give a) description <i>n</i>
solve	find the answer to a question or problem solution <i>n</i>
decide	choose sth after thinking about the possibilities (make a) decision <i>n</i>

SPOTLIGHT suffix -ion

Many verbs form nouns by adding a suffix, and *-ion/-tion/-sion/-ation* are very common.
predict/prediction **celebrate/celebration**
 Sometimes the ending of the noun changes.
solve/solution **decide/decision**
 Stress can also change. Use the **APP** to check the sounds and the stress.

1 Underline the main stress in each word. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------|--------------|
| ▶ <u>invent</u> | ▶ <u>solution</u> | 3 predict | prediction |
| 1 celebrate | celebration | 4 decide | decision |
| 2 describe | description | 5 organize | organization |

2 What words are being defined here?

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| ▶ choosing something after thinking | <u>decision</u> |
| 1 something somebody has made for the first time | ..... |
| 2 a time when you enjoy yourself for a special reason | ..... |
| 3 words that tell what somebody or something is like | ..... |
| 4 an answer to a problem | ..... |
| 5 a statement about what you think will happen | ..... |
| 6 planning or arranging something so that it is successful | ..... |

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of a word from this unit.

- ▶ Can you describe what happened when the car hit the tree?
- 1 It wasn't easy to make a, but in the end, we to sell the car.
- 2 We have to the traffic problems quickly. The is probably to have better trains and buses.
- 3 I didn't see the man, so I couldn't give a good of him.
- 4 After the exams, the students go out and all night.
- 5 I think it was Tim Berners Lee who the World Wide Web.
- 6 My boss is tomorrow's meeting. He's very bad at
- 7 The government has that business will get better next year.
- 8 The mobile phone is one of the most important of the last fifty years.



TEST YOURSELF

B Other noun endings

Verb / Noun	Example	Meaning (verb)
discover v discovery n	Herschel discovered the planet Uranus. Herschel made an important discovery .	find a place or thing that nobody knew about before
succeed v success n	They want the discussions to succeed . They want them to be a success .	do or get what you wanted to do or get
complain v complaint n	You need to complain to the manager. You should make a complaint .	say you do not like sth or are unhappy about sth
choose v choice n	I had to choose a gift for my sister. I made a bad choice .	decide which thing or person you want
think v thought(s) n	I was thinking about our next holiday. I had a few thoughts about our holiday.	have an opinion or idea about sth
arrange v arrangement n	I have arranged to see Jo tonight. I have made an arrangement with Jo.	make a plan for the future
argue v argument n	We mustn't argue about money. We mustn't have an argument .	talk angrily with sb because you do not agree
move v movement n	Something moved behind me. There was a movement behind me.	change place or position

SPOTLIGHT suffix -ment

The suffix **-ment** is also common in English: **advertise v / advertisement n** **improve v / improvement n**

4 Complete the table.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
move	<u>movement</u>	discover	.....
.....	success	.....	thought
arrange	.....	argue	.....
choose	.....	complain	.....

5 Circle the correct answer.

- When you dance, you make movements / *complaints* with your body.
- 1 She had *an argument* / *a movement* with her boyfriend last night.
- 2 Did you make a *complaint* / *choice* to the waiter about the cold soup?
- 3 I had a *discovery* / *thought* about the business: I think we should sell it.
- 4 They thought the plan would fail, but in fact it was a great *success* / *arrangement*.
- 5 The *arrangements* / *successes* for the wedding were really good – it went very well.
- 6 They have made an important *discovery* / *thought* about the crime.

6 Complete the questions.

- Have you ever complained about bad service on buses or trains?
- 1 Have you ever made a c..... about noise to a neighbour?
- 2 In a restaurant, do you c..... what to eat quickly?
- 3 At school, did you have a c..... of different subjects?
- 4 Do you a..... a lot in your family?
- 5 Have you ever had an a..... with a shop assistant?
- 6 Would you like to s..... in business?
- 7 Is s..... the most important thing in life?
- 8 Do you often have t..... about what to do in your future?

ABOUT YOU

Yes, often!

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

79 Compound nouns

A What are compound nouns?

This is common in English: word + word = new word. For example:

police + officer = **police officer** phone + number = **phone number**
bath + room = **bathroom** art + gallery = **art gallery**

- We write some compound nouns as one word, e.g. **bathroom**, but many are two words, e.g. **phone number**.
- Many compound nouns are easy to understand when you know the other words, e.g. **railway station**, **address book**, **first floor**, **dining room**, **bus stop**, **dishwasher**. Sometimes they are less easy to understand, e.g. a **disc jockey** (usually called a **DJ**) is a person who plays music on the radio and in clubs.
- You will meet many compound nouns as you learn English: **past tense**; **past participle**; **phrasal verb** (see Unit 99); **capital letter**, e.g. ABC; **full stop** (at the end of a sentence); **question mark** = ?
- With compound nouns, the main stress is usually on the first word, e.g. phone number, but sometimes it is on the second word, e.g. full stop.

1 Underline the main stress on these compound words. Use the **APP** to help you.

Practise saying the words.

- art gallery ► full stop bathroom railway station first floor address book
bus stop phone number dishwasher capital letter police officer

2 What do we call these places or things? Use a compound noun to label each picture.



1



2



3



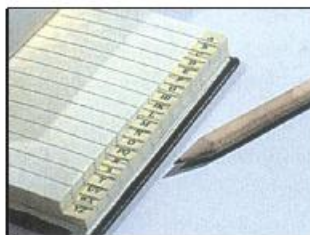
4



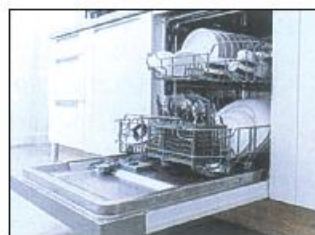
5



6



7



8

3 Complete the sentences.

- I'd like to visit that art gallery.
- 1 My phone is 07897 493321.
- 2 I found a police and spoke to him.
- 3 My brother would like to be a disc on the radio.
- 4 If it's a question, don't forget the question
- 5 What's the past and past of forget?
~ That's easy. *Forgot* and *forgotten*.

- 6 My parents live on the first of the building.
- 7 I waited at the bus for about twenty minutes.
- 8 *Get on* and *get off* are both verbs.
- 9 You have to put a stop at the end of the sentence.
- 10 A new sentence always begins with a letter.



TEST YOURSELF

B In the town centre

... just after the **traffic lights**, we found a **car park**. Millie went to the **sports centre** to use the **swimming pool**, while Dan and I went to the **department store** in the new **shopping centre** to look at **washing machines**. We didn't buy one, but we had a very helpful **sales assistant**. After that, I did some shopping in the **high street**, and Dan went to the **ticket office** at the theatre. We came home after that, but Millie stayed and came back on **public transport**.



GLOSSARY

car park	an area or a building where you can leave your car
sports centre	a large building where you can play different sports
swimming pool	a place that is built for people to swim in
shopping centre	a large building or area with a lot of shops
sales assistant	a person who serves you in a shop ALSO shop assistant
high street	the main street in a town or city where the shops are
ticket office	a place in a railway station, cinema, etc. where you can buy tickets

SPOTLIGHT *centre and card*

One word often forms part of several compound words, e.g. **sports centre**, **shopping centre**, **town centre**. Another example is **card**: you give people a **birthday card** when it is their birthday; an **identity card** is a card with your name, photo, etc. on it; a **credit card** is a plastic card you use to buy things and pay for them later.

4 Find eight compound words using a word from each box.

car ✓
ticket
credit

department
traffic
public

sports
swimming
high

office
lights
pool

transport
park ✓
store

street
card
centre

car park

5 Complete the sentences.

- Matt uses the gym in the sports centre.
- I don't travel much on _____ transport these days.
 - Do you normally use your _____ card to buy expensive things?
 - Did you remember to send Tia a _____ card? She was 21 last week.
 - A police officer asked to see my _____ card yesterday. I was very surprised.
 - There are lots of cafés now in the _____ street. They're replacing shops.
 - The _____ lights were red when that car went through.
 - By 10.30 there are very few spaces in the car _____.
 - I need to buy a new washing _____.
 - They had to go to the ticket _____ to collect the tickets.
 - We had a terrible _____ assistant in the _____ store yesterday.

6 Complete the sentences.

- How often do you use public transport?
- Do you have an _____ card? What information is on it?
 - Do you go to a sports _____? If so, what do you do there?
 - Do you have a _____ card? If so, what do you buy with it?
 - Do you use a local swimming _____? If so, how often?
 - How many _____ cards do you buy and send every year?
 - Do you often shop in a department _____? If so, what do you buy there?

ABOUT YOU

Quite a lot. I use the buses every day.

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Love it or hate it?

1 I love football.



2 I really like it.

3 I like it.



4 I quite like it.

5 I don't mind it.

6 I don't like it very much.

7 I don't like it.



8 I hate it.
I don't like it at all.

SPOTLIGHT love/like/hate + -ing

After **love**, **like**, **hate** and **don't mind**, use a noun, a pronoun, or an -ing form:

- I **love / like / hate / don't mind** { football.
it.
 - I **love / like / hate / don't mind** **playing** football.
- Like** and **dislike** can also be nouns: *We all have different **likes** and **dislikes**.*

1 Who is more positive (+)? Who is more negative (-)? Complete the answers with A or B.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ A loves coffee. | B likes coffee. | A is more positive. |
| 1 A likes tea. | B quite likes tea. | is more positive. |
| 2 A likes chocolate. | B loves chocolate. | is more positive. |
| 3 A really likes sport. | B doesn't mind it. | is more positive. |
| 4 A doesn't like sport. | B doesn't like it at all. | is more negative. |
| 5 A hates pop music. | B doesn't like pop music very much. | is more negative. |
| 6 A doesn't like studying. | B doesn't mind studying. | is more negative. |

2 Correct the mistakes.

- ▶ Do you like watch tennis?
- 1 I hate it chocolate.
- 2 They don't like to doing homework very much.
- 3 He doesn't like very much speaking English.
- 4 I like quite shopping.
- 5 She doesn't like drive.
- 6 I'm not mind working at night.

Do you like watching tennis?

3 Complete the sentences with one word.

- ▶ I don't like swimming very much.
- 1 I going to the cinema – it's my favourite hobby.
- 2 I don't like classical music at
- 3 I don't shopping – it's OK.
- 4 I like driving. I find it exciting.
- 5 I writing emails – it's so boring.
- 6 I don't watching TV very much.
- 7 Most people hate housework, but I like it.
- 8 I don't like talking on the phone all.

4 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 3? Write your ideas, or ask another student.

- ▶ I really like swimming, and I go swimming a lot in the summer.



TEST YOURSELF

B My favourite things

meetpeopleontheweb.com

NAME Mirko Zitec
WORK I work for a TV company. It's a **wonderful** job. I love it.
STUDY I'm learning to play the guitar. It's good **fun** and my teacher's **incredible**.
SPORTS My **favourite** sport is tennis, but I also **enjoy** playing football.
TV/CINEMA I don't watch TV – it's very **boring**, but I'm **interested in** old films from the 1960s. In fact, I **prefer** old films to **modern** ones.
MUSIC I think **jazz** is really **interesting** – I go to a jazz club every Friday.



GLOSSARY

wonderful very good **SYNS** **incredible, amazing**
fun If sth is **fun**, it makes you happy.
favourite Your **favourite** thing or person is the one you like most.
enjoy doing sth If you **enjoy doing sth**, you like it a lot and it makes you happy. **enjoyable** *adj*
boring **OPP** **interesting**
old made or bought a long time ago **OPP** **new** **OR** **modern**
prefer (X to Y) like sb or sth more than another person or thing
jazz a kind of music, e.g. Louis Armstrong, Duke Ellington

SPOTLIGHT *boring/bored, interesting/interested, etc.*

'The film was **boring**' means the same as 'I was **bored by** the film'.

(NOT *The film was bored.*)

It is the same with **interesting** and **interested**: 'I think modern art is **interesting**' has the same meaning as 'I'm **interested in** modern art'.

(NOT *I'm interesting in modern art.*)



He's boring. She's bored.

5 Write eight more sentences using words from 1, 2, and 3.

	1	2	3	
►	It's ✓	not interested	boss.	It's a wonderful city.
1	I	the party	city. ✓	
2	I'm	favourite	watching TV.	
3	My	enjoy	film is <i>Star Wars</i> .	
4	She	amazing	enjoyable.	
5	He's an	a wonderful ✓	in politics.	
6	Was	is	programme.	
7	It's	prefers reading	good fun?	
8	Singing	a boring	to writing.	

6 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions, using the words in the box.

interesting fun interested modern enjoy
 prefer favourite incredible enjoyable ✓

- Do you think flying is enjoyable ?
 1 Is learning English good _____ ?
 2 Do you _____ meat to fish?
 3 What's your _____ city?
 4 Are you _____ in jazz?
 5 Do you think history is _____ ?
 6 Do you _____ walking in the countryside?
 7 Do you know a restaurant where the food is _____ ?
 8 Do you like old houses, or do you prefer _____ houses?

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

81 Free time

A Common activities

What do you do in your free time?

I go ...	I play ...	I like ... I do (quite) a lot of ...	
 camping	 the guitar	 travelling	 I collect stamps, coins, etc.
 fishing	 golf	 drawing and painting	 I go out with friends.
 to the gym	 computer games	 cooking	 I watch TV and films.

1 Can you do these things inside your home? Write Yes or No.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|
| ▶ watch TV <u>Yes</u> | ▶ go to the gym <u>No</u> | collect stamps |
| go fishing | do some travelling | play golf |
| play computer games | go out with friends | |
| do a lot of drawing | go camping | |

2 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ do <u>e</u> | a painting |
| 1 go | b football magazines |
| 2 collect | c the guitar |
| 3 do some | d television |
| 4 go out | e a lot of travelling ✓ |
| 5 play | f with my brothers |
| 6 watch | g camping |

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of do, go, collect, watch, play or make.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ I often <u>go</u> to the gym. | 6 She out every night to a club. |
| 1 Jojo a lot of cooking. | 7 Do you golf? |
| 2 My brother old clocks. | 8 He too much TV. |
| 3 I'd like to the guitar. | 9 They fishing every weekend. |
| 4 Do you often camping? | 10 She quite a lot of painting. |
| 5 I don't much travelling now. | |

4 ABOUT YOU Look at the table again. Make a list of the activities you do now, the activities you would like to do, and the ones you aren't interested in.



TEST YOURSELF

B Hobbies

Favourite hobbies in Russia

Russian people have many **hobbies**. Older people enjoy **gardening**, fishing, and **repairing** cars. For younger people, there are **various clubs** in and outside school where children learn a lot of activities. **Popular** hobbies include sport, the arts, computers, listening to music, and collecting different things.

NATASHA: I like listening to **rock music**. I also like playing football with my friends, and I do a lot of drawing and reading. But my favourite hobby is **dancing**¹ (you can see me in the photo), and I'm quite **good at** it.

KOLYA: I play the guitar, and I can **sing** Russian and English **songs**. I often sing in the shower! I'm **good at** swimming and skiing. I also like travelling very much.



GLOSSARY

hobby	an activity that you like doing in your free time	popular	If sth is popular , many people like it.
gardening	working in your garden	rock music	music by, for example, The Rolling Stones and Bruce Springsteen
repair	make sth work when there is a problem, e.g. cars, bikes	good at sth	able to do sth well (NOT good in sth)
various	some that are different: <i>There are various places to go.</i>	sing	make music with your voice: <i>Ed Sheeran is a singer. He sings songs.</i>
club	a group of people who do sth together, or the place where they meet		

5 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- rock / club S
- 1 repair / various 3 gardening / sing 5 hobby / song
- 2 good at / shooting 4 various / popular 6 rock music / club

6 Look at the text again. Tick (✓) the true sentences, and correct the false sentences.

- Natasha doesn't like rock music. False. She likes rock music.
- 1 Older people enjoy gardening.
- 2 Natasha is a good singer.
- 3 Kolya plays the piano.
- 4 There are no clubs in schools.
- 5 Kolya has various hobbies.
- 6 Natasha is very good at dancing.
- 7 Computers and collecting things are not popular hobbies.
- 8 Younger people like repairing cars.

7 Complete the sentences.

- Do you go to any sports clubs? If so, what kind?
- 1 What's your favourite h?
- 2 What hobbies are p with younger people?
- 3 Do you have v hobbies, or only one or two?
- 4 Are you a good s?
- 5 Write the name of one s you can sing.
- 6 Write down something you are good
- 7 Are you good at r things, e.g. a broken cup?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

A Games and sports



football/soccer



baseball



basketball



swimming



American football



tennis



table tennis



ice hockey



running



motor racing



skiing



team

player

SPOTLIGHT verbs with games and sport

We play a game:

- I play football and tennis.

We usually do a sport, especially when it is a lot or a bit:

- I do a lot of swimming. ■ She does a bit of running.

We also use go with -ing forms:

- I often go swimming.

1 Combine words to find five more games or sports.

ice	base ✓	motor	tennis	▶ baseball
football	table	basket	ball ✓	
ball	American	racing	hockey	

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ People who play basketball are usually very tall.
- 1 I watched a fantastic _____ of ice hockey on TV last night.
- 2 Do you need a lot of snow for _____?
- 3 Do you think motor _____ is dangerous?
- 4 The children sometimes _____ swimming in the sea.
- 5 My husband and I _____ a lot of swimming in the lake near our home.
- 6 I want to do a _____ of running this summer.
- 7 You need 11 _____ for a football _____.
- 8 We went to the game and watched it from behind the _____.

3 Which sports in the photos can you do inside a building?

INSIDE A BUILDING	OUTSIDE A BUILDING
swimming	baseball

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Which games do you play, and how often? _____
- 2 Which other sports do you do? _____
- 3 Which games and sports do you watch on TV? _____
- 4 Which sports do people do a lot in your country? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Football

ITALY	Played	Won	Drawn	Lost	Goals for	Goals against	Points
Juventus	34	24	9	1	63	22	81
Inter Milan	34	24	4	6	75	27	76
AS Roma	34	22	5	7	61	26	71

On Friday, Juventus **won** their important **match against** Inter Milan. Cuadrado **scored** the only **goal** in the 70th minute. This means they are still **top** and now **lead** Inter **by** five points. On Saturday, Sampdoria was only able to **draw** their match **with** Torino. At Napoli, Roma were leading two goals to **nil** at **half-time**, but then Napoli played much better in the second half to make the **final score** 2-2. Lazio **beat** Genoa 3-1, while Fiorentina **lost** 2-1 to Milan.

GLOSSARY

goal	what you get in football when the ball goes into the goal
point	sth that you win in a game or sport: <i>The team has six points from three games. He needs another point to win the game.</i>
match	a game between two teams
against	One player or team plays against another player or team.
score	win goals, points, etc. in a game score <i>n</i>
top	the highest of the teams
lead	be in front of others in a game or sport
nil	the number 0, especially when it's used in games such as football
half-time	a period of rest between the first half and the second half
final score	the number of goals at the end of a game, e.g. 2-1

SPOTLIGHT Irregular verbs

win <i>pt won</i>	be the best or first:
▪ We won 2-1.	
beat <i>sb pt beat</i>	win against sb:
▪ We beat Sampdoria 2-1.	
draw <i>with/against sb pt drew</i>	end a game with the same number of goals:
▪ We drew 3-3 with/against Roma.	
lose <i>to sb pt lost</i>	not win against sb:
▪ We lost 1-2 to Milan.	

5 Correct the underlined mistakes.

- | | |
|--|---|
| ▶ Fiorentina <u>draw</u> with AS Roma. <u>drew</u> | 5 Parma won by two goals to <u>zero</u> . |
| 1 Lazio have a <u>play</u> next Saturday. | 6 Cagliari <u>beated</u> Sampdoria. |
| 2 Inter are playing <u>with</u> Parma. | 7 Milan <u>win</u> their game last week. |
| 3 Genoa lost 3-1 <u>with</u> Fiorentina. | 8 Did they <u>drew</u> the match? |
| 4 Messi <u>did</u> two goals. | 9 Milan won 3-1 <u>with</u> Roma. |

6 Complete the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| ▶ They <u>scored</u> in the first minute. | 6 They have 24 from 13 games. |
| 1 It's an important next week. | 7 On Sunday, Espanyol Real Betis 2-1. |
| 2 We are playing Valencia. | 8 Ronaldo the goal. |
| 3 Seville 1-2 to Barcelona. | 9 We our last match 4-1. |
| 4 Bilbao 2-2 Villareal. | 10 They were 1-0 at half-time. |
| 5 it was 0-0 at half- | 11 What was the final ? |

7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Find the football scores this weekend. Write down the final scores in English, and the people who scored the goals.

- ▶ Boca Juniors beat River Plate one nil. Cristian Pavón scored the only goal.



TEST YOURSELF

A Classical music



audience

concert

The **orchestra** is playing a **piece of music** by Haydn.



violin

violinist Vanessa Mae

She's playing a **concerto** by Vivaldi.



piano

pianist Lang Lang

He's playing music by Gershwin.

**opera singer**

Jonas Kaufmann is **performing**.

GLOSSARY

concert	a public performance of music
classical music	Western classical music includes music by Bach, Beethoven and Stravinsky. musical <i>adj</i> a single thing: a piece of music
a piece	
(musical) instrument	A piano and a violin are musical instruments .
perform	do sth in front of an audience, e.g. act in a play, sing, etc. performance <i>n</i>

SPOTLIGHT *by*

We say a book **by** Tolstoy, a song **by** Beyoncé, a painting **by** Picasso, a film **by** Martin Scorsese, etc.

1 Make music words from the letters.

- lioniv **violin**
 1 onctecr
 2 choartser
 3 tiaspni

- 4 eniacue
 5 froeprn
 6 rapoe grisne
 7 refrancepom

2 Complete the sentences.

- Last night we went to a **concert** at the Royal Albert Hall.
 1 Beethoven wrote music.
 2 A person who plays the piano is a
 3 A person who plays the violin is a
 4 A large group of people who play classical music together is called an
 5 A piano and a violin are types of
 6 A concert is a public of music.
 7 The people who listen to a concert are the
 8 The orchestra some music by Mozart. It was wonderful!
 9 Bach wrote some wonderful of music.
 10 *La Bohème* is an opera Puccini.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Do you go to classical music concerts? If yes, when was the last time?
 2 Can you think any of pieces of classical music that you like?
 3 Did you ever learn the piano or the violin as a child? If yes, do you still play?
 4 Do you play a different musical instrument?
 5 What is your favourite musical instrument?



TEST YOURSELF

B Pop and rock

In the past, **bands** recorded an album onto a **CD**, people bought the album, and the **performers** made money. Now, most people **are able to download music** onto their computers and phones. This is good for listeners, but not so good for **musicians**, because most of them do not get much money from music streaming websites.

So, many performers are now going **back on tour**, travelling around the country (and the world), playing **live concerts** and at music **festivals** to earn more money. And audiences seem to love this opportunity to see their favourite singers and **groups** performing all their **hit records** live.



SPOTLIGHT *record something and a record*

If you **record something**, you put music or film on a CD. A **record** (note the different pronunciation) is a song, or sometimes an album.
 ■ David Bowie made his last **record** only days before he died.

GLOSSARY

band	(also group), e.g. Coldplay, Guns N'Roses	musician	a person who plays a musical instrument
album	a number of songs, often about ten, on a CD or record	on tour	travelling to many different places to play live concerts
CD	(see picture)	live	(sounds like <i>five</i>) If sth is live , you see it or hear it at the same time as it happens.
performer	sb who performs music, or acts in the theatre	festival	a big event, e.g. concerts or shows, in one place
be able to	If you are able to do sth, you can do it; you have the knowledge you need. ability <i>n</i>	hit	a thing that a lot of people like: <i>The song was a hit in the US. a hit record</i>
download music	copy music from the internet onto a computer, phone, etc.		

4 What can you remember? Underline the correct answer.

- Bands record albums onto a hit / CD.
- 1 In the past, performers made / didn't make money from albums.
- 2 Downloading music is good / not good for most performers.
- 3 Downloading music is more expensive / cheaper than buying CDs.
- 4 Bands go / don't go on tour to make more money.
- 5 Groups are able to / aren't able to perform at music festivals.
- 6 People like / don't like seeing groups live.

5 Complete the sentences.

- Metallica are still a very famous band/group.
- 1 Coldplay are planning to go on _____ again next year.
- 2 I once saw Beyoncé _____ at Carnegie Hall in New York. She was amazing.
- 3 *Sergeant Pepper* is still the most famous _____ by the Beatles.
- 4 *You Belong With Me* was a big _____ for Taylor Swift.
- 5 I bought three _____ last week.
- 6 Paul McCartney is a great _____. He plays guitar and piano.
- 7 Adele was the first _____ that I ever saw live.
- 8 I saw Radiohead and the Foo Fighters at a summer _____ in 2017.
- 9 David Bowie _____ his last album, *Blackstar*, shortly before he died.
- 10 With a computer or smartphone, you have the _____ to download music.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Who's your favourite group/band? _____
- 2 Do you buy their CDs or download their music? _____
- 3 Have you ever seen them live? _____
- 4 What's their best album? _____
- 5 Do they often go on tour? _____
- 6 Do they have many hit records? Why? / Why not? _____



TEST YOURSELF

A Describing films



A thriller is often exciting.



A comedy is funny.



A war film is often violent.



A love story is romantic.



An action film
(ALSO an adventure film)
is exciting.



A horror film is scary.



A cartoon is often funny.



A science fiction film
(ALSO sci-fi) can be scary.

SPOTLIGHT What kind/type/sort of ...?

- What kind of film is it? ~ It's a thriller.
- What type of music do you like? ~ Rock music.
- What sort of films are exciting? ~ Action films.

- 1 Tick the words with the same pronunciation as the underlined letters in *buy, fly, like*.
Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

describe ✓ fiction science film
violent exciting scary crime

- 2 Complete the kinds of films.

▶ wa r fi lm

1 thl e r

2 cm

3 ct n f

4 scn ft n

5 ct n

6 lv st

7 hr f

- 3 Complete the sentences.

▶ Was the film a thriller?

~ Yes, and quite violent.

1 What sort of film is it?

2 I went to see an action film.

3 What kind of films do you like?

4 Do you like romantic films?

5 It was a very scary novel film.

6 Was it a good comedy?

~ Yes, it was funny.

7 The film was a thiller of thriller.

- 4 Write one adjective to describe each picture.



▶ exciting



1



2



3



4



TEST YOURSELF

B What's on?

- A** What's on at the cinema?
B There's a film on called *Pacific Rim Uprising*.
A What kind of film is it?
B It's a sci-fi movie. It's about people from another planet who arrive on Earth. It's had brilliant reviews.
A OK. Who's in it?
B It stars John Boyega – he's the hero.
A Oh, I like John Boyega – he's a good actor. Who's the director?
B Stephen DeKnight. I've never heard of him, actually.
A And where's it on?
B The Odeon.
A OK. Well, let's go and see it.



GLOSSARY

What's on?	– What films can we see?	star	be one of the main actors in a film/programme. The person is a star .
cinema	a place where you see films	hero	the most important man in a book or film. A woman is a heroine .
movie	film	actor	e.g. Idris Elba or Meryl Streep. A female actor can also be called an actress .
It's about ...	the subject is ...	director	a person who makes a film, e.g. Alfred Hitchcock
planet Earth	where we live. Mars and Venus are also planets .	Where's it on?	Where can we see the film?
brilliant	inf very good	let's	used for making a suggestion for sth to do
review	an article about a film in a newspaper or on the internet		
Who's in it?	– Which actors are in the film?		

5 True or false? Write T or F.

- | | |
|--|--|
| ▶ A film is a movie. T | 4 Mars is a planet. |
| 1 Antonio Banderas is an actress. | 5 The heroine is a man. |
| 2 The star is the main actor in a film. | 6 The Earth is round. |
| 3 A review is a kind of article. | 7 Steven Spielberg is an actor. |

6 Complete the conversation.

- ▶ What 's on at the cinema? ~ An old film called *Dark Star*.
 Oh, what sort of film is it? ~ It's a sci-fi movie, but it's also funny.
 What's it (1) ? ~ I'm not sure, but it's had (2) reviews.
 OK, and who's (3) it? ~ It (4) Dan O'Bannon, who plays the (5)
 Oh, I like him. He's a good (6)
 Who's the (7) ? ~ John Carpenter. He's great.
 OK. And where's it (8) ? ~ At the ABC cinema.
 OK. (9) go and see it tonight. ~ Fine.

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What kind of films do you like?
- What was the last film you saw?
- Where was it on?
- Who are the stars of the film?
- Who's the director?
- What's it about?



TEST YOURSELF

A Media questionnaire

- 1 What do you **watch** on TV / the internet?
 - a ☐ the news
 - b ☐ crime drama
 - c ☐ films
 - d ☐ nothing
- 2 Why do people read a **newspaper** or look at the news online?
 - a ☐ to **find out** what has **happened**
 - b ☐ because it has interesting **articles**
 - c ☐ for the sports results
 - d ☐ for the business **news**
- 3 What do you **listen to** on the radio?
 - a ☐ the news
 - b ☐ music **programmes**
 - c ☐ something else
 - d ☐ nothing
- 4 Do you **believe** what you read or hear in the news?
 - a ☐ yes, **all** of it
 - b ☐ **most** of it
 - c ☐ **some** of it
 - d ☐ no, **none** of it

GLOSSARY

the news [U]	a TV or radio programme about important things happening in the world. News [U] is information about things that have just happened.
crime drama	a police story on TV
newspaper	e.g. <i>The Times</i> , <i>The Washington Post</i> ALSO paper
find out	get information or facts about sth
happen	take place: <i>We don't know what will happen tomorrow.</i>
article	a piece of writing in a newspaper or magazine, or on the internet
on TV / on the radio	(NOT <i>in TV / in the radio</i>) ALSO in the (news)paper
programme	a TV/radio show, e.g. the news, a comedy
believe	think that sth is true
all (of sth)	100%
most (of sth)	80%
some (of sth)	30-50%
none (of sth)	0%

SPOTLIGHT *watch, see, listen, hear*

We **watch** TV, but we **see** or **watch** a programme, a film, etc.

We **listen to** the radio, but we **hear** a programme or **listen to** a programme.

1 Circle the correct answer. – means that no word is needed.

- ▶ See ⊖ / **to** the film.
- 1 Read an article **on** / **in** the paper.
- 2 Let's listen to **the** / **a** news.
- 3 Watch a programme **in** / **on** TV.
- 4 Find – / **out** what has happened.
- 5 I heard it **in** / **on** the radio.
- 6 See the **programme** / **article** on TV.
- 7 Did you hear – / **to** the sports results?
- 8 I heard all – / **of** it.
- 9 I bought **a newspaper** / **the news**.
- 10 I watched most – / **of** it.
- 11 There's a new **crime** / **news** drama.

2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ I always **read** _____ a paper at the weekend. ~ But do you read **all** _____ of it?
- 1 Did you _____ TV last night? ~ Yes, I _____ a programme about dogs.
- 2 I read the story but I don't _____ it's true. ~ No, _____ of it is true. It's completely false.
- 3 Have you heard the _____? ~ No, what's _____?
- 4 Did you _____ to the radio this morning? ~ Yes, I _____ the 8 o'clock news.
- 5 What's in the _____ this morning? ~ I don't know – I never buy one.
- 6 What did you watch _____ TV? ~ A new crime _____. It was good.
- 7 What did you listen _____? ~ Oh, nothing interesting.
- 8 Did you see anything on Saturday? ~ Yeah, a _____ about climate change.

3 ABOUT YOU Read the questionnaire again. Tick (✓) your answers, or write a different answer. If possible, ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B Media vocabulary

Word	Example	Meaning
media	<i>The media often write about famous people.</i>	TV, radio, newspapers, magazines and the internet
magazine	<i>Do you read women's magazines?</i>	something you can buy every week or month, e.g. <i>Time</i> , <i>National Geographic</i>
opinion	<i>What's your opinion of this story?</i>	what you think about sth
report	<i>Journalists report the news from all over the world.</i>	give information on the news. The person is a reporter/journalist .
event	<i>The Olympic Games is a very big event.</i>	something important that happens. It can be good or bad.
die	<i>Nobody died in the accident.</i>	stop living
war	<i>The two countries were at war for ten years.</i>	fighting between countries or groups of people. When a war ends, there is peace .
disaster	<i>The tsunami was a terrible disaster.</i>	something very bad that happens, often when a lot of people die
celebrity (pl celebrities)	<i>There were a lot of celebrities at the first night of the film.</i>	a famous person, usually from TV, film or sport
advertisement (ALSO advert/ad inf)	<i>There are too many adverts on TV and in the papers.</i>	text, a picture or a short film which tries to sell you sth

4 Is the meaning of the sentences the same or different? Write S or D.

- What do the media say about him? / What does the newspaper say about him? D
- 1 There is peace between the two groups. / There is war between the two groups.
- 2 What's your opinion of the news? / What do you think of the news?
- 3 It was a great event. / It was a great advertisement.
- 4 I read a magazine article. / I read a newspaper article.
- 5 He is reporting from Seoul. / He is a journalist working in Seoul.
- 6 I saw it in an ad. / I saw it in an advertisement.
- 7 She's a TV celebrity. / She's on TV a lot.
- 8 Where did he live? / Where did he die?
- 9 She's a good reporter. / She's a good journalist.

5 Complete the text with words from the table in the correct form.

The ► media is TV, radio, newspapers, (1) and the internet. The media (2) important (3) from around the world, for example, (4) like the Asian Tsunami, or (5) between different countries. As well as reporting the news, the media give their (6) of events round the world. And, of course, (7) also like to write about (8) such as Taylor Swift and Usain Bolt, and so on.

6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 What has happened in the news this week?
- 2 What has been an important event in the last five years?
- 3 Do you usually get news from TV, radio, newspapers or the internet?
- 4 Can you think of a popular TV advert now?
- 5 Can you name a famous TV news reporter?



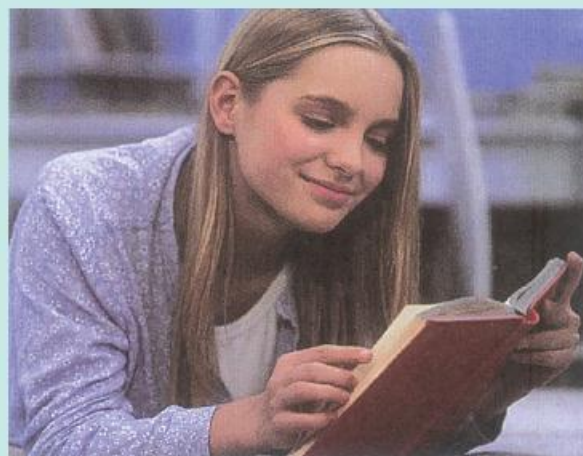
TEST YOURSELF

A Fiction

J.K. Rowling is a famous British **author**. She has written a **series** of **novels** in which the **main character** is a young boy called Harry Potter, who is always **in trouble**. Rowling has also **created** a number of novels about a private **detective** called Cormoran Strike. He's also in trouble a lot because, like Harry Potter, he doesn't like **rules**. But in the end, like Harry, he **solves** the crime or the problem.

GLOSSARY

fiction	stories that sb writes that are not about real events OPP non-fiction
author	a person who writes books or stories SYN writer
series	a number of things of the same kind that come one after another: a TV series
novel	a book of fiction
main character	the most important person in a book, film, etc.
create	make sth new happen or be
detective	a person who tries to find out who did a crime; usually a police officer
rule	sth that tells you what you must or must not do: school rules . If you break a rule , you do sth you mustn't do.
solve	find the answer to a question or problem solution n

SPOTLIGHT **trouble**

Trouble (often singular) means difficulty, problems or worry:

■ *I had a lot of trouble finding a job.*

If you **are in trouble**, you are in a situation which is dangerous or where you have problems, often with parents, the police or a boss.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ A series is more than one. **T**
- 1 **Non-fiction** and **fiction** are the same thing.
- 2 An **author** is a **writer**.
- 3 A **detective** is often a policeman.
- 4 If you are **in trouble**, that's good.
- 5 The **main character** in a book is the most important person.
- 6 **Rules** are things that you must do and follow.
- 7 A **novel** is a book of real events.
- 8 If you **solve** something, you find an answer to a problem.
- 9 If you **create** something, you break it.
- 10 A **solution** to a problem is an answer.

2 Complete the text.

Adrian McKinty is an Irish ▶ **author** who has written a (1) _____ of crime (2) _____. The main (3) _____ in these stories is a (4) _____ called Sean Duffy, but he isn't a typical policeman. McKinty has (5) _____ a character who often breaks (6) _____, and because of this, he's often in (7) _____ with his bosses. But in the end, of course, he always (8) _____ the crime.

3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 A famous author from your country who writes novels.
- 2 A novel that this person has written.
- 3 A popular series on TV in your country.
- 4 One of the main characters in this TV series.
- 5 The name of a famous detective in fiction.
- 6 A rule that you sometimes break or have broken.



TEST YOURSELF

B Fact and fiction

Mary Shelley is a famous English writer from the 19th century. **In the past**, she was **mostly** famous for the novel *Frankenstein*, but in **recent** years, people have **realized** that she **achieved** much more. **In fact**, she wrote a **variety** of books, **including** novels, short stories, travel books and biographies (stories about other people's lives). During her life, she also **tried** to **publish** work written by her husband, Percy Bysshe Shelley, who died when he was only 29.



GLOSSARY

in the past	in the time before now
mostly	almost all: <i>My students are mostly Japanese.</i> SYN mainly
recent	that happened or began only a short time ago
realize	understand and know something: <i>I studied law, but I realize now that it was a mistake.</i>
achieve	do sth well after trying hard: <i>She achieved a lot in her life.</i>
in fact	often used for introducing more information
variety	a lot of different things
including	with: <i>There were 12, including me.</i> (= 11 plus me)
try	If you try to do sth, you work hard to do it: <i>I tried to call Clara yesterday, but she was busy all day.</i>
publish	prepare a book so you can sell it

4 Circle the two words that have the same sound underlined. Use the to help you.

Practise saying the words.

► past / arm / at

1 mine / same / mainly

2 mostly / hot / home

3 fit / realize / fine

4 achieve / child / receive

5 pull / butter / publish

6 man / variety / another

7 blue / run / including

8 recent / red / see

5 Circle the correct answer.

► In the past is around / before now.

1 Including you is with you / without you.

2 If you realize something, you know it / don't know it.

3 If you achieve something, that's bad / good.

4 A variety is one thing / lots of different things.

5 If you publish a book, it is / isn't ready to sell.

6 If something is recent, it happened a long / short time ago.

7 I mostly work means the same as I possibly / mainly work.

8 You use in fact to give more information / an example of something.

6 Complete the sentences.

► The book isn't difficult. In fact _____, it's a very easy book to read, and also quite short.

1 In the p _____, bookshops were closed on Sundays, but now they are m _____ open.

2 I've got ten books in English, I _____ this one.

3 I wanted to buy a dictionary, but I r _____. I didn't have enough money.

4 The company p _____ Maria's first book last year, and it is selling very well.

5 You will find a wide v _____ of books on cooking in this shop.

6 He t _____ many times to write a novel. Finally at the age of 36, he a _____ it. Now he's a famous author.



TEST YOURSELF

A Things you need to do

Things you might do or arrange before you go on holiday:

- * book the flight
- * book the accommodation
- * check your passport ¹
- * get foreign money
- * pack your suitcase



GLOSSARY

arrange	plan and organize sth
holiday	a period of rest from work or school
(go) on holiday	if you go on holiday or are on holiday , you are not at work and you are usually away from home.
book	arrange to do or have sth, e.g. a table at a restaurant
flight	a journey by plane fly v pt flew pp flown
accommodation (U)	a place to stay, e.g. a hotel
check	look at sth to see it is right, good or safe
foreign	of another country
pack	put clothes in a suitcase
suitcase	a large bag you put your clothes in when you travel

SPOTLIGHT **might + verb**

Might means 'it is possible that / perhaps'. **Might** is the same in all forms.

- You **might** be ill on holiday. = It's possible that you will be ill.
- He **might** forget his passport. ■ He **might** be on holiday now.

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------|---------------------|
| ► fly | e | a on holiday |
| 1 book | ..... | b the accommodation |
| 2 get foreign | ..... | c your passport |
| 3 pack | ..... | d money |
| 4 arrange | ..... | e to Rome airport ✓ |
| 5 go | ..... | f your suitcase |
| 6 check | ..... | g a flight |

2 Complete the text.

I'm going on ► **holiday** for two weeks this Saturday. I finally decided to go to Turkey, so I booked the (1) with Turkish Airlines. I needed (2) too, so I looked on the internet for hotels in Izmir. I found a nice one and (3) to stay there for the first week. After that, we're not sure but we (4) go and stay near the beach. I also got some (5) money. I'm very organized, so I have already (6) that my passport is OK, and I have also (7) my suitcase. I'm ready to go. Unfortunately, my husband is not so organized. He never looks at his passport and won't pack his (8) until the night before we travel.

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

When you go on holiday ...

- do you arrange it yourself, or does somebody else do it? I don't do it. My wife does. She usually arranges everything.
- 1 do you usually book a flight a long time before you travel? Why? / Why not?
- 2 do you usually need to book accommodation? Why? / Why not?
- 3 do you usually get foreign money before you travel?
- 4 do you always pack your suitcase yourself?
- 5 do you often check your passport?



TEST YOURSELF

B Booking accommodation

A Hotel Metropole. How can I help you?

B Oh, good morning. I'd like to book a room for next Friday please, that's the 24th.

A OK. Yes, we have rooms **available**.

Single or double?

B A double room, please.

A OK. A double room is £90 **a night**, and all our rooms are **en suite**.

B Good. And is breakfast **extra**?

A No, breakfast is **included**.

B OK, great. How about **parking**?

A I'm **afraid** we don't have parking at the hotel.

B Oh **dear!**

A But there's a car park very near.

B OK, **well it doesn't matter**. Yes, I'll take the room.

A Fine. Could I just take a few **details** then ...



double room



single room

GLOSSARY

available	ready for you to use, have or see
(£90) a night	= (£90) for one night ALSO (£90) a week/a month
en suite	a bedroom with a bathroom
extra	more than is usual: You pay an extra £20 for a large room.
include	have sth or sb as part of sth else: The meal will be about £30, but that includes service.
parking	a place to leave a car
I'm afraid	= I'm sorry (NOT I'm afraid but) I'm afraid not = I'm sorry but no.
Oh dear!	used for showing that you are surprised or unhappy about sth
it doesn't matter	= it isn't important
details	information, e.g. your name, address, phone number

4 Is this good news? Write Yes or No.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ► There is parking. <u>Yes</u> | 4 There are rooms available. |
| 1 I'm afraid | 5 Oh dear! |
| 2 The room's en suite. | 6 Breakfast is included. |
| 3 Breakfast is extra. | 7 I'm afraid not. |

5 Match 1–5 with a–f.

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| ► Breakfast <u>c</u> | a matter. |
| 1 book | b dear! |
| 2 I'm afraid | c is included. ✓ |
| 3 It doesn't | d a room |
| 4 Oh | e a week |
| 5 £100 | f not. |

6 Complete the dialogue. Write one word in each space.

- A** Regent Hotel, can I ► help you?
- B** Oh, hello. Do you have any rooms (1) for this weekend?
- A** Would you like a (2) room or a (3) ?
- B** A double, please.
- A** OK. All our rooms are (4)
- B** Good. Is that with a bath and shower?
- A** Just a shower.
- B** Oh (5) – I prefer baths. Oh well, it doesn't (6) A shower's OK.
- A** And a double room is €75 (7) night.
- B** That's fine. And does that (8) breakfast?
- A** No, I'm (9) not. Breakfast is (10)
- B** Right. And what about (11) ?
- A** Yes, there is a car park at the hotel. Is there anything else?
- B** No, that's great. I'd like to book the room.
- A** Fine. Could you just give me a few (12) , please?



TEST YOURSELF

A Describe a hotel

travel blog

Atlanta Hotel (VILNIUS Lithuania)

When we **went on a trip** to Lithuania, we **stayed** at this hotel near the Old Town. The bedrooms were good, and the **service** was **excellent**: everyone was friendly and very **helpful** with all the information that **tourists** need. There was also a café bar where we could meet and **chat** to other **guests**. I would **definitely recommend** both Vilnius and the Atlanta for a short **stay**.



GLOSSARY

trip	a journey to a place and back again: <i>go on a trip</i>	tourist	sb who goes to a place on holiday tourism <i>n</i>
stay (at a hotel)	live for a short time (in a hotel) stay <i>n</i>	chat	talk in a friendly informal way to sb chat <i>n</i>
service [U]	the work that sb does for guests in a hotel, customers in a shop or restaurant, etc.	guest	a person staying in a hotel or your home
excellent	very good: <i>an excellent student/musician</i>	definitely	for sure; 100% SYN certainly
helpful	wanting to help	recommend	tell sb that a thing or a person is good

1 Circle the correct answer.

- We lived / stayed at a hotel for our holiday.
 1 We **went on** / **made** a trip to India last month.
 2 It was lovely – I **recommend** / **don't recommend** it.
 3 The dinner was **excellent** / **helpful**.
 4 A lot of **tourists** / **guests** visit our city.
 5 It was great, so I **definitely** / **possibly** want to go again.
 6 We had a short **service** / **stay** in Budapest last year.
 7 I think **service** / **tourism** is important to Lithuania.
 8 We often **stay** / **chat** to other guests in the hotel in the evening.

2 Complete the text.

Last month we had a short ► stay in Amsterdam. We were at quite a small hotel, but all the people who worked there spoke (1) English, and they were very (2)
 They told us about the best places for (3) to visit such as the Van Gogh Museum, and they also introduced us to other (4) who were (5) at the hotel. If you are thinking of going to Amsterdam, I would (6) this hotel, and you should (7) go to the Van Gogh Museum while you are there.

3 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions.

- What was the last hotel you stayed at ?
 1 How long did you there?
 2 Was the good?
 3 Did you to other guests in the hotel?
 4 Would you this hotel to other people?
 5 Was the place popular with ?

I stayed in the Hotel Victoria in Turin.

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

B In a hotel

A hotel guest might ask these questions:

- Could I have my **key**, please?
- It's room 402.
- When do you **serve** breakfast?
- Could I **pay my bill**, please?
- Can I **change** money here?
- Can I **leave** my luggage here?
- Could you **call** a taxi, please?
- Do I **have to** pay now?



The hotel receptionist might say or ask:

- Could you just **sign** here, please?
- You can **collect** your passport later.
- You **have to check out of** your room by 10 o'clock.
- Breakfast is served **until** 9.30.

GLOSSARY

key



serve

give food or drink to sb

pay

give sb money for work or services

bill

a piece of paper that shows how much money you must pay, e.g. in a hotel or restaurant

change

(money)

If you give sb pounds (£), and they **change** them **into** dollars, they give you dollars for the pounds.

leave sth

somewhere

let sth or sb stay in the same place **leave the door open**

call

phone sb (make) a call *n*

sign

write your name on a form or letter

collect

go and get sth from a place

check out

pay the bill and leave a hotel **OPP check in**

until

up to a certain time **SYN till**

SPOTLIGHT **have to + verb**

Have to is used for saying that somebody must do something or that something must happen.

- You **have to** pay the hotel bill when you leave.
- **Do I have to** pay for breakfast? ~ No, breakfast is included.
- You **don't have to** work on Sunday, but you can if you want.

5 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- change c
- 1 call
- 2 pay
- 3 sign
- 4 leave
- 5 serve
- 6 collect

- a the bill
- b food
- c money ✓
- d a bag in the hotel
- e a ticket from the station
- f a form
- g a taxi

6 Complete the sentences.

- If you want to get in your room, you need a key.
- 1 If you write your name on a form, you it.
- 2 If your room is hot at night, you can the window open.
- 3 If you want to get somewhere quickly, you can a taxi.
- 4 If you're leaving a hotel or restaurant, you have to the bill.
- 5 If you give food and drink to people, you them.
- 6 If you have pounds (£) and want euros (€), you need to some money.
- 7 If you go to a place to get a key, you it.
- 8 When you arrive at the hotel, you in at reception.

7 Complete the dialogues.

- I'm leaving now, so could I pay the bill? ~ Yes, of course.
- 1 Can I have my, please? ~ Of course. What's your room number?
- 2 Do the shops close at 5.30? ~ No, they're open 7.30.
- 3 Excuse me, what time do you lunch? ~ From 12.00 to 2.00.
- 4 Will I to get a taxi to the airport? ~ No, you don't to. There is a bus from the hotel that will take you to the airport.
- 5 When do I have to leave my room and pay? ~ You have to check by 10 a.m.
- 6 I'd like to go to the train station. Could you a taxi for me? ~ Yes, of course.



TEST YOURSELF

A Check-in



Some passengers buy a ticket online and **print** a **boarding pass** 24 hours before they fly. Some passengers print a **boarding pass** at a **ticket machine** when they **reach** the airport. Some get one at the **check-in desk**. You need to **check in** if you have a lot of **luggage** (e.g. suitcases and bags), but you can take some **hand luggage** on the plane with you. After check-in, you can go through **security**, then look for the **gate** number where your flight leaves from and wait to **board** the plane.

GLOSSARY

print	put words or pictures onto paper using a machine
boarding pass	a card that you must show when you get on a plane or ship SYN boarding card
reach	arrive somewhere
check-in	(see picture) check in v: You check in at the check-in desk .
hand luggage	a bag you can take on the plane with you
security	the place in an airport where people check you and your hand luggage
gate	in an airport, the place near your plane where you wait to get on
board	walk onto a plane, ship or bus

SPOTLIGHT *airports*

An **airport** is a place where people get on and off **planes/aeroplanes**. An **airline** is a company that takes people by plane to different places.

1 Complete the words.

- ▶ p _ a _ s _ s _ enger
1 b _ _ _ _ rd
2 ch _ _ _ _ _ i _

- 3 h _ _ _ _ d _ _ _ g c _ _ _ _ d
4 ae _ _ _ pl _ _ _ _
5 a _ _ _ _ p _ _ _ t

- 6 h _ _ nd i _ _ gg _ _ ge
7 a _ _ _ _ l _ _ _ e
8 s _ _ c _ _ _ it _

2 Make five more phrases from the words in the box.

airline ✓
ticket

boarding
company ✓

desk
luggage

board
machine

check-in
the plane

pass
hand

▶ airline company

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We flew in a large aeroplane.
1 There were a lot of _____ waiting at the _____ desk.
2 If we hurry, we'll _____ the airport by 3.30.
3 I printed my _____ card at home, and I only had hand _____, so I didn't need to _____ in when I got to the airport.
4 I went to _____ 7, but I sat there for half an hour before we could _____ the plane.
5 Heathrow and Charles de Gaulle are very busy _____.
6 If you don't have a boarding pass, you can _____ one at the ticket _____.
7 I had a lot of _____: a large suitcase and a heavy bag as well.

4 ABOUT YOU Are these sentences true for you?

- ▶ I travel by plane a lot. No, I don't travel by plane very much.
1 I usually use the same airline when I fly. _____
2 I usually print my boarding pass at home. _____
3 When I reach the airport, the first thing I do is have a coffee. _____
4 I want to go through security very quickly. _____
5 I like to be one of the first people to board the plane. _____
6 I like to sit at the front of the plane. _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Departure and arrival



You **get on / board** the plane.



You **fasten** your seat belt.



The plane **takes off**.



Flight attendants **provide** food and drinks.



The plane **lands** and passengers **get off**.



Somebody **checks** your passport.



You **collect** your luggage and **leave** the airport.

GLOSSARY

departure	leaving a place
arrival	coming to a place: <i>There's always someone to meet me on arrival.</i>
arrive v	
provide	give sth to sb who needs it
check	look at sth to see if it is correct or good: check your ticket (NOT control your ticket)
collect	go and take sth from a place

5 Cover the pictures and put the phrases in order. Write numbers in the boxes.

You collect your luggage. ☐
 You get on the plane. ☐
 You get off the plane. ☐
 You fasten your seat belt. ☐
 Someone checks your passport. ☐

The plane lands. ☐
 You leave the airport. ☐
 The plane takes off. ☐
 Flight attendants provide drinks. ☐

6 Complete the text.

I don't like sitting in airports, and now you often have to ► arrive at the airport two hours before (1) _____, which is terrible. When I (2) _____ the plane, the first thing I do is (3) _____ my seat belt. I then sit nervously until the plane (4) _____. Fortunately, the (5) _____ attendants are usually very kind, and always (6) _____ food and drinks, but I'm so nervous I can't eat anything. I only feel safe when the plane has (7) _____. On (8) _____, I'm very happy when someone has (9) _____ my passport, so that I can (10) _____ my luggage and (11) _____ the airport with my brother, who usually meets me.

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

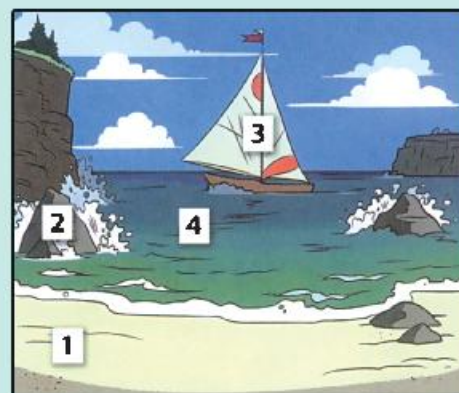
- What's the first thing you do when you get on a plane? I fasten my seatbelt
- How do you feel when the plane takes off? _____
 - Do you always eat the food the airlines provide? _____
 - How do you feel when the plane lands? _____
 - Do you usually need to collect luggage, or do you travel with hand luggage? _____



TEST YOURSELF

A A beach holiday

For many years, we **used to** go to Hyères – a **typical** little town by the sea in the south of France. We used to **fly** to Nice, then get a bus to Hyères, where we stayed in an apartment. In the mornings, I was happy to sit on the **beach**¹ near the **rocks**² and read and write **postcards**, while my husband used to go out on a **boat**³ or go swimming – the **sea**⁴ was lovely and warm. We usually had lunch in the apartment, then **relaxed** for a **couple of** hours. In the evening, there were nice restaurants near the beach where we could have dinner.



GLOSSARY

typical	Something that is typical is a good example of its kind.
fly <i>pt flew pp flown</i>	travel by plane
postcard	a card with a picture on one side. You write on the other side and then send it by post.
while	at the same time as: <i>Max watched TV while I cooked dinner.</i>
relax	do nothing and enjoy yourself
a couple of (hours/days, etc.)	two or maybe three (hours/days, etc.)

SPOTLIGHT *used to + verb*

We use **used to + verb** to talk about something that happened often or was true in the past, but not now.

- *I **used to live** in New York, but now I live in London.*
- *My father **used to be** a police officer; now he works in a bank.*

1 Write five more things that the wife, the husband, or both of them used to do on their holiday.

- *They used to fly to Nice.* 3
- 1 4
- 2 5

2 Complete the sentences.

- Bournemouth is a *typical* place for a beach holiday in England.
- 1 We stayed there for a of weeks.
- 2 We just sat on the and looked at the sea.
- 3 I would like to go on a on the river.
- 4 We sat on the at the back of the beach. You could see more from there.
- 5 My idea of a perfect holiday is to and do nothing.
- 6 We from London to Rome, then took a train for the rest of the journey.
- 7 My cousin didn't like beach holidays. He to go to the mountains every year.

3 One word is missing in each line of the text. What is it and where does it go?

- We had lovely / in France when *holidays*
- I was a child. We to stay in Cassis 1
- usually for a couple weeks. Every 2
- morning I to swim a lot, but I also 3
- played with my dad, my mum 4
- wrote lots of to family and friends. 5
- That was a day. 6

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Where did you go for holidays as a child? *We used to have beach holidays in England or Spain.*
- 1 Did you go to several places or the same place?
- 2 How long did you usually go for?
- 3 Did you ever go on a boat?
- 4 Do you enjoy relaxing on holiday, or do you do many things?



TEST YOURSELF

B A sightseeing holiday

Tourist questionnaire

When you **go sightseeing** on holiday do you:

- | | |
|--|----------|
| * buy a map ¹ of the town? | Yes / No |
| * buy a guidebook ? | Yes / No |
| * go on a guided tour with a guide ? | Yes / No |
| * prefer to go sightseeing on your own? | Yes / No |
| * visit museums and art galleries? | Yes / No |
| * like to look round ? | Yes / No |
| * take lots of photos ² ? | Yes / No |
| * often get lost ? | Yes / No |

What is your **ideal** place for a sightseeing holiday?



GLOSSARY

go sightseeing	go as a tourist to look at interesting buildings and places	prefer to do sth	like to do one thing more than another
guidebook	a book that describes a place for tourists	visit	go to see a person or place for a short time
tour	a short visit around a town or building; go on a guided tour visit a place with a person who tells you about it	look round	visit a place
guide	a person who gives a guided tour and tells tourists about places	get lost	If you get lost or are lost , you don't know where you are.
		ideal	the best or exactly right SYN perfect

5 Circle the correct word.

- | | |
|---|--|
| ▶ prefer <u>to go</u> / go | 5 <i>guide</i> / <i>guided</i> tour |
| 1 go / <i>have</i> sightseeing | 6 <i>make</i> / <i>take</i> photos |
| 2 a <i>guide</i> map / <i>guidebook</i> | 7 look <i>round</i> / <i>about</i> a place |
| 3 go on / <i>make</i> a tour | 8 a <i>guide</i> / <i>an ideal</i> holiday |
| 4 <i>visit</i> / go a museum | |

6 Complete the sentences with one word.

- ▶ We went on a guided tour.
- She took a lot of _____ of old buildings in the town centre.
 - We _____ on a tour of the town, and the _____ was interesting and very funny.
 - I _____ lost because I didn't have a _____.
 - We went _____ the day after we arrived. It was quite tiring.
 - I don't like _____ tours of places – I _____ to visit places on my own.
 - You get a lot of useful information in a _____.
 - Do you want to go on on a guided _____?
 - I want to _____ the Science Museum when I'm in London.
 - My sister can never find her way – she often _____ lost.
 - I like to look _____ a place and _____ lots of photos.
 - A beach holiday is _____ for families with young children.
 - When you're on holiday, do you prefer to _____ round on your own?

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the tourist questionnaire, or ask another student.



TEST YOURSELF

91 Meet and greet

A Introductions

Liam and Sienna meet for the first time ...



... and two hours later ...



GLOSSARY

greet	say hello when you meet a new person or a friend	greeting <i>n</i>
introduce sb (to sb)	bring people together for the first time and say their names	introduction <i>n</i>
This is ...	When we introduce people, we say this is Liam, etc. (NOT <i>he/she is</i> OR <i>here is</i>)	
hi	<i>inf</i> hello	
welcome	If sb is welcome , you are happy to see them: Welcome to our home! welcome <i>v, n</i> : He welcomed us. They gave us a warm welcome .	
bye	a short form of <i>goodbye</i>	
hope to (see you again)	used for saying that you want sth to happen	

SPOTLIGHT introductions

You often use **Nice to meet you** or **Good to meet you** when you meet people for the first time, and when you say goodbye after the first time you meet them.

How do you do? was common in the past, but is now very formal and not used very much.

1 Make correct sentences from the words.

- ▶ do / how / do / you How do you do ?
- 1 meet / nice / hello / you / to
- 2 this / Max / Emma / is
- 3 again / hope / you / bye / to / see
- 4 you / goodbye / to / nice / meet

2 Complete the sentences.

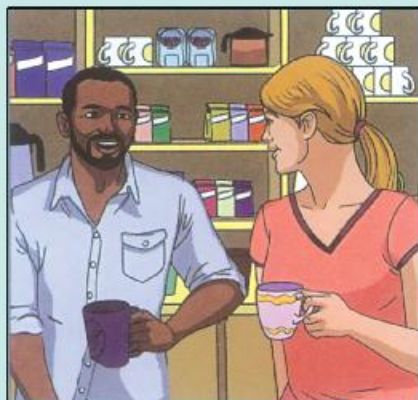
- ▶ Bye is just a short form of goodbye.
- 1 When we _____ somebody to another person, we say: 'This is (Sophy)'.
- 2 We often _____ hands when we meet people for the first time.
- 3 When we _____ friends, we usually say *hello* or *hi*.
- 4 _____ and greetings are often different in other countries and languages.
- 5 When we visit my aunt and uncle, they always give us a warm _____.
- 6 *Hello* and *Hi* are common _____ in English.

3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 **LUCY** Emma, ▶ this is Alex.
EMMA _____
ALEX Hi, _____ to you.
- 2 **EMMA** Goodbye, Alex. Hope to see you _____
ALEX Yes, _____

- 3 **MAX** Lucy, _____ is Dan.
LUCY Hi, Dan. Good to _____
And _____ to Cambridge.
- DAN** Thank you.
- 4 **LUCY** Bye, Dan, _____ to see you again. Have a good journey.
DAN Thanks, _____

B Meeting a friend



Matt meets his friend Tess in a café.

Matt Hi, Tess. **How are you?**

Tess Fine, thanks. And you?

Matt Yeah, very well.

Tess Good. And how's Sarah?

Matt She's in bed, actually.

Tess Oh! **What's the matter?**

Matt Flu, I think.

Tess Oh dear!



An hour later they say 'goodbye'.

Tess Anyway, Matt, I've got to go now. **See you later.**

Matt Yeah. About 7.00?

Tess Yes, that's fine.

Matt Good. **See you then.**

Tess Sure. And **give my love** to Sarah. Hope she gets better soon.

Matt Yes, I will.

GLOSSARY

How are you? You say this to a friend when you meet. **ALSO** **How are things?**

fine **OR** **very well** **OR** **good** **OR** **not bad** are common replies to 'How are you?'. (NOT **very fine**)

oh! used for showing a strong feeling, e.g. when you're surprised or afraid

= What's the problem?

What's the matter?

Oh dear! sth you say if you are surprised or sad

anyway a word you can use when you start to talk about sth different

have got to do sth have to do/must do

Have got to is more informal than **have to**. It is usually contracted, e.g. **I've got to go**.

give my love to sb say a big, warm hello to sb

will You use **will** when you agree or promise to do sth.

SPOTLIGHT **see you ...**

We say this when we know we will meet someone again.

See you later is usually the same day. Other common expressions are: **see you soon**, **see you** (next Saturday, etc.), **see you then**, etc.

4 Complete the phrases.

► H o w a r e y o u?

1 S_____ you tomorrow.

2 He's v_____y w_____!

3 Wh_____ the m_____?

4 S_____ you l_____.

5 S_____ you s_____.

6 H_____w_____r_____th_____s?

7 G_____ my l_____ to Suki.

8 I've g_____t_____ go n_____w.

9 Tr_____s f_____n_____.

5 Replace the underlined words with another word or words that have the same meaning.

ROB Hello. ► Hi _____ How are you?

FINN Good. And you?

ROB Hmm, not great.

FINN What's the problem?

ROB I have to work all weekend.

FINN Oh no.

ROB Yes, so I can't come on Sunday. But say hello to Elle.

FINN Yes, I promise.

6 Cover the conversations above and complete the dialogues. Don't use the same word more than once.

1 JIM Hi, How ► are you _____?

SAM I'm very _____ . And you?

JIM Yeah, _____ .
And _____ your wife?

SAM She's _____ .

2 JIM _____ , Sam, I _____ go now.

SAM OK. See you _____ .

JIM Sure. What time?

SAM 6.30.

JIM Yeah, _____ fine. See you _____ .



TEST YOURSELF

A About people

Who do you live with, Tracey?

And what's your brother like?

And your boyfriend – what does he do?

How long have you known him?

And you're learning Spanish. How often do you study?

And why Spanish?

Whose idea was it to live in Spain?

OK. But what do you think?

What kind of work can you do in Spain?

~ My parents, and my younger brother.

~ He's OK – he's quite funny.

~ He works for an airline company.

~ About two years.

~ Twice a week.

~ Because we want to live in Spain.

~ My boyfriend's.

~ Yeah, I think it's a good idea.

~ I can probably get a job in a restaurant.

GLOSSARY

twice (a week/month, etc.)	two times every week/month, etc.
idea	a plan or a new thought: <i>It was a good idea to arrive early.</i>
yeah inf	yes
kind (of sth)	a group of things or people that are the same in some way SYNS sort/ type : <i>What kind/sort/type of books do you read?</i>

SPOTLIGHT *whose and belong to someone*

Whose money is that?	~ It's mine . = It's my money.
Who does that money belong to?	~ It belongs to my brother.
Whose is this bag?	~ It's Ben's. = The bag belongs to Ben.
Who does this bag belong to?	~ It's Ben's.

1 Make correct questions from the words.

- for / do / work / who / you
1 you / often / there / go / how / do
2 like / what / music / do / sort of / you
3 he / does / what / do
4 have / lived / how long / there / you
5 type of / do / watch / what / films / you
6 this / to / belong / does / who
7 his / like / what's / flat
8 like / you / why / her / do

Who do you work for ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?
..... ?

2 Find the right question in Exercise 1 for these answers.

- Because she's very kind. **8** **d** Twice a year.
a Ten years. **e** It's mine.
b I like romantic movies. **f** He's a doctor.
c It's small but very nice. **g** Rock and pop.

3 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

- **Why** did you leave your job? ~ Because I didn't like it.
1 How do you go to Italy? ~ a year.
2 jacket is this? ~ It's I bought it yesterday.
3 's Alicia like? ~ She's very nice.
4 Do you speak German? ~, a bit.
5 Who does this to? ~ I think it's Mark's.
6 What of animal is it? ~ I think it's a horse.
7 Do you want to go out this evening? ~ Yeah, that's a good
8 How have you worked there? ~ Six months.



TEST YOURSELF

B About places



How long is it open?
(= how many hours?)

What do you recommend?
(= What do you think is good?)

What time / When does the palace close/shut?
(open)

How far is it to the river?
(= how many metres?)

Where's the nearest bank?
(= Where's the first bank from here?)

How many places can we visit with this ticket?
(= what number?)

Is the castle worth seeing?
(= Do you recommend the castle?)

How much are the tickets?
(= How much money?)

Which restaurant do you recommend?

SPOTLIGHT *which or what?*

Use **which** when there is a small number of possibilities.

- We have a double room or a single. **Which** would you like? (There are only two possibilities.)

In other situations with more possibilities, use **what**.

- **What's** the address of the hotel? (NOT ~~Which~~ is the address?)

4 Circle the correct answer.

- When time / What time does it close?
- 1 Which / What is your address?
 - 2 How long / long time do you need?
 - 3 What hour / time does it open?
 - 4 How many / much places did you visit?

- 5 Where's the next / nearest café?
- 6 Is the museum worth to see / seeing?
- 7 There are two films. What / Which do you prefer?
- 8 How far / long is it to the museum?

5 Complete the questions.

- When does the post office open?
- 1 How is it to the station?
 - 2 It opens at 8.00, but when does it ?
 - 3 How places did you go to?
 - 4 Is it going to see Angkor Wat?
 - 5 We've got two or three types of pen. one do you want?
 - 6 Where's the underground station?
 - 7 's the phone number of the bank?
 - 8 There's a lot to see. What do you ?

6 ABOUT YOUR TOWN Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 Where do you live?
- 2 How long have you lived there?
- 3 Which places are worth visiting?
- 4 How far are they from your home?
- 5 Can you recommend any restaurants?
- 6 Where's the nearest restaurant?



TEST YOURSELF

A Requests and responses

Requests (in the classroom)	Responses
Can you bring ¹ the dictionaries here, please?	✓ Yes, of course.
Could you finish this exercise for homework, please?	Sure. Yeah, no problem.
Yuri, could you take ² these books to the library?	✗
Elena, can you change places with Gabi, please?	(No), I'm afraid I can't.
Could you lend me a pen, Oleg?	
Please make sure you put the books back.	

SPOTLIGHT being polite

In English, it is **polite** to say **please** when you ask a person for something, and to say **thank you** if the person says yes.
I'm afraid is a polite way to say **no**, and to say you are sorry about something.

- **I'm afraid** I can't come this evening.
- Can you come this evening? ~ **I'm afraid not.**

Can and **could** are both used for requests. **Could** is a bit more polite.

GLOSSARY



1 bring

2 take

request

asking for sth in a polite way

response

an answer to sb or sth **respond** v

finish

do/complete the last part of sth

change places

e.g. Elena sits in Gabi's seat, and Gabi sits in Elena's seat

lend

give sth to sb to use for a short time

make sure (you do sth)

be certain (that you do sth)

put sth back

return sth to its place

I'm afraid I can't

= I'm sorry, but I can't. (NOT ~~I'm~~ afraid but I can't)

1 Complete the dialogues with one word in each space.

- Can you clean the board, please?
- 1 Can you lend me a pen, please? ~ Yes, of course.
- 2 Could you bring the books here, please? ~ Yeah, no problem.
- 3 Can you lend me some money? ~ No, I'm afraid not. I don't have any.
- 4 Is it polite to say **please** and **thank you** in English? ~ Yes, it is.
- 5 Do you often use **sure** and **no problem**? ~ Yes, they're common to requests in English.
- 6 Can I finish this book home tonight? ~ Yes, but please put it back tomorrow.
- 7 I must make sure I remember Katya's book next week.
- 8 Do you use **can** and **could** for requests in English? ~ Yes. **Could** is a bit more polite.
- 9 We have to put all the books back on the shelf when we finish the lesson.

2 Write requests and responses using **can** and **could**, and different responses.

- put / books / over there

A Could you put these books over there, please?

B Yes, sure.

- 1 finish / exercise / homework

A _____

B _____

- 2 Luca / change places / Maria

A _____

B _____

- 3 bring / notebook / tomorrow

A _____

B _____

- 4 lend / pencil

A _____

B _____

- 5 take / books / library

A _____

B _____

- 6 finish / essay / Monday

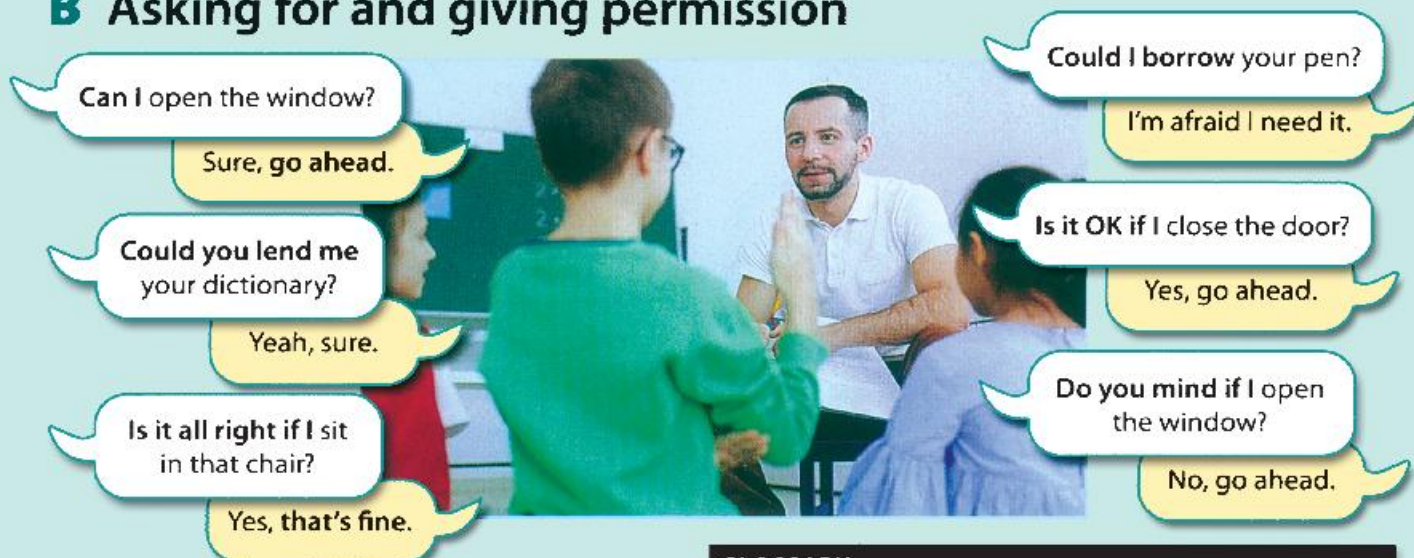
A _____

B _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Asking for and giving permission



SPOTLIGHT *lend and borrow*

If you **borrow** a pen **from** someone, you use their pen, then give it back.

If you **lend** someone a pen, or **lend** a pen **to** someone, you give them your pen to use for a short time.

▪ **Could I borrow your pen?** = **Could you lend me your pen?**

GLOSSARY

permission	allowing sb to do sth; telling them it is OK to do sth: <i>She gave me permission to leave class early.</i>
go ahead / that's fine	You say go ahead or that's fine when you give sb permission to do sth. ALSO of course / no problem
all right	OK
Do you mind if ...?	– Is it a problem for you if ...? (The answer No, go ahead means 'It's not a problem'.)

3 Write new sentences. Change only the bold words. The meaning must stay the same.

- Can we sit down? Is it OK if we sit down?
- 1 Is it **OK** if I use this dictionary?
- 2 Is it **OK** if I make a coffee?
- 3 Can I stay for another ten minutes?
- 4 Is it **OK to** close the window?
- 5 Can **you lend me** your book?
- 6 Can I sit here? ~ Yes, **of course**.
- 7 Can I use the computer? ~ I'm **sorry but** I need it.
- 8 Is it OK if I have my coffee here? ~ Yes, **sure**.

4 Ask for permission in these situations. Use the word in CAPITALS.

- You want to sit near the window. CAN Can I sit near the window?
- 1 You want to go at one o'clock today. MIND
- 2 You want to borrow a piece of paper. COULD
- 3 You want to go to the toilet. OK
- 4 You want to sit in a different seat. ALL RIGHT
- 5 You want somebody to lend you a pen. CAN

5 Find five more responses in the box to the question below.

no	ahead	fine	afraid	problem	of	I	it
need	sure ✓	that's	yes ✓	go	I'm	course	

Could I possibly borrow your car tomorrow?

► Yes, sure.

- 1
2
3

- 4
5



TEST YOURSELF

A Inviting people



Inviting	Saying yes
Would you like to ... Do you want to ... go out for a meal / a drink? come round for a coffee? come to a party?	Yes, great! Yeah, I'd love to! That sounds lovely/fun/good. That would be lovely/nice.
	Saying no
	I'd love to, but I'm going to the cinema. I'm sorry, but I'm busy. I'm afraid I can't.

GLOSSARY

invite	ask sb to come to a party, your house, etc. invitation <i>n</i>
Would you like to ...?	= Do you want to ...? (Would you like to is a bit more polite.)
go out for (a meal/drink)	go to a restaurant or a café/bar
come round	visit a person at their house, often near your house
party	a time when friends meet to eat, drink, dance, etc.
great	very good SYNS lovely/wonderful
I'd love to	= I want to very much; I'd I would ALSO That would be lovely. / That sounds lovely.
busy	If you're busy , you have a lot of things to do.
I'm afraid I can't	= I'm sorry, (but) I can't (NOT I'm afraid but I can't.)

1 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the to help you. Practise saying the words.

► meal / great D

1 love / wonderful

2 would / sound

3 sorry / come

4 afraid / great

5 yeah / there

6 busy / but

2 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

► Do you / to go out later? want

1 Would you to come round later?

2 Yes, I'd love.

3 Do you want to out for dinner?

4 That lovely.

5 I've just got an to a party.

6 I'm afraid can't.

7 That be nice.

8 Do you want come to a party?

9 I'm, but I'm busy tonight.

10 Ben me to lunch on Saturday.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

► Invite someone for a drink in a bar.
Say yes.

1 Invite a friend for a meal in a restaurant.
Say yes.

2 Invite a friend to your home for a coffee.
Say no politely.

3 Invite someone to a party tomorrow.
Say yes.

4 Invite someone for a coffee in a café.
Say no politely.

Do you want to go out for a drink?

That would be lovely.

Would?

Yes, g!

Do?

I'm a

Would?

Yes, that s

Do?

I'd, but gym.



TEST YOURSELF

B Making suggestions

ask for a suggestion	What shall we do } this weekend? Where shall we go }		
make a suggestion	Shall we go to the beach? Maybe we could go out for a meal.	What about going to an art gallery? Let's go out for a drink.	
say 'yes'	Yes, (that's a) good/great idea! Yeah, let's do that. OK, fine.	say 'no', or make another suggestion	I'm not sure (about that). I think I'd prefer to stay at home. Yeah, or perhaps we could go to the mountains.

GLOSSARY

suggestion	an idea that sb gives you to think about suggest v
maybe	possibly SYN perhaps
that's a great idea	= that's a very good plan
prefer to do sth	like to do one thing more than another

4 Put the dialogues in order. Write the numbers in the boxes.

dialogue 1

- ☐ I'd prefer to get them at the station.
- ☐ The weather's nice, so
- ☐ Yes, that's a good idea.
- ☐ What shall we do this weekend?
- ☐ And maybe we could take the train.
- ☐ Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
- ☐ what about going to the beach?

dialogue 2

- ☐ But it's going to rain.
- ☐ I think I'd prefer to go out.
- ☐ OK, fine.
- ☐ What about a nice meal at home?
- ☐ OK, then let's order a pizza.
- ☐ Where shall we go tomorrow?

5 Correct the mistakes.

- We could to have a party this weekend.
- 1 What do we do this evening?
- 2 Do you have a suggest?
- 3 What about go to see a film?
- 4 I'd prefer go by train.
- 5 Yes, is a good idea.
- 6 Where we shall go tomorrow?

We could have a party this weekend.

6 Write in a word where there is a /.

- 1 ► A What / we do / evening?
B What / going / the theatre?
A I'm / sure / that.
- 2 A What / we / on Saturday?
B Perhaps we / go out for a meal.
A OK, let's / that.
- 3 A Where / we go / afternoon?
B / go to a museum.
A Yeah, / 's a good /

What shall we do this evening?



TEST YOURSELF

95 Offers and saying sorry

A Offers



Offering food/drink

Would you like a drink?
Do you want something to eat?



Offering help

Do you need some help?
Let me help you.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please. Thanks. Thanks. Could I have ...?	No, thanks.

Accept	Refuse
Yes, please. Thanks a lot. Thank you (very much).	No, I'm fine, thanks. No, don't worry.

GLOSSARY

offer	say or show that you will give sth if another person wants it offer <i>n</i>
need	if you need sth, you must have it.
help	the act of doing sth good for sb help <i>v</i>
let me ...	used for asking permission to help another person

accept	say 'yes' OPP refuse
thanks a lot <i>inf</i>	— thanks very much
don't worry	used to tell sb that sth is not important
	worry <i>n</i>

1 Correct the mistakes.

- Could you like a drink? Would
- 1 You want something to eat? _____
- 2 Thanks, no. _____
- 3 I fine, thanks. _____
- 4 Do you like something to eat? _____
- 5 Let me to help you. _____
- 6 I thank you very much. _____
- 7 Thanks. Could I take a coffee? _____

2 Complete the sentences with one word.

- Would you like something to eat? ~ Oh, thank you very much.
- 1 Do you need some _____ with your luggage? ~ Oh, yes.
- 2 Did you _____ her a drink when she arrived? ~ Yes, of course.
- 3 Do you _____ some help with those books? ~ Yes I do. _____ a lot.
- 4 Here, _____ me help you. ~ No, don't _____. I'm OK, thanks.
- 5 I offered to help but she _____. She said she didn't need help.
- 6 When people offer me a drink, I usually say 'yes'. I think it's polite to _____.

3 Complete the questions and answers.

- Offer someone food.
- 1 Offer someone a drink.
Accept, and ask for some water.
- 2 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
- 3 Offer someone food.
Accept, and ask for an apple.
- 4 Offer someone help.
Say no politely.
- Do you want something to eat?
- A Would _____ drink?
- B Yes, _____ water?
- A Do _____ help?
- B No, _____, thanks.
- A Would _____ eat?
- B _____ an apple?
- A Let _____.
- B No, _____ worry.



TEST YOURSELF

B Saying sorry

He pushed me but didn't say sorry.



Really! That's so rude.

SPOTLIGHT (I'm) sorry

You use **(very/really/so) sorry** when you:

- 1 feel bad about something you've done:
I'm sorry, I've broken your cup.
- 2 feel sad about something:
I'm sorry you can't come to the party.
- 3 want somebody to repeat something:
Sorry, could you repeat that, please?

Saying sorry	Responses
Sorry, I don't speak English very well.	That's all right. I'll speak slowly.
Oh no! I've broken a cup. I'm so sorry.	That's OK. Don't worry.
I'm very sorry – I've lost your pen.	It doesn't matter. I've got lots of pens.
I forgot to post your letter – I'm really sorry.	Never mind. I can post it later.
Sorry I'm late – the traffic was terrible.	Oh, don't worry about it.

GLOSSARY

rude	not speaking or behaving in a way that is correct for the social situation or polite	break <i>pt broke pp broken</i>	make sth go into smaller pieces, e.g. by dropping it
that's all right / don't worry / it doesn't matter / never mind	These phrases all mean 'it's not important' / 'it's OK'.	lose <i>pt/pp lost</i>	If you lose sth, you can't find it.
		forget <i>pt forgot pp forgotten</i>	= not remember
		(I'm) sorry I'm late	(NOT <i>Sorry for be late.</i>)

4 Match 1–8 with a–i.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------|--------------------|
| ▶ That's | c | a bring your book. |
| 1 It doesn't | ..... | b my car keys. |
| 2 I forgot to | ..... | c all right. ✓ |
| 3 Never | ..... | d I'm late. |
| 4 Don't | ..... | e sorry. |
| 5 Sorry | ..... | f matter. |
| 6 I'm really | ..... | g your pencil. |
| 7 I've broken | ..... | h worry. |
| 8 I've lost | ..... | i mind. |

5 Complete the dialogues with a word or a contraction (e.g. *don't*).

- ▶ I'm very sorry. ~ That's OK.
- 1 I'm really sorry. ~ all right.
- 2 I'm sorry late. The traffic was terrible. ~ That's OK.
- 3 I'm afraid I've my homework. ~ That's all Bring it tomorrow.
- 4 I'm sorry. ~ It doesn't
- 5 Sorry I'm late. ~ Oh, never It's not important.
- 6 Did he say to you? ~ Yes, he did. He's always very
- 7 I think I've your chair. I'm very sorry. ~ Don't It's very old.
- 8 Did he say sorry? ~ No, he's very

6 Write down:

- 1 three words you can use before sorry ▶ very
- 2 four phrases you can use to say 'it's OK' or 'it's not important':
.....
- 3 three different meanings of 'sorry':
.....



TEST YOURSELF



Noah and Ava are getting married. Sonja is an old girlfriend of Noah's, and Noah has invited her to the **wedding**. Ava doesn't like Sonja very much. Do you think Sonja will **attend** the wedding?

100%	CERTAIN	Yes, She'll definitely go.
	PROBABLE	Yeah, I think so . Yeah, she's likely to go. Yeah, she'll probably go. I think there's a (good) chance that she'll go.
	POSSIBLE	I think she may/might go. Yeah, maybe/perhaps .
	UNLIKELY	No, I don't think so . No, I don't think she'll go.
0%	IMPOSSIBLE	No, she definitely won't go.

GLOSSARY

wedding	a time when a man and woman get married
attend formal	go to or be present at a place where sth is happening
certain	sure about sth certainly <i>adv</i> SYN definitely
probably	If sth will probably happen, you think it will happen but you are not sure. probable <i>adj</i>
likely (to)	If sth is likely to happen, it will probably happen.
chance	a possibility that sth may happen. A good chance means it is more probable.
possible	If sth is possible , it can happen. OPP impossible ; possibility <i>n</i>
maybe	a word that shows that sth is possible SYN perhaps
may	a word that shows that sth is possible, and will perhaps happen. SYN might : He may/might come with us. (NOT He may/might to come with us .)

SPOTLIGHT I think so / I hope so

You can use these expressions if you think or hope something is going to happen. Notice the difference in the negative.

- Are you going? ~ Yes, **I think so**. (= it is likely that this will happen)
- Is the exam difficult? ~ No, **I don't think so**.
- Will you get more money? ~ **I hope so**. (= I would like this to happen)
- Is it going to rain? ~ **I hope not**.

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- | | |
|---------------|--------------|
| ▶ possible | 4 definitely |
| 1 certainly | 5 likely |
| 2 impossible | 6 probably |
| 3 possibility | 7 perhaps |

2 Are the sentences similar in meaning or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ It's certainly true. / It's definitely true.
- 1 The team will probably win. / The team will definitely win.
- 2 I may stay in tonight. / I might stay in tonight.
- 3 John and Shar are likely to come. / John and Shar will definitely come.
- 4 Will Jo come? ~ Maybe. / Will Jo come? ~ Perhaps.
- 5 Is it sunny outside? ~ I think so. / ~ I hope so.
- 6 I'm probably going to change jobs. / I'm likely to change jobs.
- 7 I think it's likely. / I think it's impossible.
- 8 There's a chance it will happen. / There's a possibility it will happen.

S

3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- Is Marta coming with you? ~ It's not / but I think she will. certain
- 1 I probably work this evening.
- 2 My parents are not likely come this afternoon.
- 3 Are you going tonight? ~ Yes, I think.
- 4 Have you lost your money? ~ No, I hope.
- 5 I think there's chance that he'll be here.
- 6 Are you seeing Jacob this evening? ~ I'm not sure. I see him.

4 Complete the conversations.

- A Are you going tonight?
B I don't know yet. Perhaps
- 1 A What are you doing this evening?
B I'll p..... stay at home, and I m..... finish reading my book.
- 2 A Who's coming to the cinema this evening?
B Well, Elle will d..... come, and Briony will p..... come with her. And I think three or four more are i..... to come. So, about seven or eight, including us.
- 3 A What are you doing this weekend?
B I'm going to a w..... My cousin is getting married.
A Well, enjoy yourself.
B Thanks. It will c..... be interesting - I don't think the two families like each other very much.
- 4 A Is the team going to win this weekend?
B Yes, there's a good c..... we will - we're playing quite well.
- 5 A What are you doing next week?
B I have to a..... an important meeting for my company in Manchester.
A Are you going to drive?
B I don't think that's l..... : it's a long way. I m..... take the train. Then I can work.
- 6 A Will everyone come to the meeting this afternoon?
B There's a p..... they will all be here, but I don't think s.....
- 7 A Are you leaving at the end of the year?
B Well, m....., but nothing's c..... yet. I'll p..... decide at the end of this month.
- 8 A Will you finish the exercise by the end of the lesson?
B No, that's i..... It's really difficult.

5 ABOUT YOU Answer the questions using words and phrases from page 184.

- Are you going to do anything this evening? I might do some work. I'm not sure.
- 1 Are you going to have a good weekend?
- 2 Are you going to go out with friends?
- 3 Are you going to stay at home on Sunday?
- 4 Are you going to do any work?
- 5 Are you going to watch much TV?
- 6 Are you going to spend a lot of money?
- 7 Are you going to visit other members of your family?
- 8 Are you going to go shopping?



TEST YOURSELF

97 Link words (1)

A Giving more information

These words give more information.

Word	Example	Meaning
and	The city centre is dirty and very expensive.	links two ideas in one sentence, sometimes with a comma (,)
also	The centre is dirty. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It's also very expensive.} \\ \text{It also costs a lot to live there.} \end{array} \right.$	goes after auxiliary verbs, e.g. <i>be</i> , <i>can</i> , but before the main verb
too and as well	The centre is dirty. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{It's very expensive} \\ \text{It costs a lot to live there} \end{array} \right. \} \begin{array}{l} \text{too.} \\ \text{as well.} \end{array}$	go at the end of the sentence Too and as well are used more in spoken English.

1 Are **also**, **too** and **as well** in the correct position? Put a tick (✓) or a cross (X). Then correct the mistakes.

- ▶ You need a dictionary, **and** as well a grammar book is useful. **X** and a grammar book is useful as well
- 1 The house is beautiful, **and** it's near the park **also**.
- 2 He speaks German, **and** he understands **too** Greek.
- 3 We went out for dinner **and** Lucy came **as well**.
- 4 I cleaned the house **and** washed **also** the car.
- 5 She worked in Rome, **and** I think she worked in Ravenna **too**.
- 6 We've got a big garden, **and** there's **as well** a park near the house.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- ▶ too / and it's good / the weather's / in autumn / nice / in winter
The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.
- 1 I often eat / ice cream / cake / **also** / like / and I
I often eat _____
- 2 I enjoy / and I go / **too** / watching tv / to the cinema a lot
I enjoy _____
- 3 I can speak / German / **as well** / understand / English / I can / **and**
I can speak _____
- 4 I read a lot / **also** / and I / music / of books / listen to
I read a lot _____
- 5 **and** / on TV / I play / I watch it / **as well** / football
I play _____
- 6 I drive / **too** / a lot / **and** / I / walk
I drive _____

3 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- The weather's nice in autumn and it's good in winter too.
- That's not true. The weather in winter is very cold and it rains a lot as well.
- 1 _____
 - 2 _____
 - 3 _____
 - 4 _____
 - 5 _____
 - 6 _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Introducing a surprising idea

These words link two ideas when the second idea is surprising after the first idea.

Word	Example	Meaning
but	<i>We had sunny weather, but it was quite cold. He worked hard, but he didn't pass the exam.</i>	links two ideas, usually in one sentence. Sometimes there is a comma (,) with a longer sentence.
however	<i>We had sunny weather. However, it was quite cold. He worked hard. However, he didn't pass the exam.</i>	links two ideas, usually in two different sentences. There is a comma after however . However is more formal than but .
although/though	<i>Although we had sunny weather, it was quite cold, especially in the morning. He worked hard, although he didn't pass the exam. I went to the party. I was quite tired, though.</i>	(the second part sounds like go) links two ideas in one sentence. Although often goes at the beginning of the sentence, but can go in the middle, after a comma. In spoken English, you often use though .

SPOTLIGHT *still*

You can use **still** to make the second idea a bigger surprise:

- *We had sunny weather, **but** it was **still** quite cold in the evenings.*
- *He worked hard. **However**, he **still** didn't pass the exam.*

4 Rewrite the sentences using the link word in CAPITALS.

- The exam was easy. I didn't pass. **HOWEVER** *The exam was easy. However, I didn't pass.*
- 1 He went to bed late. He couldn't sleep. **BUT**
- 2 People don't like her very much. She's very kind. **HOWEVER**
- 3 The food was terrible. The service was good. **ALTHOUGH**
- 4 It was snowing. We decided to go out. **BUT/STILL**
- 5 We lost our dog. We found it after an hour. **HOWEVER**
- 6 I wore a coat. I was cold. **ALTHOUGH/STILL**
- 7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it. **THOUGH**
- 8 We had a big lunch. Jason was hungry. **HOWEVER/STILL**

5 Make six sentences or pairs of sentences from the table using **but** or **however**.

► I didn't feel well. ✓	but However,	I only had to wait five minutes.
I was really hungry.		I stayed at work to finish the job.
I was last in the queue.		someone lent me a jacket.
I was very cold.		I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
I was very frightened.		someone held my hand.
I was late for the party.		I was fine the next day. ✓
I was really tired.		everybody was still there.

- *I didn't feel well. However, I was fine the next day.*

6 Complete the sentences in a way that makes sense.

- I took my umbrella but *it didn't rain.*
- 1 Everyone says it's a great film, though
- 2 Although it was raining,
- 3 The dog looked dangerous but
- 4 Although she was ill,
- 5 She's very intelligent. However,
- 6 I thought the shop was open. However,



TEST YOURSELF

A Reason and result

Why did you go into the café?



GLOSSARY

reason	an explanation for why you do sth
result	sth that happens because of sth else

Link word before the **reason**:

because + clause	<i>I went into the café because it was raining.</i>
because of + noun	<i>I went into the café because of the rain.</i>
(in order) to + verb In order to is more formal than to.	<i>I went into the café (in order) to get out of the rain.</i>

Link word before the **result**:

so + clause = because of this	<i>It was raining, so I went into the café. = 'I went in the café' is the result of the rain.</i>
as a result + clause = because of this As a result can also start a new sentence.	<i>I went to bed very late, and as a result I was tired the next morning. The others had a map but I didn't. As a result, I was the last person to arrive.</i>

1 Circle the correct word(s).

- ▶ I took my umbrella because / so it was raining.
- 1 I stayed at home because / because of the weather.
- 2 We went to Paris so / to see a friend.
- 3 I couldn't go out because / because of I had to study.
- 4 I got lost and in order to / as a result I was late for the meeting.
- 5 It was my birthday, so / because we had a party.
- 6 She went to the market in order to / as a result get some meat.
- 7 She lost her passport, so / because she couldn't go to China.

2 Write **because**, **because of**, **so**, **(in order) to** or **as a result**.

- ▶ They were late because of the traffic.
- 1 I'm going to the chemist's get some medicine.
- 2 It was a nice day, we went out.
- 3 I bought the house the beautiful view.
- 4 I didn't take a coat, I was cold most of the time.
- 5 I don't go to the theatre very often it's too expensive.
- 6 I'm going out now, I will phone you later.
- 7 She went to the town centre meet her friend.
- 8 Our two best players were ill, and we lost the game.

3 Complete the sentences with your own reasons and results.

I stayed at home last night ...

- ▶ because I had to do some work.
- 1 because of
- 2 in order to

I had to wait half an hour for a train, ...

- 3 so
- 4 and as a result

I went to bed very late ...

- 5 because
- 6 so



TEST YOURSELF

B A series of actions or events

Luke is a waiter now. **Before that**, he worked in a factory.

... and we had a really nice time. **Firstly**, we spent a couple of days in Budapest. **After that**, we went to Vienna, where we spent the rest of the week. It was very easy to ...

First of all, you fry the meat. **Secondly**, you fry some onions and add them to the meat. **After that**, you add the red wine and water and cook it slowly for three hours. **Finally**, you add the mushrooms and cook it for another fifteen minutes.

GLOSSARY

before that	earlier than sth
firstly	You say firstly when you are talking about the first thing in a list. ALSO first / first of all
after that	You say after that when you are talking about the next thing in a list. ALSO (and) then
secondly	You say secondly to talk about the second thing in a list.
finally	You use finally when you are talking about the last thing in a list, usually a long list of four or more things.

4 Complete the link words in the texts.

For this job, ► firstly, you have to fill in a form. (1) S..., you have to go and talk to the boss. (2) A..., you meet other people who work in the company.

(3) F..., you have to do a written test

(4) F..., I checked the train times on the internet, and

(5) I... I looked at flights to see if they were cheaper.

James got his first job last year. (6) B..., he was a student.

5 Put the sentences in the correct order. Then add link words.

► I checked the answers. / I did the grammar exercises.

First of all, I did the grammar exercises. Then I checked the answers.

1 You make the pasta sauce. / You boil the pasta. / You add the sauce to the pasta.

2 I trained to be a teacher. / I did a degree in History. / I got a teaching job in Liverpool.

3 We flew back to Rome. / We stayed in Munich for a week. / We spent the second week in Heidelberg. / We left our home in Rome.

4 I came home and had a cup of tea. / I cooked the dinner. / I went to the market. / I made a shopping list.

5 I rang for a taxi and left home. / I had a shower. / I got dressed. / I had breakfast.

6 ABOUT YOU Write three or four things you did last weekend. Use link words.

► First of all, I ...



TEST YOURSELF

99 Phrasal verbs

A Meaning

Most phrasal verbs are very common in spoken English. They have a verb (*sit, stand, get*, etc.) and a particle (*up, on, off*, etc.). Sometimes, the meaning of the two parts is easy to understand.



sit down



stand up



lie down



fall over

Sometimes the two parts form a new meaning.

Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
give sth up	<i>He had to give up football.</i>	stop doing something
look sth up	<i>I had to look up the meaning.</i>	try to find information in a book or on the internet
take off	<i>The plane couldn't take off.</i>	leave the ground and start flying
grow up	<i>When Ben grows up, he wants to be a doctor.</i>	slowly change from a child to an adult
find sth out	<i>I must find out the times of the trains to Southampton.</i>	find a fact or piece of information you need or want
go out	<i>Let's go out this evening.</i>	leave your home to do a social activity, e.g. go to a cinema, a club, etc.

1 Underline the correct particle.

- ▶ I'd like to lie up / down for a minute.
- 1 Can we find out / over how much it costs?
- 2 Where did she grow out / up?
- 3 He fell over / off when he left the house.
- 4 Do you want to go out / off tonight?
- 5 Pepe wants to give on / up his job.
- 6 Look it out / up in your dictionary.
- 7 The plane couldn't take off / up.

2 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

- ▶ Paola doesn't want to go out this evening. She's tired.
- 1 I don't know the name of the hotel, but I can find _____.
- 2 Everyone stood _____ when he came into the room.
- 3 Susana lives in England now, but she grew _____ in Spain.
- 4 She sat _____ at the table and started eating.
- 5 The doctor told me to lie _____ on the bed.
- 6 I told my brother to give _____ smoking.
- 7 The plane took _____ half an hour late because of the bad weather.
- 8 She fell _____ in the street, but several people helped her.
- 9 I asked James to look _____ the meaning of a word for me.

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Do you often look up English words in a dictionary? Yes, quite often.
- 1 Is there anything you would like to give up? _____
- 2 Where did you grow up? _____
- 3 When you fly, how do you feel when the plane takes off? _____
- 4 How often do you go out in the evenings? What do you do? _____



TEST YOURSELF

B Grammar

Some phrasal verbs never have an object.

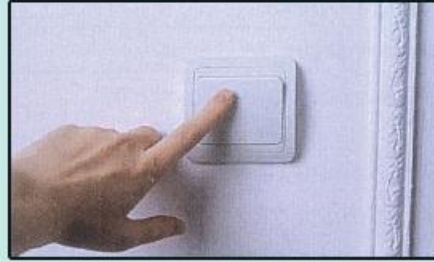
Phrasal verb	Example	Meaning
go up	The price of petrol will go up soon.	⬆ increase, become more OPP go down ⬇
carry on (with sth)	Can we carry on with the exercise?	continue with something
go back	She wants to go back to London.	return to a place
wake up	I always wake up at 7.00 a.m.	stop sleeping
go away	Go away! I'm working.	leave a person or a place

Other phrasal verbs need an object. In the following verbs, the object can go before or after the particle.



Take off your jacket.

Take your jacket off.



Could you turn on the light?

Could you turn the light on?



Put on your shoes.

Put your shoes on.

When the object is a pronoun (*it, them, etc.*) it must go before the particle.

Take it off. (NOT ~~Take off it.~~)

Put them on. (NOT ~~Put on them.~~)

4 Change the underlined noun to *it* or *them*, and put it in the correct place.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ Look up <u>the word</u> . <u>Look it up.</u> | 4 Put <u>those socks</u> on. _____ |
| ▶ Look up <u>both words</u> . <u>Look them up.</u> | 5 Take off <u>your shoes</u> . _____ |
| 1 Take off <u>your jacket</u> . _____ | 6 Give up <u>chocolate</u> . _____ |
| 2 Put on <u>this tie</u> . _____ | 7 Turn on <u>the lights</u> . _____ |
| 3 Turn on <u>the TV</u> . _____ | 8 Put <u>your coat</u> on. _____ |

5 Are the sentences correct, or do they need the pronoun *it*? Where? Look at the examples.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| ▶ Look up in the dictionary. <u>Look it up in the dictionary.</u> | ▶ Please sit down. <u>Correct</u> |
| 1 The price will soon go down. _____ | |
| 2 Do you want to go back? _____ | |
| 3 Could you turn on, please? _____ | |
| 4 You can take off if you're hot. _____ | |
| 5 His salary will go up soon. _____ | |
| 6 Do they want to stop or carry on? _____ | |
| 7 Did you put on? _____ | |
| 8 What time do you usually wake up? _____ | |

Place the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that has the same meaning.

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| The price will <u>decrease</u> soon. | <u>go down</u> |
| 1 I loved Tokyo, and I want to <u>return</u> next year. | _____ |
| 2 When we finish Exercise 1, we can <u>continue</u> with Exercise 2. | _____ |
| 3 I was busy so I told them to <u>leave me on my own</u> . | _____ |
| 4 Can I <u>remove</u> my coat? | _____ |
| 5 I think my salary will <u>increase</u> next year. | _____ |
| 6 I was so tired, I didn't <u>stop sleeping</u> until 9 o'clock this morning. | _____ |



TEST YOURSELF

A Expressions with **get**

Expression	Example	Meaning
get ready	<i>We need to get ready now – the film starts at 6.30.</i>	be prepared and able to do sth
get dressed	<i>I got dressed, had breakfast, then went to work.</i>	put on clothes
get to know sb	<i>I got to know Charlie when we were at university.</i>	meet sb and become friends
get changed (into sth different)	<i>I've been for a long walk, so I'm going to get changed.</i>	take your clothes off and put on different clothes
get in	<i>What time does our train get in?</i>	arrive at a place
get to sleep	<i>Do you have problems getting to sleep?</i>	start to sleep
go and get sth	<i>Could you go and get a clean towel from the bathroom?</i>	go to a place and return with sth SYN fetch
get back	<i>I want to get back by 7.00, if possible.</i>	return from a place
get better	<i>I feel my English is getting better now.</i>	reach a higher level, improve
get out of sth	<i>Be careful when you get out of the car.</i>	leave a vehicle such as a car or taxi
we/you get	<i>We get a lot of tourists where I live.</i>	= there are / you can see

1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

- ▶ get better
1 get in
2 get back
3 get to know somebody
4 go and get
5 get dressed
6 get changed

g

- a put on clothes
b meet and become friends
c return
d arrive
e put on different clothes
f fetch
g reach a higher level ✓

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I started learning the guitar last year, and I'm definitely getting better now.
1 Ed, could you and get my laptop from the bedroom?
2 We all got of the car and pushed it to the side of the road.
3 I'm meeting Sophia at the station. Her bus gets at 3.15.
4 I left Amelia's flat at 10.00, but I didn't get until 11.30.
5 We're going out in ten minutes, so we need to get
6 You a lot of people sleeping on the streets in big cities.

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Do you get to know people easily?
1 Do you usually get before or after you have breakfast?
2 When you go out, does it take you a long time to get?
3 When you get home from school/college/work, do you usually get into different clothes?
4 Do you ever have problems getting to at night?
5 Do you think your English is getting?
6 Do you a lot of tourists in your town?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Do you get to know people easily? Yes, I think so.



TEST YOURSELF

B In conversation

These expressions are common in informal spoken English.

Guess what! I passed the exam. I heard this morning.

Wow! Well done! That's great.

Yes, I can now relax for the rest of the week.

I don't feel like going to the beach.

But everyone else will be there.

I know, but I'm going to stay here and take care of the dog.

Are you going to the meeting on Friday?

I guess so.

Well, can you let me know by tomorrow?

Come on! We have to go.

What, now?

Yes, right now.

SPOTLIGHT *else*

You can use **else** to mean 'different' after words like **everyone**, **somewhere** and **nothing**.

- I didn't like it, but **everyone else** did. (= all the other people)
- The restaurant was full so we went **somewhere else**. (= to another place)
- We had bread because there was **nothing else** to eat. (= no other thing)

GLOSSARY

Guess what!	used for introducing surprising news
Wow!	a word that shows you are surprised and happy
Well done!	You say this to sb when you are happy because they have done sth well. SYN Congratulations!
the rest	the part that is left or remains: the rest of the day/time
feel like (doing) sth	want (to do) sth: I feel like a nice cold drink.
take care of sth/sb	do everything to make sth/sb safe: I can take care of the children while you go shopping. SYN look after sth/sb
I guess so	= I think so SYN I suppose so
let sb know	tell sb
Come on!	used for telling sb to hurry, be quick SYN hurry up!
right now	at this minute; immediately SYN right away

5 Find eight more expressions using words from each box.

somewhere ✓ let come hurry
the rest I guess well right

on! up so done
me know now of the time else ✓

► somewhere else

6 Complete the dialogues.

- We need to go right away or we'll be late ~ Yes, let's go.
- 1 You had all the biscuits. ~ Sorry, there was _____ else to eat.
- 2 Do you feel _____ a drink? ~ Yes, let's go out.
- 3 Do we need to get ready now? ~ Yes, right _____, so _____ up!
- 4 _____ what? I came first in the English exam. ~ _____! Well _____!
- 5 Are you staying? ~ Yes, I'm going to look _____ the two girls.
- 6 Are you staying at Jon's? ~ Yes, I _____ so. I'll _____ you know at the weekend.
- 7 Why are you going back to the flat? ~ Because there's nowhere _____ to go.

7 Rewrite the sentences using the word in CAPITALS. The meaning must stay the same.

- We need to go right now. AWAY We need to go right away.
- 1 The bar was busy, so we went to another place. ELSE _____
- 2 Could you tell me later? LATER _____
- 3 Who is going to look after the children? TAKE _____
- 4 Come on, Sacha! HURRY _____
- 5 Do you want to go out? FEEL _____
- 6 Penny is here. All the others went out. EVERYONE _____



TEST YOURSELF

Vocabulary building

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level.

The words in blue are people.



TEST YOURSELF

cover one column, and say the word or words in the other column.

1 Verbs and nouns

Verb	Noun(s)
act	actor, actress
advertise	advert/advertisement, advertising
agree	agreement
appear	appearance
argue	argument
arrange	arrangement
arrive	arrival
begin	beginning
build	building, builder
choose	choice
clean	cleaner
climb	climbing
collect	collection
complain	complaint
cook	cooker
dance	dance, dancing, dancer
decide	decision
depart	departure
describe	description
design	designer
disagree	disagreement
discover	discovery
discuss	discussion
draw	drawing
drive	driving, driver
educate	education
employ	employer, employee
enter	entrance
examine	exam/examination
explain	explanation
fail	failure
farm	farming, farmer
feel	feeling
fly	flight, flying
greet	greeting
grow	growth
hear	hearing
improve	improvement
instruct	instruction, instructor
invent	invention
invite	invitation
listen	listening, listener
manage	manager

mean	meaning
meet	meeting
move	movement
organize	organization
own	owner
park	parking
pay	payment
perform	performance, performer
play	player
prefer	preference
print	printer
pronounce	pronunciation
read	reading, reader
recommend	recommendation
record	record, recording
report	report, reporter
reserve	reservation
respond	response
ride	riding, rider
run	run, running, runner
serve	service
sign	signature
sing	song, singer
smoke	smoke, smoking
solve	solution
speak	speaking, speaker
spell	spelling
study	study, student
succeed	success
suggest	suggestion
swim	swim, swimming
teach	teaching, teacher
think	thinking, thought
travel	travelling, travel, traveller
visit	visiting, visitor
walk	walk, walking
wash	wash, washing
weigh	weight
win	winner
work	working, worker

2 Adjectives and nouns

Adjective	Noun(s)
attractive	attraction
beautiful	beauty
cloudy	cloud
cold	cold
crowded	crowd
dangerous	danger
different	difference
direct	direction
electric, electrical	electricity

excited, exciting
friendly, unfriendly
happy, unhappy
healthy, unhealthy
icy
ill
 industrial
intelligent
long
lucky, unlucky
medical
musical
national
natural
noisy
 painful
 peaceful
personal
possible, impossible
 scientific
strong
sunny
surprised, surprising
true
various
wide
windy
wooden
young

excitement
friend
 happiness
health
ice
illness
industry
 intelligence
 length
 luck
medicine
music
nationality
nature
noise
pain
peace
person
possibility
science, scientist
 strength
sun
surprise
 truth
variety
 width
wind
wood
 youth

3 Verbs and nouns with the same form

The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Elementary level in both noun and verb form.

answer
brush
call
cause
 change
chat
circle
comment
control
 cook
copy
cost
 cough
cut
 dance
 download
dream
drink
email
 fall
guess

guide
help
 hope
increase
interview
 jump
land
 laugh
look
love
matter
name
 need
offer
phone
plan
plant
post
promise
 queue
 rain

record
 repair
reply
 request
 research
rest
 ride
 ring
score
search
 share
 shave
smell
smile
snow
star
start
stay
 taste
text
 tour

use
 visit
 wash
 work
 worry

4 Nouns, verbs and adjectives

Noun	Verb	Adjective(s)
death	die	dead
employment	employ	employed, unemployed
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable
excitement	excite	exciting, excited
help	help	helpful
interest	interest	interested, interesting
marriage	marry/ get married	married
organization	organize	organized
pollution	pollute	polluted
sleep	sleep	asleep
speaking, speaker	speak	spoken
surprise	surprise	surprised, surprising
writing, writer	write	written
worry	worry	worried , worrying
reading, reader	read	reading

5 Verbs and adjectives

Verb	Adjective(s)
boil	boiled , boiling
bore	bored , boring
break	broken
clean	clean
close	closed
complete	complete
correct	correct
empty	empty
include	included, including
lose	lost
open	open
relax	relaxed , relaxing
shut	shut
sleep	asleep
speak	spoken
tidy	tidy
tire	tired , tiring
wake up	awake

Common irregular verbs

be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	felt	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left

lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shake	shook	shaken
shine	shone	shone
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake (up)	woke (up)	woken (up)
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Answer key

Unit 1

- 1 You can put these things in a bag: pencil, notice, CD player, coursebook, dictionary, piece of paper. You can't put these in a bag: desk, table, chair, noticeboard.
- 2

1 board pen	4 exercise book
2 coursebook	5 piece of paper
3 noticeboard	6 CD player
- 3

1 a whiteboard/board	5 a noticeboard
2 a dictionary	6 a CD
3 a desk/table	7 a bag
4 a notebook / an exercise book	8 a coursebook
- 4 possible answers:
I've got a dictionary, a CD player, a desk and a pen. I haven't got a noticeboard, a board, a board pen or a notice.

Unit 2

- 1

1 indefinite	5 pronouns
2 noun	6 verbs
3 preposition	7 adverbs
4 an irregular	8 past participle
- 2

1 I	9 asked
2 an	10 This morning
3 lesson	11 class
4 young	12 think/'s
5 from/in	13 wrong
6 a	14 I/he
7 quietly	15 I think he's in the wrong class.
8 spoke	
- 3

1 preposition	6 indefinite article
2 definite article	7 adjective
3 noun	8 noun
4 verb (past tense)	9 pronoun
5 preposition	10 verb (past tense)

Unit 3

- 1
 - 1 third
 - 2 Circle
 - 3 sentence
 - 4 small/little
 - 5 possible answers:
wonderful/marvellous/great
 - 6 mistake
 - 7 thanks
 - 8 false
 - 9 is
 - 10 yes
 - 11 wrong
 - 12 do
- 2

1 d	2 a	3 e	4 b
-----	-----	-----	-----

- 3
 - 1 for example
 - 2 yes/correct/right
 - 3 informal
 - 4 synonym
 - 5 equals / is the same as
 - 6 etcetera / and so on
- 4
 - 1 etc.
 - 2 missing
 - 3 order
 - 4 wrong
 - 5 symbol; the same as
 - 6 mistakes; corrects
 - 7 test; cover
 - 8 short form
 - 9 match
 - 10 informal
 - 11 false
 - 12 error
 - 13 columns
 - 14 underline
 - 15 circle

Unit 4

- 1

1 helped	5 pronounce
2 loud	6 situation
3 record	7 use
4 down	8 things
- 2
 - 1 out loud
 - 2 notebook; keep
 - 3 meaning
 - 4 use
 - 5 situations
- 3
 - 1 To practise the pronunciation. / To practise how to pronounce them.
 - 2 In a notebook.
 - 3 To keep a record.
 - 4 In English or your own language.
 - 5 To help you to understand how to use the word.
 - 6 Think of situations where you can use the word.
- 4

1 f	2 g	3 a	4 d	5 b	6 e
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
- 5

1 called	5 wrong/not right
2 like	6 opposite
3 How do	7 does
4 between	8 explain
- 6 possible answers:
 - 1 What does this word mean?
 - 2 How do you spell this word?
 - 3 How do you say this in English?
 - 4 Could you explain this word?
 - 5 What's the opposite of this word?
 - 6 What's this called in English?

Unit 5

- 1 1 e 3 b 5 a 7 d
2 i 4 h 6 f 8 g

2 explanation; description; guess;
instruction; invention; practice; education

- 3 1 repeat 5 compared
2 homework 6 do; forgot
3 guess 7 made; up
4 practise 8 described

- 4 1 text 5 an essay
2 paragraph 6 context
3 dialogue 7 discussion
4 activities 8 simple

- 5 1 revise 5 dialogue
2 looked; up 6 activity
3 conversation 7 simple
4 exercises 8 essay

6 possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 Twice a day. I usually read the news in the morning and in the evening, or sometimes I read something for my English class.
- 2 Yes, because looking up words in a dictionary would take a long time.
- 3 Not very often – only when I am preparing for an exam.
- 4 Only before tests. I know I should do it more regularly but I don't have time for that.
- 5 Discussing things in groups in class, and watching videos or my favourite series outside class.
- 6 I like listening to dialogues several times. It helps me with pronunciation and understanding conversation in English. I think they help if I know a word already and hear it again.

Unit 6

- 1 1 eight 6 six
2 twenty 7 thirteen
3 sixty-seven 8 seventy-two
4 fifty 9 twenty-four
5 thirty-five 10 eighty-nine

- 2 1 about/around a hundred euros
2 about/around ten lessons
3 about/around thirty years
4 about/around forty students
5 about/around fifty dollars
6 about/around eighty people
7 about/around seventy pounds
8 about/around twenty chairs

- 3 1 twenty-nine 4 thirty-one
2 seventy-seven 5 twenty-four
3 sixty-three 6 forty-five

- 5 1 two hundred
2 three hundred and forty
3 one thousand five hundred
4 two thousand six hundred and fifty
5 seven thousand
6 42,500
- 6 1 a/one thousand
2 five thousand and fifty-six
3 eleven thousand three hundred and one
4 a/one million
5 two thousand five hundred
6 three hundred and twenty-five thousand
7 a/one billion
8 two thousand
- 7 1 They said it was thousands of dollars.
2 It's about/around fifty minutes.
3 There are thousands (of them).
4 I bought about/around twenty books.
5 We want to grow hundreds of trees.
6 There are millions of people with this problem.

Unit 7

- 1 1 nine fifteen 5 five fifty
2 ten twenty-five 6 seven twenty
3 three thirty-five 7 two thirty
4 six forty-five 8 four forty

- 2 1 (a) quarter past seven
2 half past nine
3 twenty-five to twelve
4 ten to four
5 five to nine
6 three minutes past one
7 (a) quarter to three
8 seventeen minutes past four

- 3 1 At five past eight.
2 At eight forty-five/(a) quarter to nine.
3 At two minutes past nine.
4 At nine thirty-five/twenty-five to ten.
5 At ten past ten.

4 possible answers for England:

- 1 They usually open at 9.00 and they close at 5.00.
- 2 Supermarkets usually open at 8.00, and other shops usually open at 9.00 or 9.30. They usually close between 5.30 and 7.00.
- 3 Restaurants in England are often open all day from 12.00 p.m. to 10.00 p.m.
- 4 Most schools start at half past eight or nine o'clock and finish at three o'clock. Most people start work at 9 a.m. and finish at 5 p.m.
- 5 I have lunch at about 12.30.
- 6 I have dinner at around 7.00 p.m.

- 5 1 S 4 S 7 S 10 S
2 D 5 S 8 D 11 D
3 S 6 D 9 S 12 S

- 6 1 just 6 at
2 almost/nearly 7 all
3 at 8 almost/nearly
4 midday/noon 9 just
5 in 10 all
- 7 1 at midday 6 at midnight
2 in the morning 7 at night
3 all day 8 almost/nearly 8.00
4 in the evening 9 just before
5 all evening

Unit 8

- 1 1 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday, Sunday
2 spring, summer, autumn, winter
3 January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December
- 3 1 Tuesday 6 April
2 September 7 February
3 summer 8 winter
4 December 9 Thursday
5 Saturday 10 July
- 4 possible answers:
1 September.
2 I like spring because it's light and the trees and plants start to grow.
3 Friday, because it's nearly the weekend.
4 I go and see my family, and we have a big lunch together.
5 New Year's Day is a holiday. My family and I go for a long walk.
6 May 1st is a public holiday for people who work, and in March or April we have Easter Sunday.
- 5 1 third 6 sixteenth
2 twentieth 7 fourteenth
3 fifth 8 thirteenth
4 first 9 second
5 eighth
- 6 1 April the tenth/the tenth of April
2 March the fourth/the fourth of March
3 April the seventeenth/the seventeenth of April
4 March the twenty-first/the twenty-first of March
5 April the eleventh/the eleventh of April
6 April the sixth/the sixth of April
7 March the thirty-first/the thirty-first of March
8 April the twenty-third/the twenty-third of April
- 7 1 February the third/the third of February
2 July the fourth/the fourth of July
3 December the tenth/the tenth of December
4 August the twelfth/the twelfth of August
5 January the fifteenth/the fifteenth of January
6 twenty twenty-two/two thousand and twenty-two
7 May the twenty-first/the twenty-first of May

- 8 November the thirtieth/the thirtieth of November
9 April the twenty-second/the twenty-second of April
10 twenty fifteen/two thousand and fifteen
11 *your answer*
12 *your answer*

Unit 9

- 1 1 F – I got back six days ago.
2 T
3 F – I paid it **two** days ago.
4 T
5 F – I was in **Moscow**.
6 F – I'm going to the cinema **this evening**.
7 T
8 F – I'm seeing Scott in **five** days.
9 T
10 T
- 2 1 ago 4 this
2 diary 5 appointment
3 night 6 next
- 3 1 I went to the cinema
2 I had a meeting/I went to Wheeler's café
3 I stayed at Will's/I went to Will's
4 I've got a doctor's appointment
5 It's Callum's birthday
6 I'm seeing my parents/Mum and Dad for lunch
- 4 1 since 3 for 5 since
2 for 4 for 6 since
- 5 1 just 5 recently
2 while 6 yet
3 ever 7 ever
4 since 8 recently; for
- 6 1 yet 5 ever
2 already 6 yet
3 just 7 while
4 recently 8 since

Unit 10

- 1 **Two:** feet, ears, knees, shoulders, legs, hands, ankles, arms
- 2 1 shoulder
2 stomach
3 neck
4 bottom
5 blood
6 teeth
7 finger
- 3 1 skin 7 teeth
2 nose 8 chest
3 back 9 blood
4 chin 10 brain
5 face 11 bottom
6 head/hand 12 stomach

- | | | |
|---|-----|------|
| 4 | 1 S | 6 D |
| | 2 S | 7 S |
| | 3 D | 8 D |
| | 4 S | 9 D |
| | 5 S | 10 S |
-
- | | | |
|---|----------|-------------|
| 5 | 1 arm | 4 neck |
| | 2 bottom | 5 eyes/ears |
| | 3 foot | 6 leg/knee |
-
- | | | |
|---|---------------|----------|
| 6 | 1 eye | 8 skin |
| | 2 toes | 9 leg |
| | 3 finger | 10 blood |
| | 4 bottom | 11 heart |
| | 5 hair | 12 brain |
| | 6 tooth/teeth | 13 bone |
| | 7 waist | 14 body |

Unit 11

- 1 1 F – 'average height' means not tall and not short.
2 F – 'quite thin' means not very thin, but thinner than average.
3 T
4 T
5 F – the answer to 'How much does he weigh' is 60kg (for example).
6 T
7 F – 'average weight' means not heavy and not slim.
8 F – 'slim' is more positive than 'thin'.
9 T
10 F – 'height' describes how tall somebody is, 'weight' describes how heavy somebody is.
- 2 1 height 6 weighs
2 slim 7 short
3 fat 8 lost
4 quite 9 much
5 put on 10 quite
- 3 1 T
2 F – she's got blonde hair.
3 F – it's long.
4 F – the young man is handsome/good-looking.
5 T
6 F – The woman's got fair hair.
7 T
8 T
9 F – he's middle aged.
10 F – it's grey.
- 4 1 pretty 10 handsome
2 dark 11 grey
3 smile 12 blonde
4 features 13 beautiful
5 teenager 14 attractive
6 good-looking 15 teenage
7 straight 16 fair
8 beard 17 curly
9 middle-aged 18 good-looking

- 5 possible answers:
I'm a middle aged woman with short dark curly hair. I'm quite attractive.
I think all of the young people are attractive, but I don't like beards. The middle-aged man has a nice smile, but I think he's put on weight.

Unit 12

- | | | |
|---|-------------|------------|
| 1 | 1 lie down | 5 sit down |
| | 2 fall over | 6 get on |
| | 3 ride | 7 run |
| | 4 stand up | |
-
- 2 1 dance
2 sit down/lie down
3 fall over
4 ride
5 get on
 - 3 1 stand up 6 jumped
2 walk 7 rode
3 climb 8 ran; fell
4 dance 9 got off; on
5 lie down/sit down
 - 4 1 a door
2 a ball
3 a book
4 a person
5 a dictionary
6 a pencil
7 a bicycle
 - 5 1 pick up a cup 1; drop a cup 1
2 pick up a TV 2; turn on a TV 1
3 break a bottle 1; open a bottle 2
4 pull a person 2; carry a person 2
5 throw a ball 1; catch a ball 1 or 2
6 drop a ruler 1; break a ruler 2
7 carry a door 2; close a door 1
8 pick up a baby 2; hold a baby 2
 - 6 1 closed/shut
2 picked up; put it down
3 dropped
4 pulled; carried/pushed
5 gave; held
6 threw
7 carry

Unit 13

- 1 1 I need some personal information.
2 Where do you come from?
3 What do you do?
4 What is your postcode?
5 How old are you?
6 Where is the receptionist from?
- 2 1 Where do you come from?
2 Where in Poland exactly?
3 What do you do?
4 What's your address?
5 How old are you?

- 3 1 first
2 from
3 Whereabouts
4 What's
5 postcode
6 do
7 married
8 old

4 possible answers:

ABOUT YOU
Gomez.
Alicia.
I'm from Spain.
From Sevilla.
Yes, it's Gaspar Perez 27 Sta Clara, Sevilla.
41007.
I'm a history teacher.
Yes, I am.
I'm 34.

- 5 1 F – 'perfect' means so good it cannot be better.
2 T
3 F – 'improve' means become better.
4 T
5 F – a language course is a number of lessons.
Your language level is how good you are at the language.
6 T
7 F – 'how long?' means 'how much time?'
8 T

- 6 1 improving
2 level
3 can communicate very well
4 abroad
5 planning
6 great/wonderful
7 progress
8 help (people)

7 possible answers:

- 1 I'm elementary level.
2 It's difficult, and I can only understand a little.
3 Yes, I want to improve for my job, and my girlfriend is English.
4 Yes, slowly.
5 Yes, to England to visit my girlfriend's family.
6 Yes, I'd like a job in London to improve my English.

Unit 14

- 1 1 daughter 7 husband
2 nephew 8 grandmother
3 niece 9 uncle
4 sister-in-law 10 aunt
5 cousin 11 relatives
6 grandparents

2

MALE	FEMALE	MALE	FEMALE
father	mother	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
brother	sister	grandfather	grandmother
husband	wife	grandson	granddaughter
nephew	niece	cousin	cousin
relative	relative	parent	parent
son	daughter	uncle	aunt

3 your own answers

- 4 1 F – they are married.
2 T
3 F – he's older than Karen.
4 T
5 T
6 F – Luke is Amy's boyfriend.
7 F – there are 5 in Damon's family.
8 T
9 T
10 F – Luke is Damon's brother.
5 1 I was born in 2001.
2 We spend a lot of time together.
3 My girlfriend is older than me.
4 There are six of us in my family.
5 I am the youngest in my family.
6 I've got an older brother and a younger sister.
OR an older sister and a younger brother.

6 possible answers:

- 1 There are five of us.
2 1999.
3 I've got two sisters: one is three years older than me, and the other is two years younger than me.
4 I spend a lot of time with my younger sister because she goes out with my best friend, Ben.
5 No, my older sister is married and lives with her husband.

Unit 15

- 1 1 nice 5 friendly
2 funny 6 patient
3 clever 8 laugh
4 strange 9 relaxed
2 1 unfriendly 5 funny
2 intelligent 6 patient
3 stupid 7 relaxed
4 clever/intelligent

- 3 1 laugh
2 like; fun; strange
3 What; kind; clever/intelligent
- 4 *possible answers:*
My mother is very kind.
My cousin Lucia is very friendly.
My teacher Mrs Amato is very patient with me.
Dino, my boyfriend, is good fun.
My friend Alicia is very intelligent.
Mr Fideo, my neighbour upstairs, is quite strange.
- 5 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 S
- 6 1 T
2 F – they're completely different.
3 T
4 T
5 F – Sophie's quite lazy.
6 T
7 F – she's tidy.
8 F – it didn't matter.
- 7 1 own
2 life
3 share
4 matter
5 completely/really
6 other
- 8 *possible answers:*
1 I'm very tidy, but my wife is really untidy.
2 I'm hard-working some of the time!
3 Yes, I'm really quiet. I don't like a lot of noise.
4 No, I'm not very serious.
5 Yes, I've got a lot of friends and I go out quite often.
6 No, I don't.

Unit 16

- 1 get to know somebody, ex-boyfriend, get married, go out with somebody, have a baby, romantic relationship
- 2 1 They had a baby last year.
2 They separated in January.
3 We have a very good relationship.
4 How did you get to know your boyfriend?/
How did your boyfriend get to know you?
5 They were together for three years.
6 I went out with him for six months.
- 3 1 got; wife
2 got; together
3 couple
4 out; separated
5 ex-
6 divorced; partner/girlfriend; get
- 4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

- 5 1 advice
2 each
3 old; known
4 get
5 met
6 known; see
7 meeting
8 flatmate; best, personalities
- 6 *possible answers:*
1 A man called Noah.
2 About 20 years.
3 At work.
4 About once a week, because we don't work together now.
5 He's good fun and we laugh at the same things.
6 Yes, he gives me good advice if I have a problem. I'm not as good at giving advice as he is.

Unit 17

- 1 1 angry 4 scared 7 afraid
2 worried 5 embarrassed 8 surprised
3 bored 6 unhappy 9 excited
- 2 1 emotions 4 scared
2 bored 5 in love
3 sad 6 embarrassed
- 3 1 worried
2 surprised
3 excited
4 felt; embarrassed
5 happy
6 bored
7 afraid/scared
8 love
9 emotions/feelings
- 4 1 upset
2 nervous
3 thirsty
4 hungry
5 in pain
6 pleased
7 sorry
- 5 1 nervous 5 argument; argue
2 tired 6 sorry
3 pleased 7 thirsty
4 pain 8 upset; crying
- 6 *possible answers:*
1 I felt tired when I got up this morning.
2 I felt nervous before my exam last week.
3 I felt hungry an hour ago.
4 I felt thirsty during the night.
5 I argued with my boyfriend on Saturday.
6 I was in pain last week when I fell over.
7 I cried a couple of weeks ago when I saw a very sad film.
8 I felt pleased when I finished work on Friday afternoon.

Unit 18

- 1 1 2020 6 midnight
2 Friday 7 the autumn
3 April 8 winter
4 the morning 9 lunchtime
5 4.00 10 the evening

- 2 1 at 3 in 5 On 7 in 9 At
2 at 4 in 6 in 8 at 10 on

- 3 possible answers:
I get up **at** seven o'clock.
I study English **on** Tuesday and Thursday evenings.
I go swimming **in** the summer.
I usually go out with friends **at** the weekend.
I watch TV **in** the evenings.
I go to bed **at** about eleven o'clock.
My birthday is **on** 6th June.
I was born **in** 1997.
We have public holidays **on** Christmas Day, **on** New Year's Day, **on** May Day (in early May), and several other days.

Unit 19

- 1 1 trees
2 motorway
3 river
4 shop
5 church
6 gate
7 mountain
8 field
9 building
- 2 1 under 4 towards 7 out of
2 into 5 past 8 down
3 up 6 through 9 across

- 3 1 across/over/under
2 across/over
3 through
4 along
5 past

- 4 your own answers

Unit 20

- 1 1 in 8 on
2 on 9 on
3 at 10 in
4 in 11 on
5 in 12 at
6 on 13 on
7 in 14 at
- 2 1 in 5 on
2 in 6 in
3 on 7 at
4 on 8 at; at; in

- 3 possible answers:

- 1 I live in a town.
2 I live in a house.
3 Yes, it's the River Ebro.
4 My bedroom is on the first floor.
5 I've got lots of pictures and lights on the wall.
6 Yes, I do.
7 Yes, but not often.
8 At school.

- 4 1 T
2 T
3 T
4 F – the people are in front of the garage.
5 T
6 F – the gate is between the house and the garage.
7 F – the children are in front of Mum and Dad.
8 T
9 T
10 T

- 5 1 next to 5 near
2 in front of 6 in front of
3 in front of 7 next to
4 between 8 behind

- 6 possible answers:
1 There's another house.
2 There's a garden and a hill.
3 Another house.
4 No, there aren't.
5 My parents' bedroom.
6 The dining room.
7 A bathroom.
8 Yes, a tree.

Unit 21

- 1 1 night
2 pencil
3 book
4 apple
5 milk
6 sky
7 mountain
- 2 1 at the top
2 at the back
3 at the bottom
4 At first
5 at the front
6 at the end
7 in the middle
8 in the end
9 on the other side
10 At the start/beginning
11 At first; In the end

- 3 **AT:** least, the same time, the time, the moment
ON: holiday, time, the phone
IN: fact, prison, hospital

- 4 1 at the same time
 2 on holiday
 3 at the moment
 4 in hospital
 5 At least
 6 on time
 7 at school/university

- 5 1 at the time 5 in prison
 2 in hospital 6 in fact/actually
 3 at least 7 at university
 4 by the end of 8 on his phone

Unit 22

- 1 1 good at
 2 I agree.
 3 depends on
 4 bored with
 5 Do you ask your parents for money?
 6 care about
 7 live with
 8 interested in speaking

- 2 1 thank; present/gift 4 spent
 2 cares 5 interested
 3 depends 6 ask

- 3 1 with 4 for 7 at
 2 for 5 on 8 with
 3 in 6 about 9 with

4 **possible answers:**

I live with my wife.
 I sometimes ask my parents for advice, but I don't think I depend on them.
 No, I never ask them for money.
 Yes, I usually agree with them.
 No, I don't spend much on clothes.
 I don't really care about making money, but I would quite like a bit more.
 I almost always thank people for presents.
 I'm interested in sailing, photography and going to the theatre.
 I'm quite good at photography, and I'm good at my job.
 I get bored with things like housework.

- 5 1 f 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 d

- 6 1 at 4 about 7 about
 2 for 5 on 8 of
 3 for 6 for 9 of

- 7 1 based 3 pay 5 applied
 2 heard 4 noticed 6 think

8 **possible answers:**

Yes, I listen to the radio when I have my breakfast.
 No, that's not true. I don't like social media.
 No, that's not true. I usually notice what people are wearing.
 Yes, I like films based on true stories.
 I like furniture made of wood very much.
 I don't like waiting for buses. I don't take taxis, so I don't pay for them.
 I applied for a job in the summer and I got it.
 I think about the future a lot, more than the past.

Unit 23

- 1 1 D 3 D 5 S
 2 S 4 D 6 D

- 2 1 get up
 2 have a shower
 3 get dressed
 4 I arrive at
 5 I finish/leave work
 6 I have/eat dinner
 7 go to bed
 8 usually sleep
 9 daily routine is

- 3 1 get 5 arrive at/get to
 2 have 6 dinner
 3 have/eat 7 go
 4 leave 8 sleep

4 **possible answers:**

1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.
 2 Yes, before breakfast.
 3 In the kitchen.
 4 I leave home at about 7.15.
 5 I get to work at 8.00.
 6 I have dinner with my husband.
 7 I go to bed at about 11.30.
 8 I sleep for about six or seven hours a night.

- 5 1 Do you often do the shopping?
 2 He is never late for school.
 3 We sometimes get up early and play tennis.
 4 Do you always go shopping at the weekend?
 5 Martha often goes out during the week.
 6 I see my sister once or twice a week.

- 6 1 stay 4 go 7 during
 2 go 5 do 8 once
 3 play 6 at 9 twice

7 **possible answers:**

1 F – I **sometimes** play tennis in the summer, but in the winter too.
 2 F – In my family, I **often** do the shopping, or my sister does.
 3 F – I **never** go for a long walk during the week.
 4 F – I **often** play video games at the weekend.
 5 F – I **often** have dinner with my family.
 6 F – **At the weekend**, I go out a lot.
 7 T
 8 F – I **sometimes** go shopping with a friend.

Unit 24

- | | |
|------------|------------|
| 1 jacket | 8 pocket |
| 2 trousers | 9 jeans |
| 3 jumper | 10 tie |
| 4 button | 11 shirt |
| 5 coat | 12 skirt |
| 6 T-shirt | 13 shorts |
| 7 dress | 14 sweater |

- 2 1 Megan
2 Enzo
3 Osman
4 Milla
5 Megan
6 Enzo
7 Milla
8 Osman
9 Milla, Enzo and Megan
10 Kim
11 Enzo and Osman
12 Milla, Osman, Kim, Megan
13 Enzo and Megan
14 no

- 3 **WHOLE BODY:** suit, dress, coat, uniform
ABOVE THE WAIST: top, tie, T-shirt, shirt, jumper
BELOW THE WAIST: trousers, skirt, shorts, jeans

- 4 1 skirts; dresses
2 put your coat on
3 trousers; jeans
4 hot
5 a uniform
6 an item of clothing

- | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|
| 5 1 D | 4 S | 7 D |
| 2 S | 5 D | 8 D |
| 3 D | 6 S | 9 D |

- 6 *possible answers:*
1 I'm wearing a blue T-shirt, a pair of jeans and a jacket.
2 It was Sunday, so I wore a dress. I also put my coat on when I went out.
3 I wear jeans and sweaters a lot at the weekends, but if I'm going out, I often wear a skirt and top, or a dress.
4 I don't go to parties very often, but I usually wear a dress.
5 Yes, I worked in a restaurant when I was younger and I wore a uniform. I didn't like it!

Unit 25

- 1 1 T
2 F – glasses are made of glass, plastic or metal.
3 T
4 F – you can carry an umbrella.
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F – people usually wear one scarf.

- | | |
|----------------|------------|
| 2 1 socks | 6 glasses |
| 2 hat | 7 scarf |
| 3 ring | 8 watch |
| 4 boots/socks | 9 umbrella |
| 5 tights/socks | 10 handbag |

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 3 1 S | 3 S | 5 S | 7 D |
| 2 D | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- 4 1 Give me the sock. 5 She's got my scarf.
2 not possible 6 Where is my shoe?
3 I've got one pair of 7 not possible
trainers. 8 not possible
4 Where's my glove?
- 5 a gold necklace; a watch; a pair of leather boots;
a pair of trainers; a pair of gloves; a leather belt;
a pair of tights; a plastic ring

- 6 *possible answers:*
1 I always wear a watch, a ring and a necklace.
2 I never wear socks or a hat.
3 Yes, I wear them a lot.
4 I wear glasses for reading and I often wear sunglasses when I'm driving.
5 I wear jewellery every day and I always wear a watch, but I take it off when I go to bed. I never wear a hat. I sometimes wear a scarf in the winter.

Unit 26

- 1 red, green, pink, purple, orange, grey, dark blue, cream, brown, light blue, black, yellow, white
- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| 2 1 purple | 4 pink | 7 brown |
| 2 light blue | 5 grey | 8 cream |
| 3 green | 6 dark blue | 9 colours |

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 3 1 uncomfortable | 4 long |
| 2 expensive | 5 cheap |
| 3 small | 6 comfortable |

- 4 1 a short blue skirt
2 comfortable brown shoes
3 a large orange handbag
4 a long red skirt
5 uncomfortable red shoes
6 an expensive purple tie
7 a small green handbag

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 1 S | 3 D | 5 S | 7 D |
| 2 S | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- 6 1 take/am/'m
2 style
3 wrong
4 take
5 fit; too
6 look/are
7 size; too
8 great/lovely/nice; great/lovely/nice
9 fit; too
10 right
11 appearance

Unit 27

- 1 1 T
2 F – the total is £60.
3 F – you have got enough.
4 T
5 F – they cost the same.
6 T
7 T
- 2 1 cash 6 -dollar
2 purse 7 dollars
3 credit card 8 total
4 coins 9 enough
5 cost 10 each
- 3 possible answers:
1 Yes, I usually have about €80. I need it because I often buy food when I'm out.
2 I keep it in my purse. Sometimes I just have money in my pocket.
3 Yes, I have enough for a coffee and a book, but not jewellery.
4 If I'm not buying many things, I pay in cash, but if I buy a lot, I pay by debit card.
- 4 1 price 6 online
2 spend 7 earn
3 saved 8 sold
4 won 9 bill
5 price 10 off
- 5 1 bought 3 sold 5 won
2 spent 4 earned 6 paid
- 6 1 online 5 sale
2 bills 6 earn/spend
3 free 7 products
4 price 8 prize
- 7 possible answers:
1 Yes, I sometimes buy books online.
2 No, I don't. I usually use my debit card.
3 It's usually free, yes.
4 It's about £1.
5 No, I don't like sales very much.
6 No, in general they earn less than men.
7 They buy DVDs and books, I think.
8 Yes, I won a prize at school – it was an art book.

Unit 28

- 1 1 chemist's 5 medicine
2 pharmacy 6 clothes shop
3 department store 7 present
4 shopping centre 8 electrical store
- 2 bookshop, department store, clothes shop, pharmacy, supermarket, electrical store, furniture shop, everything, medicine, except
- 3 1 toyshop 4 fruit and vegetable shop
2 gift shop 5 music shop
3 furniture shop 6 chemist's

- 4 1 baker's/supermarket
2 toy shop/department store/shopping centre/gift shop
3 gift shop/department store/shopping centre/music shop
4 music shop/shopping centre
5 chemist's/pharmacy/supermarket
6 shoe shop/department store
7 furniture shop/department store
8 clothes shop/department store
9 electrical store/shopping centre/department store
- 5 1 two things
2 to
3 the shoes on
4 of two things
5 personal
6 online
7 DVD
8 the price
9 somebody's face
- 6 1 d 3 h 5 e 7 c
2 a 4 g 6 b
- 7 1 prefer 5 try; on
2 choose 6 online
3 service 7 sales
4 particular 8 touch
- 8 possible answers:
1 I like both of them, but I prefer small shops for meat and fish.
2 No, it's difficult to choose. I often make mistakes.
3 Yes, it is.
4 I prefer comfortable shoes.
5 No, sometimes I buy clothes online and try them on at home. I can always send them back.
6 I prefer to go to the shops, but sometimes it's easier and cheaper online.
7 The sales are usually in January, and also in the summer.
8 Yes, I like to touch clothes.

Unit 29

- 1 1 recipe
2 memory
3 diary
4 camera
5 possession
- 2 1 camera 5 voice
2 recipes 6 diary
3 possessions 7 recordings
4 gun 8 memory
- 3 1 any more 5 gun
2 tool 6 voice
3 recipe 7 belongs
4 memories 8 possessions

4 possible answers:

- 1 I've got some very old books that belonged to my grandfather, and my father's watch.
- 2 Yes, I really enjoyed school. I had a lot of friends, and the teachers were very good.
- 3 I use the camera on my mobile phone because I always have it with me.
- 4 I've got a recording of my mother and sister on my phone. They're singing and laughing.

5 1 F – Clothes are made of material.

- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F – an alarm clock is usually made of plastic or metal.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F – if something is unusual, you don't see it often, or it doesn't happen often.
- 8 F – an electric fan is useful if it's very hot.
- 9 T

6 1 I use my mobile as an alarm clock in the mornings.

- 2 My desk is made of **wood** and is very old.
- 3 What **shape** is the table? ~ I think it's round.
- 4 He's got a very **unusual** alarm clock – it's made of wood.
- 5 The garden chairs are made of white **plastic** and they're very hard.
- 6 A computer is made of **metal** and plastic.
- 7 What do you call the **device** that turns the TV on and off?

7 possible answers:

- 1 My dining room table is round.
- 2 No, I use a real alarm clock.
- 3 My desk is made of wood, and the computer, keyboard and printer are plastic and metal. There are some pencils made of wood too. And the lamp is made of plastic, I think.
- 4 Yes, I've got a digital TV.
- 5 I use an electric fan in the summer.

Unit 30

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 S | 3 S | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D | 4 D | 6 S | 8 D |

- | | |
|--------|-------|
| 2 1 No | 5 No |
| 2 Yes | 6 Yes |
| 3 Yes | 7 No |
| 4 Yes | 8 No |

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 3 1 found/discovered | 5 killed |
| 2 area/part | 6 crimes |
| 3 named | 7 series/number |
| 4 attacked | 8 alive |

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 4 1 D | 3 D | 5 D | 7 D |
| 2 S | 4 D | 6 S | 8 S |

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 5 1 find | 4 think |
| 2 team/group | 5 people |
| 3 important | 6 happens |

- 6 1 late
- 2 statement
- 3 danger
- 4 searching

- 5 major
- 6 believe
- 7 happen
- 8 public

Unit 31

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1 1 What's | 8 feel |
| 2 's got | 9 feel |
| 3 feel | 10 a common |
| 4 've got | 11 's |
| 5 a headache | 12 flu |
| 6 Has | 13 haven't got |
| 7 healthy | 14 Has he got |

- 2 1 cough; unhealthy
- 2 temperature
- 3 matter; well; toothache
- 4 stomach ache
- 5 sick
- 6 flu
- 7 health
- 8 illness; common
- 9 cold

- | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 3 1 S | 2 D | 3 S | 4 D | 5 D | 6 D |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

- 4 1 F – If you get better, you feel less ill.
- 2 F – A couple of weeks is about 2 weeks.
- 3 T
- 4 F – If you don't sleep for a week, you feel weak.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F – You should keep warm if you have flu.
- 8 F – If you stay in bed, you don't get up.
- 9 T
- 10 T

- 5 1 stayed
- 2 couple
- 3 get better/improve
- 4 advice
- 5 tablets/pills
- 6 should
- 7 chemist's/pharmacy
- 8 rest
- 9 keep
- 10 getting
- 11 weak

Unit 32

- 1 1 hurts/hurt (present or past both possible)
- 2 cut
- 3 accident
- 4 broken
- 5 drugs
- 6 injury
- 7 pain
- 8 cut
- 9 serious

- 2 1 She had a pain in her arm.
2 He had a serious injury.
3 I hit my head on the door.
4 I knocked my head on the wall.
5 I burnt my mouth on the hot soup.
6 She cut her foot on the broken glass.
7 My arm hurts a lot.
8 The doctor gave me some drugs for the pain.
9 I broke / have broken a bone in my ankle.

- 3 1 broken
2 drugs
3 pain(s)
4 your
5 burnt/cut

4 possible answers:

- 1 I broke my arm when I was 10. I fell over at the swimming pool.
2 No, I haven't.
3 Sometimes, if I work at the computer for too long.
4 Last week. I cut my finger when I was cutting vegetables.
5 Yes, I often burn my hands and fingers in the kitchen, but nothing serious.

Unit 33

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------|------|
| 1 1 S | 3 D | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D | 4 S | 6 D | 8 D |
| 2 1 Yes | 3 Yes | 5 No | 7 No |
| 2 No | 4 No | 6 Yes | 8 No |
| 3 1 anywhere | 5 nowhere | | |
| 2 nowhere | 6 somewhere | | |
| 3 somewhere | 7 anywhere | | |
| 4 everywhere | 8 somewhere | | |

- 4 1 2,000
2 the Sahara Desert
3 two billion years old
4 the Pacific Ocean
5 Siberia, in Russia
6 Yes, a few places.

Unit 34

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|
| 1 1 <u>government</u> | |
| 2 <u>disaster</u> | |
| 3 <u>environment</u> | |
| 4 <u>disappear</u> | |
| 5 <u>destroy</u> | |
| 2 1 increasing | 4 build |
| 2 disappearing | 5 destroying |
| 3 government | 6 land |
| 3 1 increases | 5 environment |
| 2 government | 6 disappears |
| 3 disaster | 7 destroy |
| 4 land | 8 extreme |

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 4 1 recycle | 5 petrol |
| 2 energy | 6 electricity |
| 3 gas | 7 develop |
| 4 coal | 8 cause |

- 5 1 F – Pollution is a bad thing.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 F – You can't see gas.
6 T
7 F – If you develop something, you make it.
8 T
9 F – Pollution is bad for fish and animals.
10 T

- 6 1 f 2 d 3 g 4 a 5 c 6 b

7 possible answers:

- 1 We use gas and electricity.
2 Electricity is more expensive – about double the cost of gas. I think coal is cheap, but people don't use it a lot now.
3 Yes, it's very bad in the centre of the city.
4 It's the buses, cars and lorries, and some industry too.
5 Yes, I recycle bottles, paper, cardboard and plastic every week.

Unit 35

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 1 Chinese | 5 Japanese |
| 2 Hungarian | 6 Canadian |
| 3 German | 7 Korean |
| 4 Italian | 8 Egyptian |
| 2 1 T | |
| 2 T | |
| 3 F – They speak Thai. | |
| 4 T | |
| 5 F – They speak English. | |
| 6 T | |
| 7 T | |
| 8 F – They speak French, Italian or German. | |
| 3 1 Britain | |
| 2 Europe | |
| 3 Central/Latin | |
| 4 continent | |
| 5 South/Latin | |
| 6 Africa/Asia | |
| 7 the Middle East | |
| 8 Asia | |
| 9 continent | |
| 4 1 Italy, C | 9 Brazil, C |
| 2 Hungary, C | 10 Turkey, C |
| 3 Mexico, C | 11 Greek, N |
| 4 Swiss, N | 12 French, N |
| 5 China, C | 13 Germany, C |
| 6 Czech, N | 14 Russia, C |
| 7 Egypt, C | 15 Argentinian, N |
| 8 Spanish, N | 16 Portugal, C |

- 5 1 Poland 7 Korean
2 Brazilian 8 Turkish
3 Russia 9 Italian
4 Russian 10 Chinese
5 Polish 11 Spain
6 Japanese 12 Australian
- 6 -ian: Argentinian, Australian, Brazilian, Canadian, Egyptian, Hungarian, Indian, Russian
-ish: British, Polish, Spanish, Turkish
-an: American, German, Korean, Mexican
-ese: Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese
- 7 your own answers

Unit 36

- 1 1 river 7 Ocean, east
2 mountain 8 major
3 coast 9 north
4 high 10 enormous
5 long 11 popular
6 border
- 2 1 famous 5 ocean
2 huge 6 long; long
3 west 7 beach
4 north 8 popular
- 3 possible answers about Britain (England, Scotland and Wales):
1 London, in the south of England/Britain.
2 Manchester, Liverpool, Birmingham, Edinburgh, Glasgow and Cardiff.
3 No.
4 The River Severn, in south-west England (290 kilometres).
5 Ben Nevis, in Scotland.
6 Trafalgar Square, Buckingham Palace, The Tower of London, Edinburgh Castle, The Lake District, Stonehenge, etc.
- 4 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S
- 5 **SIZE:** a small village, a large city, a small town
LOCATION: on the coast, south-west of the capital, on the River Duero
POPULATION: over two million, just under 50,000, about 3,000
INTERESTING FACTS: famous for its modern buildings, mobile phone industry, a warm climate, city full of culture
- 6 1 of 5 population
2 in 6 industry
3 of 7 ancient
4 on 8 climate
- 7 possible answer:
Bath is a medium-sized town, 170 km west of London, in the south-west of England. It's on the River Avon. It has a population of just under 100,000. It is a famous tourist city in England, with lots of ancient buildings, including the Roman Baths and many museums. It is cool and wet in winter and quite warm in summer.

Unit 37

- 1 1 c 4 j 7 a
2 i 5 b 8 f
3 h 6 e 9 g
- 2 1 raining 5 weather
2 sunny/bright 6 cloudy
3 snows 7 icy
4 windy 8 blowing
- 3 1 a bit 5 a bit
2 a lot of 6 a lot
3 a lot 7 a bit
4 a bit of 8 a lot of
- 4 1 showers 4 minutes
2 Suddenly 5 strong
3 clear 6 changes
- 5 1 There was heavy rain last night.
2 The weather in Spain is better than here.
3 There was a shower in the afternoon.
4 The weather changes every day.
5 It's dry today.
6 We had a storm.
7 There are clear skies.
8 It snows all the time in winter.
- 6 possible answers, from India:
1 Not, really! We get some rain occasionally in spring.
2 We get snowfall only in a few parts of the country, up in the hill stations.
3 We have horrible hot and dusty summers!
4 Yes, most parts of my country have dry winters, however it rains in the southern parts!
5 No, we don't have heavy rains in spring unless they are hail storms.
6 Yes, some parts of the country get strong winds and in fact dust storms in summers. Some parts get strong winds during monsoons!

Unit 38

- 1 whale, elephant, bear, lion, sheep, monkey, cat, mouse, fly
- 2 **PETS:** dog, cat
FARM ANIMALS: horse, pig, cow
INSECTS: bee, fly
WILD ANIMALS: elephant, tiger, lion, bear
- 3 1 most 5 hair
2 lion 6 tiger
3 whale 7 wild
4 son
- 4 (Other answers may be possible.)
1 people 6 mice
2 horses/elephants 7 farms
3 sea 8 zoo
4 insects 9 wings
5 fly

- 5 1 pets 5 insect
2 farmer; farm 6 zoo
3 wild 7 wings
4 both 8 both
- 6 1 **four legs:** lion, tiger, elephant, horse, sheep, cow, pig, cat, dog, mouse, bear (but some people say 2)
2 **two legs:** bird, monkey, bear (but some people say 4)
3 **six legs:** bee, fly
4 **no legs:** snake, whale
- 7 *possible answers, from the Czech Republic:*
1 Yes, I have a cat.
2 Yes, in the zoo, and also in a forest.
3 I'm afraid of spiders.
4 Cows, pigs, sheep, hens and goats.
5 Probably. I like going to zoos.
6 No.

Unit 39

- 1 1 taught 8 drove
2 put 9 spoke
3 let 10 held
4 brought 11 spelt/spelled
5 bought 12 rang
6 sang 13 sat
7 spent 14 burnt
- 2 1 swam; began 4 sent; built
2 wrote; drove 5 put; cut
3 bought; thought 6 got; fell
- 3 *possible answers:*
1 I swam a kilometre.
2 He forgot my homework.
3 She sent the letter to the lawyer.
4 He lent me his bike.
5 She put them in the cupboard.
6 He fell on the stairs.
7 She lost 100 euros.
8 They ran three kilometres.
- 4 1 swam 7 cost
2 caught 8 came/got
3 rode; rode 9 rang
4 cut/broke/burnt; hurt 10 bought
5 drove 11 began
6 wrote/sent 12 woke (up)
- 5 1 driven 5 spoken
2 ridden 6 hit/hurt
3 cut 7 broken
4 won/lost/spent 8 fallen

possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I drove my brother's car last summer. I was quite scared.
2 No, I haven't.
3 Yes, I cut my hair very badly when I was a child.
4 Yes, I have. I spent a large sum of money to buy a house.
5 No, I haven't.
6 No, I haven't.
7 Yes, I have. I broke my arm last year.
8 Yes, I have. I fell from a tree when I was six years old.

Unit 40

- 1 1 She's got blue eyes.
2 They've got a small dog.
3 I haven't got a smartphone.
4 He hasn't got any money.
5 Have you got any sisters?
6 Has she got a flat in town?
7 They haven't got a shop now.
8 Have they got a big office?
- 2 1 Has she got any children?
2 They've got a lovely garden.
3 Has she got long hair?
4 My sister hasn't got/doesn't have a boyfriend.
5 Have you got a computer?/Do you have a computer?
6 We haven't got any friends here./We don't have any friends here.
- 3 1 got 4 Do
2 Do 5 Have
3 Have 6 Do
- 4 *possible answers:*
1 Yes, I have. I use it to go to college.
2 Yes, I do. It's an Apple.
3 Yes, they have. His name's Barney.
4 No, they don't.
5 Yes, I've got the *Oxford Essential Dictionary*.
6 Yes, I do. I've got an American friend, and a German friend who speaks excellent English.

GROUP 1	GROUP 2	GROUP 3	GROUP 4	GROUP 5
rest	breakfast	bath	swim	holiday
break	lunch	shower	run	weekend
	dinner	wash	walk	journey

- 6 1 walk/look 4 swim
2 drink 5 rest
3 dinner 6 journey
- 7 1 eat 5 time/day
2 walk/run 6 weekend
3 break 7 holiday/time
4 look/walk 8 bath

Unit 41

- 1 1 What does his wife do?
2 His company makes software programs./
His software company makes programs.
3 Why does English make you tired?
4 I want to do Spanish at school next year./
Next year I want to do Spanish at school.
5 Is this jumper made of wool?
6 What did you do last night?
- 2 1 made 5 made
2 do 6 made
3 do 7 do
4 makes 8 make
- 3 possible answers:
1 Cars and pianos are made in the UK.
2 I make little bags for friends.
3 Music makes me cry, and sometimes films as well.
4 I did maths, English, French, German, History, Geography, Chemistry, Physics, Biology and PE.
5 I'll probably watch TV after dinner.
6 I went shopping, saw an exhibition at an art gallery, and had dinner in a restaurant with friends.

4 your own answers

- 5 1 done 5 did
2 do 6 made
3 make 7 make
4 made 8 make
- 6 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 c
- 7 1 make 5 do
2 make 6 make
3 make 7 do
4 do

8 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, always.
2 Yes, usually when I'm speaking.
3 No, they're very quiet.
4 Not a lot.
5 Yes, very often.
6 No, not really, but I don't want to be poor.
7 No, not always. It depends how important something is.

Unit 42

- 1 1 Did you get my message?
2 He gets angry if you're late.
3 We got home late last night.
4 It's getting cold.
5 I got three letters today.
6 Where did you get that bag?
7 He needs to get a job.
8 Do you want to get a/the train?

- 2 1 receive 5 receive
2 become 6 buy
3 arrive 7 be given
4 become 8 travel

3 possible answers:

- 1 getting cold
2 get here/home/back
3 get them
4 get a/the bus
5 get one
6 get it.
7 getting late.
8 get a bus/taxi
9 got a good mark/grade
10 get every day/week

4 possible answers:

- 1 I get the bus every day.
2 It doesn't get very cold in my country.
3 I get around/about 10 texts every day.
4 I got a new skirt.
5 You can get information about my town from the internet.

Unit 43

- 1 1 f 3 4 5 5 7 4
2 2 4 3 6 1 8 5
- 2 1 see 5 watch
2 watch 6 see
3 see/watch 7 saw
4 see 8 saw/watched
- 3 1 see 5 see
2 watch 6 see
3 see/watch 7 see
4 saw/watched

4 possible answers:

- 1 No, I can't see very well without glasses because my eyes are bad. When I'm driving, I have to wear them.
2 Yes, I watch him often – it's lovely to watch him.
3 I always watch the news and sports.
4 I saw a programme yesterday about Iran – it was very interesting.
5 I see her every week.
6 I see them every day.
7 Yes, it's difficult because it has a lot of meanings.

Unit 44

- 1 1 control 4 cause
2 promise 5 copy
3 over
- 2 1 H 2 M 3 H 4 Hand M 5 H 6 M
- 3 1 cost 6 surprise
2 fighting 7 smell
3 control 8 dreaming
4 promised 9 caused
5 chat 10 sleep

- 4 1 I had a dream about you.
- 2 Did he make a comment on the report?
- 3 She made a promise to help me.
- 4 Does this soap have a nice smell?
- 5 They gave him a surprise.
- 6 I must send/write a reply to Jilly's letter. / I must send/write Jilly a reply.
- 7 Did you give Mo a call?
- 8 I had a look at her newspaper.
- 9 Could you make a copy of this?
- 10 He gave me a smile this morning.

5 possible answers:

- 1 I sometimes dream about people in my family who I don't see very often. It's strange.
- 2 Travelling by train costs a lot of money in the UK.
- 3 Some cheese has a very strong smell. And my dog has a strong smell too, but I don't mind it!
- 4 The fact that people are extremely rich or extremely poor causes a lot of problems.
- 5 It surprises me that people have such different ideas about politics.
- 6 The world can't control the internet. It's very good in some ways, but dangerous in others.

Unit 45

- 1 1 ✓
 - 2 ✓
 - 3 butter/some butter
 - 4 ✓
 - 5 bread/some bread
 - 6 ✓
 - 7 olive oil/some olive oil
 - 8 rice/some rice
 - 9 jam/some jam
 - 10 ✓
 - 11 cheese/some cheese/a piece of cheese
- 2 1 pasta 5 pasta
 - 2 cheese 6 chocolates
 - 3 cake 7 Butter
 - 4 rice 8 biscuits

3 your own answers

- 4 1 a 3 b 5 e
- 2 g 4 c 6 f

- 5 1 Could I have twelve eggs, please?
- 2 Do you need a bag?
- 3 Have you got any French cheese?
- 4 How much pasta do you need?
- 5 That's just over half a kilo.
- 6 How many oranges do you need?

- 6 1 got; many
- 2 have; much; grams; all
- 3 Could/Can; just; That's;
- 4 ready; need

Unit 46

- 1 grapes, lemon, nuts, strawberries, pineapple, pear, orange, peach, apple

- 2 1 oranges
- 2 lemons
- 3 peaches
- 4 pineapples
- 5 bananas
- 6 nuts

- 3 1 Bananas
- 2 Oranges
- 3 Pineapples
- 4 Nuts
- 5 Sweet
- 6 Grapes
- 7 Strawberries
- 8 Peaches
- 9 Fruit

4 your own answers

- 5 1 peas 7 beans
- 2 onion 8 cucumber
- 3 pepper 9 mushroom
- 4 potato 10 tomato
- 5 cabbage 11 garlic
- 6 lettuce 12 carrot

- 6 1 T 6 T
- 2 T 7 T
- 3 F 8 F
- 4 T 9 F
- 5 F 10 T

7 possible answers (for Britain):

cabbage: Yes, but not much.

mushrooms: Yes, a lot.

red peppers: Yes, but not much.

fresh tomatoes: Yes, a lot.

frozen peas: Yes, a lot.

cooked onions: Yes, a lot.

fresh cucumber: Yes, a lot.

lettuce: Yes, a lot.

frozen carrots: Yes, but not much.

beans: Yes, a lot.

cold potatoes: Yes, but not much.

garlic: Yes, but not much.

Unit 47

- 1 1 F – They don't eat meat or fish.
- 2 T
- 3 F – It's a type of bird.
- 4 F – You get bacon from pigs.
- 5 T
- 6 T
- 7 F – Squid is a type of seafood.
- 8 F – Pig is an animal.
- 9 T
- 10 F – You get ham from pigs.

- 2 1 beef 6 squid
2 ham 7 bacon
3 tuna 8 sausages
4 duck 9 pork
5 crab 10 prawns
- 3 1 Pork, because it's a type of meat, not an animal.
2 Lamb, because it isn't from a pig.
3 Tuna, because it's a fish, not a type of meat.
4 Vegetarian, because it's not a type of meat, fish or seafood.
5 Cow, because it's an animal, not a type of meat.
6 Salmon, because it's a fish.
- 4 possible answers:
1 I like beef but it's expensive so I don't eat it very often.
2 I don't eat squid. It's very difficult to buy where I live.
3 I eat a lot of salmon.
4 I don't like crab so I don't eat it.
5 I like tuna.
6 I eat prawns, often with pasta.
7 I don't like duck – I prefer to see ducks swimming.
8 I like lamb.

Unit 48

- 1 1 3 3 6 5 3 7 1
2 3 4 6 6 2 8 3
- 2 1 fork 10 white
2 spoon 11 bottle
3 plate 12 beer
4 bowl 13 salt
5 bottle 14 black pepper
6 fizzy water 15 bottles
7 glasses 16 oil
8 wine 17 vinegar
9 red

- 3 possible answers, from China:
On restaurant tables in my country we usually have chopsticks, bowls, spoons, cups or glasses, and a pot of tea or a bottle of water. We have dishes for food. We sometimes have plates, napkins, and pepper, too.

We don't usually have knives, forks, salt, vinegar, white wine, red wine, beer, or fizzy water.

We never have oil on the table.

Unit 49

- 1 1 It's boiled rice.
2 The potatoes are fried.
3 A cheese sauce.
4 The first course was salad.
5 Did you have ice cream?
6 There was fruit for dessert.
7 I had tomato soup.
8 How was the apple pie?

- 2 1 F – You eat ice cream with a spoon.
2 T
3 T
4 F – You eat soup in chips in different bowls.
5 T
6 T
7 F – People don't have cream on pizza.
8 T
9 T
10 F – Apple pie is a dessert.

- 3 1 sauce 5 course
2 pie 6 cream
3 fried 7 boiled
4 soup

- 4 possible answer:
I'd like the soup for the starter, and then duck with orange sauce and boiled potatoes for the main course. Then for the dessert, I'd like apple pie with cream.

- 5 1 some more 7 of course
2 to order 8 the
3 another 9 I'll
4 meal 10 certainly
5 all right 11 waiter
6 tuna instead 12 without

- 6 1 have
2 without
3 course
4 or still
5 some
6 Certainly/Sure/Of course
7 'll
8 bill
9 sure/certainly/of course

Unit 50

- 1 crisps / snack / cheese sandwich / cake / toasted sandwich
tea with lemon / drink / black coffee / a fizzy drink / orange juice
- 2 1 F – Ice is frozen water.
2 T
3 T
4 F – Hot chocolate is a drink.
5 T
6 T
7 F – You can have a drink or a snack in a café.
8 T
9 F – Crisps are not sweet.
10 T

- 3 1 bread 7 fizzy/alcoholic/hot
2 sandwich 8 pub
3 chocolate 9 white
4 ice 10 black
5 coffee/tea 11 juice
6 drink(s) 12 tea/coffee

4 your own answers

- 5 1 S 3 D 5 S 7 S 9 D
2 S 4 S 6 D 8 D 10 S

6 B I'd like two toasted ham sandwiches, please.

A Is that to have here or take away?

B To have here, please.

A Is that everything?

B Can I get two teas, please?

A It will be a couple of minutes.

Please take a seat.

7 1 Can I have/get a tea with lemon, please?

2 To drink here or take away?

3 To drink/have here.

4 Would you like brown bread?

5 Yes, please.

6 OK, anything else?

7 No, thanks.

8 Fine. It will be a couple of minutes.

9 Take/Have a seat, please.

Unit 51

- 1 1 to 5 ride
2 car 6 both are correct
3 both are correct 7 both are correct
4 on 8 coach

- 2 1 rides 5 motorbike
2 coach 6 foot
3 lorries/trucks 7 vehicles
4 underground/car/train 8 vans/a van

3 possible answers:

1 Yes, I can. I learnt to drive when I was 17.

2 When I was about 7 or 8, I think.

3 I usually go by bus, but I can also get a train. I can't walk – it's too far.

4 No, I can't and I wouldn't like to.

5 Yes, it's excellent. It's not expensive and it's very clean and safe.

6 Yes, I sometimes go by coach, for example if I'm going to a football match.

- 4 1 traffic 5 speed limit
2 rush hour 6 a quiet road
3 main road 7 motorway
4 miles per hour

- 5 1 busy; hour
2 main
3 far
4 get; unfortunately
5 journey

7 possible answers for a driver in Britain:

- 1 Yes. Sometimes there's too much traffic, but often there are accidents or bad weather.
2 70 miles an hour.
3 Not very often. I prefer smaller, slower roads.
4 Yes, we do.
5 7.30 a.m. – 9.30 a.m. and again between 4.30 p.m. and 6.30 p.m.
6 I went to Brighton by car a few weeks ago. It's about 130 miles. Unfortunately, there was a lot of traffic and the roads were very busy, so it took about four hours.

Unit 52

1 get off the bus; How long does it take?; the next stop; It doesn't take long; Excuse me.

- 2 1 Does the 24 stop outside the post office?
2 Where do I get off for the cinema?
3 Does the 24 go to the park?
4 How often does the 24 run?
5 Which is the last stop for the 16?
6 How many stops is it to the railway station?
7 Excuse me, which bus do I get to the school?
8 How long does it take to the railway station?

- 3 1 Yes, it does. 5 The railway station.
2 At the next stop. 6 Five.
3 No, it doesn't. 7 The 16 or the 24.
4 Every ten minutes. 8 Fifteen minutes.

- 4 1 routes 7 timetable
2 stop 8 run
3 next 9 every
4 last 10 takes
5 get off 11 outside
6 goes 12 long

5 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, at the end of the road.
2 The 9 and the 15.
3 The town centre or the airport.
4 One runs every 15 minutes, the other every half hour.
5 Sometimes to the town centre, but I don't get the bus very often.
6 About six.
7 About twenty minutes.

Unit 53

- 1 1 a fast train
2 get off the train
3 the (train) fare
4 the 7 o'clock train
5 a seat
6 at a railway station/train station
7 the timetable
8 a carriage

- 2 1 fare 7 waited
2 coach/carriage 8 timetable
3 missed 9 for
4 get/take 10 slow
5 last 11 journey
6 get on
- 3 1 seat 6 London
2 change 7 office
3 return 8 train
4 direct 9 there
5 passengers
- 4 1 change 6 to
2 leaves 7 single
3 platform 8 return
4 gets 9 book/reserve
5 take/get
- 5 possible answers:
1 Last Thursday.
2 A return.
3 I went to Oxford for a meeting.
4 It was £10.50.
5 No, I didn't have time.
6 I had to change at Didcot.

Unit 54

- 1 1 The bookshop is opposite of the hotel.
2 Go straight on and keep ~~to~~ going.
3 Is there a cinema near from here?
4 It's on your left side.
5 Turn ~~to~~ left and go straight on.
6 It's the third ~~road~~ turning on the right. (also possible: It's the third road ~~turning~~ on the right.)
7 Where's the ~~most~~ nearest post office?
- 2 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 D
- 3 1 Excuse me. How do I get to the museum?
2 Go along here and turn left.
3 Excuse me. Is there a post office near here?
4 It's the third turning on the right.
5 Excuse me. Do you know the way to the station?
6 Cross the road at the traffic lights.
- 4 1 turning 6 going
2 much 7 on
3 left/right/corner 8 here
4 me 9 way
5 road/river 10 lights
- 5 Conversation 1
1 get 3 turning 5 much
2 straight 4 left 6 problem
- Conversation 2
1 Excuse 4 take 7 opposite
2 near 5 turning 8 thanks
3 along 6 right 9 That's

6 possible answers:

- 1 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street, and the hotel is on the next corner on your right.
2 Go straight on, then turn left into Frith Street. Take the first turning on the right and keep going. The museum is on your left.
3 Yes, go straight on, and take first turning on your right/turn right. The post office is on the corner.

Unit 55

- 1 1 f 4 b 7 d
2 h 5 i 8 a
3 j 6 e 9 c
- 2 1 in a road 5 on a drinks machine
2 in a restaurant 6 in a hotel window
3 in a school 7 near the sea
4 in a shop window 8 in a bank
- 3 1 signs/notices 6 gap
2 notice/sign 7 closed/shut; open
3 sale 8 feed
4 allowed 9 Mind
5 let 10 toilets
- 4 1 no parking
2 entrance/no exit
3 no smoking
4 keep off the grass
5 out of order
6 please do not feed the animals
7 allowed
8 queue here
9 danger
10 keep right
- 5 NO exit
PLEASE queue here
MIND the gap, your head
KEEP right/left

Unit 56

- 1 1 S 4 D 7 S
2 D 5 S 8 D
3 D 6 D 9 S
- 2 1 art gallery, museum, palace, church and a castle
2 market
3 library
4 museum, palace, castle, art gallery and church
5 park
6 tower
7 post office
8 bridge
9 church (or castle or palace)
10 buildings
11 places

3 possible answers:

- 1 False. No, there are three or four.
- 2 Yes, there is. I go there about once a month.
- 3 Yes, we have both.
- 4 Yes, there are two big parks and several small ones.
- 5 Most of them are.
- 6 False. No, there's a market every Saturday.
- 7 Yes, there is.
- 8 False. No, it's a lovely place to live.

- 4**
- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 noisy | 5 safe |
| 2 lots | 6 dirty |
| 3 view | 7 There's |
| 4 opinion | 8 pollution |

- 5** Yes: 2, 3, 6, 7
No: 1, 4, 5, 8

- 6**
- | | |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 opinion | 5 crowds |
| 2 dangerous | 6 clean |
| 3 do | 7 pollution |
| 4 busy/crowded | 8 quiet |

Unit 57

- 1** own, produce, grow
- 2**
- 1 F – There are cows in the field.
 - 2 T
 - 3 T
 - 4 T
 - 5 T
 - 6 T
 - 7 T
 - 8 F – There aren't a lot of trees near the farmer.
 - 9 F – The farmer grows fruit and keeps cows.
 - 10 F – The lake isn't in the valley.

- 3**
- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1 valley; hill | 5 fields |
| 2 lake | 6 own |
| 3 grass | 7 farming |
| 4 gate | 8 grow; produce |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I live on a hill.
- 2 No, there isn't, but there's a river near my home.
- 3 Yes, in my garden.
- 4 Yes, I can, at the end of the garden.
- 5 Yes, there are some on the hill.
- 6 I own two dogs.
- 7 Yes, it is.
- 8 Farmers produce a lot of milk and cheese. They also grow vegetables and wheat.

- 5** 1 a 2 f 3 g 4 b 5 c 6 d

- 6**
- | | |
|---------|------------|
| 1 water | 5 natural |
| 2 Fresh | 6 creative |
| 3 area | 7 pick |
| 4 earth | 8 nature |

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I often do in the summer.
- 2 Yes. I grow strawberries and raspberries, and I pick them from June to September.
- 3 Yes, I grow a lot of plants outside, but nothing inside.
- 4 Fresh air is really important. I like to see wild flowers in the countryside. The beauty of nature makes me feel happier. I like to see areas with plants in town; it brings more colour to the streets.

Unit 58

- 1**
- | | |
|--------------------|--|
| 1 Anna and Rob | 8 the second floor |
| 2 on the top floor | 9 on the first floor |
| 3 Lucy | 10 the lift; the stairs |
| 4 on the top floor | 11 You put the key in the lock to open the door. |
| 5 the roof | |
| 6 8 | |
| 7 front door | |

- 2**
- | | |
|----------------|------------------|
| 1 lift | 9 top floor |
| 2 apartment | |
| 3 ground floor | 3 1 floor |
| 4 front door | 2 ground |
| 5 steps | 3 neighbours |
| 6 neighbour | 4 lift; stairs |
| 7 roof | 5 steps |
| 8 stairs | 6 key |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I live in an apartment on the second floor.
- 2 There's another flat and the person who looks after the building lives there.
- 3 An older lady called Dona Angeles is my neighbour, and a married couple live on the top floor.
- 4 It's got stairs, no lift.
- 5 No, there are no steps to the front door.
- 6 Yes, you have to open the door with a key.

5 view / modern / living room / hall / kitchen / home / dining room / upstairs / bedroom / parking / bathroom

- 6**
- | | | |
|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 living | 6 views | 11 bedrooms |
| 2 bathroom | 7 hall | 12 bathrooms |
| 3 view | 8 kitchen | 13 parking |
| 4 park | 9 study | 14 outside |
| 5 outside | 10 Upstairs | 15 inside |

7 possible answers:

- 1 Most houses have two or three floors, but there are some very tall, old houses which have five floors.
- 2 Yes, they've got the same rooms, but in some houses there's an extra room for the washing machine.
- 3 A lot of houses in the modern part of the town have parking, but in the old part, parking is a big problem.

- 4 There are a lot of houses in the countryside, and just outside the centre of cities there are houses too.
- 5 Sometimes a very good garden makes a house a bit more expensive. A view of the sea will often make a house more expensive too.

Unit 59

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 D 4 D 6 S
- 2 1 washing machine 8 turn the oven;
2 dishwasher; sink on/off
3 cupboard 9 rubbish
4 bin 10 empty
5 oven 11 tap
6 fridge 12 equipment
7 full 13 cooker

3 *possible answers:*

We've got lots of cupboards, a sink and taps, an oven, a fridge, a washing machine, a bin, and a lot of kitchen equipment.
We haven't got a dishwasher.

- 4 1 prepare 4 clean
2 homework 5 look after
3 do 6 have to
- 5 1 feed 5 do the housework
2 do the washing 6 did my homework
3 task 7 look after
4 washing up 8 have to

6 *possible answers:*

In my home, my husband and I both do some housework.
He does the washing up.
I do the washing.
He cooks the dinner.
I clean the kitchen.
I do the ironing.
We probably both do the same number of everyday tasks because we both have full-time jobs – and also, he's better at cooking than I am.

Unit 60

- 1 **GROUP A:** table, seat, suitcase, sheet
GROUP B: match, picture, furniture, nature, Portuguese
GROUP C: international, dictionary

- 2 1 f 3 h 5 g 7 c
2 i 4 a 6 b 8 e
- 3 1 wardrobe 7 pieces of furniture
2 sheets 8 wooden
3 wall 9 table
4 suitcase 10 national
5 lamp 11 international
6 space 12 a few

4 *possible answer:*

I'm Lucy, and I live at home with my family. There's a bed with sheets, a table and a lamp on it. I've got a wardrobe in a corner of the room and a comfortable chair to sit on. I've got lots of pictures of my family and friends on the wall. I've got a suitcase on top of the wardrobe. The furniture is all wooden and it's a really nice room.

- 5 1 do; a brush 5 washbasin
2 have 6 towel; have
3 puts on 7 bath
4 shave 8 brush; mirror
- 6 1 bath 7 put on
2 towel 8 teeth
3 mirror 9 wash
4 hair 10 brush
5 clean/brush 11 shave
6 mirror/washbasin 12 razor

- 7 1 teeth
2 hair
3 mirror
4 brush
5 make-up; put ...on
6 have; razor; electric razor

8 *possible answers:*

- 1 I brush them after breakfast.
2 Twice a day.
3 Lots of times!
4 Yes, I do.
5 I only wear it sometimes.
6 My husband shaves every morning with a razor.

Unit 61

- 1 1 armchair 5 window 9 television
2 carpet 6 fire 10 curtain
3 floor 7 sofa 11 clock
4 light 8 shelf 12 telephone
- 2 1 F – There are two windows.
2 T
3 T
4 T
5 T
6 T
7 T
8 F – There are two corners.
9 T
10 F – There are four curtains.
11 T
12 T
13 F – There are two shelves.
14 T
- 3 1 phone/telephone 7 light
2 sofa; armchair 8 shelf
3 curtains 9 carpet
4 clock 10 corner
5 fan 11 window
6 fire

4 possible answers:

- 1 I've got a sofa, an armchair and a small table in my living room.
- 2 I've got a TV.
- 3 I've got a carpet on the floor and a telephone on a shelf.

Unit 62

- | | |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 uncertain | 5 unnecessary |
| 2 unlucky | 6 unhealthy |
| 3 irregular | 7 correct |
| 4 correct | 8 impolite |
| 2 1 polite | 5 unnecessary |
| 2 informal | 6 impolite |
| 3 regular | 7 uncertain |
| 4 lucky | 8 unhealthy |
| 3 1 polite | 5 uncertain/unsure |
| 2 Irregular | 6 unhealthy |
| 3 informal | 7 rude |
| 4 unlucky | 8 unnecessary |

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, my neighbours are all lovely.
- 2 That's true.
- 3 Yes, most of them are interesting.
- 4 No, I'm usually lucky – the weather is good.
- 5 That's true.
- 6 That's true.
- 7 That's true, but I sometimes text people when I'm having a meal.
- 8 That's probably true, but I like to have a shower every day.

Unit 63

- | | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 1 No | 3 No | 5 Yes | 7 Yes | 9 No |
| 2 Yes | 4 Yes | 6 No | 8 Yes | 10 No |
- 2 1 strong
 - 2 awake
 - 3 poor
 - 4 low
 - 5 wide
 - 6 alive
 - 7 light
- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 3 1 hard | 6 light |
| 2 weak | 7 narrow |
| 3 rich | 8 asleep |
| 4 dead | 9 poor |
| 5 high | 10 soft |
- 4 Words that are ticked: useless, common, different, general, media, useful, similar
Other words: specific, unusual, tradition
- 5 1 T
 - 2 T
 - 3 F – A traditional building is not modern in style.
 - 4 F – An unusual event doesn't happen a lot.
 - 5 T
 - 6 F – A useless thing won't help you.
 - 7 T
 - 8 F – A lazy person doesn't work hard.
 - 9 F – It's usually light in the middle of the day.
 - 10 T

- | | |
|-------------|---------------|
| 6 1 general | 5 traditional |
| 2 useful | 6 hardworking |
| 3 light | 7 useless |
| 4 unusual | |

7 possible answers:

It's unusual for me to get colds and flu.
I prefer modern houses.
I prefer a dark room.
We enjoy similar things.
I think social media is both positive and negative.
I don't like specific holiday plans.
Sometimes it's useful to know about history.
They think I'm quite hardworking.

Unit 64

- | | |
|--------------|---------|
| 1 1 only | 4 only |
| 2 still | 5 even |
| 3 especially | 6 still |
- 2 1 He's 75 and he **still** plays tennis.
 - 2 It's nice there, **especially** in the morning.
 - 3 There are **only** three students in the class.
 - 4 He **even** works on Sundays./He works, **even** on Sundays.
 - 5 She's **still** at university.
 - 6 Rio is big, but Sao Paolo is even bigger.
- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 3 1 Only | 5 Even |
| 2 still | 6 especially |
| 3 especially | 7 still |
| 4 only | 8 even |
- 4 1 both answers are correct
 - 2 really
 - 3 both answers are correct
 - 4 really
 - 5 both answers are correct
 - 6 quite
 - 7 both answers are correct
 - 8 really
- | | |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 5 1 extremely/really | |
| 2 rather/pretty | |
| 3 a bit | 6 quite/pretty |
| 4 very/really | 7 very/extremely |
| 5 a little | 8 rather/pretty |
- 6 possible answers:
- 1 slow/unfriendly
 - 2 handsome/attractive/friendly/nice
 - 3 enjoyed it/hated it
 - 4 lonely/bored/unhappy
 - 5 interesting/good
 - 6 late
 - 7 friendly/nice
 - 8 lazy

Unit 65

- 1 1 slowly 5 clearly 9 easily
2 badly 6 happily 10 quietly
3 angrily 7 well 11 correctly
4 late 8 hard 12 fast
- 2 1 I write very clearly.
2 My cousin sings well.
3 My boss works hard.
4 Lola drives carefully.
5 Robina answered the questions correctly.
6 Julio doesn't pronounce words clearly.
7 Miriam did the exercise easily.
8 Amina works very fast.
9 My little boy reads slowly.
10 She spoke to Sam angrily.
- 3 1 late 4 badly
2 loudly 5 carefully
3 clearly/slowly 6 hard
- 4 possible answers:
1 I never arrive late; I always arrive at the right time.
2 My father speaks very loudly.
3 Yes, she does.
4 I think I drive well.
5 Yes, I have to think carefully.
6 Sometimes I relax a little, but usually I work hard.

Unit 66

- 1 1 D 3 S 5 S 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 D
- 2 1 PE/physical education 8 computer science
2 literature 9 biology
3 history 10 design and technology
4 geography 11 physics
5 art 12 arts subjects
6 languages 13 science subjects
7 chemistry
- 3 possible answers:
1 I was good at English literature.
2 I was quite good at geography.
3 I was bad/terrible at maths.
4 I didn't study biology, physics or chemistry after the age of 15.
5 The subject I liked most was English literature.
6 The subject I hated most was physics.

Unit 67

- 1 2 g 4 e 6 f
3 b 5 a 7 d
- 2 1 leave 4 options
2 get/find 5 either
3 carry on/continue/stay 6 or
7 training

- 3 1 uniform 4 carry on/continue/stay
2 leave 5 at
3 get; training
- 4 possible answers, from Kenya:
0 Children in Kenya start school when they are between 5 and 7.
1 Yes, the children usually wear a uniform.
2 They can leave school at the age of 18.
3 At this age, they do more training at university or at a college.
4 Yes, they stay in school since they will not have completed high school education until they complete Form Four at the age of 18.
5 They can go to university or a college to get training for their future career or a particular job, for example working as a doctor.
- 5 1 no 4 A (for biology)
2 five 5 E (for maths)
3 two 6 Grade C (a pass)
- 6 1 take/do 4 results
2 do 5 badly; failed
3 well; grade/mark 6 worst
- 7 possible answers:
1 Most of my lessons were 50 minutes.
2 Yes, quite hard.
3 I took important exams at 16 and 18.
4 I took nine exams when I was 16, and four exams when I was 18.
5 Yes, fortunately I did.
6 Biology is my best subject.

Unit 68

- 1 1 do 6 do
2 term 7 Unfortunately
3 write 8 After
4 last 9 takes
5 library
- 2 1 degree; in 5 essay; took
2 research 6 last
3 fortunately 7 bookshop
4 again 8 unfortunately
- 3 possible answers, from Mexico:
1 Here in Mexico, the course lasts five years.
2 Unfortunately, only 16%.
3 Unfortunately, most students don't do that.
4 Between four or five months.
5 It is not always possible.
- 4 1 S 3 S 5 S 7 D
2 D 4 D 6 S
- 5 1 doctor 5 lecturer
2 engineer 6 designer
3 architect 7 journalist
4 lawyer 8 businessman

- 6 1 professor
2 law
3 manager
4 journalist
5 lectures
7 your own answers
- 6 business
7 reporter
8 engineering
9 science
10 businesswoman

Unit 69

- 1 1 job
2 shop assistant
3 nurse
4 long
5 clothes
6 hasn't
7 employee
8 boss
9 dentist
10 Models
11 builder
12 in the police
- 2 1 D 3 S 5 D 7 S
2 S 4 D 6 S
- 3 1 a pilot, a dentist, a teacher
2 a dentist, a nurse, a fashion designer, a hairdresser, a builder, a chef, a soldier
3 a pilot, a teacher (a maths teacher), a businessman/woman, a builder
4 unemployed
5 a nurse, a soldier, a police officer/policeman/policewoman, a pilot, a chef, a dentist
6 a secretary, a cleaner, a businessman/businesswoman
- 4 1 secretary 5 a fashion designer
2 a pilot 6 a model
3 a hairdresser 7 a teacher
4 the boss 8 a chef
- 5 possible answers:
1 My friend Lucia is a secretary.
2 Carlo is a chef at the pizzeria.
3 Christelle is my hairdresser.
4 My friend Marissa is a teacher.
5 I don't know anyone who is a taxi driver.
6 Mr Ranelli is my dentist.
7 My mum is a businesswoman.
8 My uncle is the boss in a small factory.

Unit 70

- 1 1 long hours
2 a factory
3 an office
4 work for
5 does he earn
6 hours a day
7 an American airline
8 earn much
9 a year
10 ten to six
- 2 1 hospital; in
2 company; salary; a
3 long; from; to
4 earn
5 in; army
6 for; airline
7 advertising
8 manages; manager
- 3 possible answers:
1 I'm a reporter.
2 I work for a local newspaper.
3 I work in an office, but I go out and talk to people.
4 I work long hours, often 10 or 12 hours a day.
5 No, we don't earn very much.

- 4 1 e 2 f 3 b 4 a 5 d
- 5 1 We discussed our problems.
2 I have a meeting this afternoon.
3 She spends a lot of time travelling.
4 Could you organize the meeting?
5 My job involves using a computer.
6 I met her for the first time last week.

- 6 1 clients
2 discuss
3 project
4 designing
5 involves
6 organize
7 send
8 reports
9 colleagues
10 spend

Unit 71

- 1 She offered me the job. 7
I went for an interview. 5
I posted it. 4
I decided to apply. 2
I saw an advertisement for a job.
I accepted the job. 8
I filled in the form. 3
The interviewer asked me questions. 6
- 2 1 offered
2 post
3 interview
4 fill
5 training
6 applying
7 experience
8 accept
9 advertisement/advert/ad
10 interviewer
- 3 possible answers:
1 I've applied for two jobs: a teaching job and a job in advertising.
2 I had interviews for both jobs.
3 My training for the teaching job was a one-year teacher training course.
4 I filled in a form for my interview.
5 I'd like to work with young people, especially helping them with sports activities.

Unit 72

- 1 1 Yes
2 No
3 Yes
4 Yes (usually)
5 No
6 Yes
7 Yes
8 No
- 2 1 He's at work today.
2 This is such a good book.
3 Stand up when she enters the room.
4 The film was so long.
5 She's part of a small group.
6 This is such a difficult job.
- 3 1 worries
2 whole
3 so
4 enter
5 such
6 charities; parts
7 support
8 amazing/incredible

4 possible answers:

- 1 It was quite good and I enjoyed the work.
- 2 Yes, I was worried about arriving on time and wearing the right clothes.
- 3 Yes, they were very friendly and the boss was amazing.
- 4 Yes, there were three of us and we all worked and had lunch together.

Unit 73

- | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------|
| 1 1 keyboard | 4 menu | 7 screen |
| 2 window | 5 tablet | 8 printer |
| 3 laptop | 6 mouse | 9 program |
-
- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 2 1 laptop/tablet | 6 program |
| 2 screen | 7 document/window |
| 3 menu | 8 mouse |
| 4 printer | 9 keep |
| 5 tablet | |

3 possible answers:

- 1 No, I haven't. I've got an Apple Mac.
 - 2 Yes, I've got a printer and I use it nearly every day.
 - 3 I haven't got a laptop, but I've got a tablet and I keep it in the kitchen.
 - 4 Yes, I've got thousands. They're mostly of friends and family.
 - 5 I prefer a PC because it has a bigger screen and keyboard.
- 4** save, move, type, remove, replace, close
- 5** h, e, d, c, f, a, b, g (also possible: h, e, f, d, c, b, a, g)
- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 6 1 lines | 6 save |
| 2 careful | 7 replace; with |
| 3 copies | 8 cut |
| 4 file | 9 types |
| 5 print/make | 10 closed |

Unit 74

- 1**
- | |
|----------------|
| 1 reply |
| 2 the internet |
| 3 document |
| 4 a reply |
| 6 the internet |
- 2**
- | |
|---------------------------------|
| 1 Did you get/receive ... |
| 2 The letter got lost ... |
| 3 Have you replied to ... |
| 4 ... not on the internet |
| 5 ... jamie at gmail dot com |
| 6 Could you email/send/post ... |
| 7 I need to check ... |
| 8 ... send it by post/email |
| 9 ... sue 1 at gmail dot com |
- 3**
- | | | |
|----------|---------------|------------|
| A | B | C |
| 1 sent | 4 receive/get | 6 reply |
| 2 letter | 5 reply | 7 on |
| 3 lost | | 8 internet |

4 website, virus, recognize, online

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 5 1 S | 3 D | 5 D | 7 D |
| 2 S | 4 D | 6 D | 8 S |

- 6**
- | | |
|-------------|--------------------|
| 1 videos | 5 virus |
| 2 passwords | 6 search |
| 3 blog | 7 click; recognize |
| 4 websites | 8 contains |

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I do, usually music videos.
- 2 No, never.
- 3 No, I haven't.
- 4 I use the BBC website, Wikipedia, and the Arsenal football website.
- 5 No, it hasn't.
- 6 Yes, a lot.
- 7 No, I don't because it's dangerous.
- 8 I don't open it. I delete it.

Unit 75

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 S | 3 S | 5 D | 7 S |
| 2 D | 4 S | 6 S | |
- 2**
- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 message; rang; answer | 5 phone; messaged |
| 2 number | 6 make |
| 3 call; busy; phone | 7 message |
| 4 wrong | 8 mobile; double |
- 3 possible answers:**
- 1 Double three eight, nine seven four. Mobile: oh double seven double oh, nine double oh, six, eight four
 - 2 My mother and my sister.
 - 3 Yes, I do. I message my friends all the time.
 - 4 Hello?
 - 5 No, not very often.

4 correct answers:

- 1 Oh, hello, is that Jackie?
- 2 Just a moment ...
- 3 Speaking.
- 4 Oh hello, how are you?
- 5 I'm sorry, he's out.
- 6 OK, I'll call back later.
- 7 Yes, bye.

5 Conversation 1

- 1 speaking
- 2 This is
- 3 in/there
- 4 please
- 5 at the moment
- 6 call/phone/ring; back
- 7 bye/goodbye

Conversation 2

- 8 speak to
- 9 just a
- 10 get

Conversation 3

- 11 Is that
- 12 speaking
- 13 it

- 6 a possible answer, from Poland:
The phrases we use in Polish for answering the phone are quite different. We have a special word for *hello* on the phone: *halo*. Instead of *Speaking*, we say *Słucham*, which means literally 'I'm listening', and we use *Mówi Marisa* ('Marisa is speaking') for *It's Marisa*. When we ask for someone, we can say either *Czy to Marisa?* (which is basically the same as in English) or *Czy zastałam/zastałem Marisę?* (literally, 'Have I got hold of Marisa?').

Unit 76

- 1 1 owner 5 instructor
2 visitor 6 driver
3 traveller 7 television/TV actor
4 winner 8 factory worker
- 2 radio listener, film actor, bus driver,
driving instructor, office worker, English teacher
- 3 1 visitors 6 listeners
2 owner 7 readers
3 race/competition 8 speaker
4 driver 9 winner
5 workers 10 teacher

Unit 77

- 1 1 flying 5 sightseeing
2 shopping 6 understanding
3 camping 7 teaching
4 spelling 8 driving

2 your own answers

- 3 writing English, painting pictures, sleeping
in a tent, listening to music, playing football,
learning languages, buying clothes,
cooking meals

4 possible answers:

- 1 Writing English is quite difficult.
- 2 Painting pictures is not something I do.
- 3 Sleeping in a tent is not something I enjoy.
- 4 Listening to music is something I do a lot.
- 5 Playing football is something I used to do.
- 6 Learning languages is fun.
- 7 Buying clothes is boring for me.
- 8 Cooking meals is something I do every day.

Unit 78

- 1 1 celebrate; celebration
2 describe; description
3 predict; prediction
4 decide; decision
5 organize; organization
Note that the stress in nouns falls on the syllable before the last syllable.
- 2 1 invention 4 solution
2 celebration 5 prediction
3 description 6 organization

- 3 1 decision, decided 6 organizing;
2 solve, solution organization
3 description 7 predicted
4 celebrate 8 inventions
5 invented

4	VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
	move	movement	discover	discovery
	succeed	success	think	thought
	arrange	arrangement	argue	argument
	choose	choice	complain	complaint

- 5 1 an argument
2 complaint
3 thought
4 success
5 arrangements
6 discovery
- 6 1 complaint 4 argue 7 success
2 choose 5 argument 8 thoughts
3 choice 6 succeed
- 7 possible answers:
1 No, I haven't. My neighbours are very quiet.
2 No, I like to think about it carefully.
3 Yes, we could choose between Spanish and German, for example.
4 No, never.
5 No, I haven't.
6 No, I'm not interested in business.
7 No, family is the most important thing for me.
8 Yes, a lot.

Unit 79

- 1 bathroom railway station first floor
address book bus stop phone number
dishwasher capital letter police officer

- 2 1 a bathroom 5 a railway station
2 a dining room 6 an art gallery
3 a bus stop 7 an address book
4 a DJ (disc jockey) 8 a dishwasher

- 3 1 number 6 floor
2 officer 7 stop
3 jockey 8 phrasal
4 mark 9 full
5 tense; participle 10 capital

- 4 department store, sports centre, ticket office,
traffic lights, swimming pool, credit card,
public transport, high street

- 5 1 public 7 park
2 credit 8 machine
3 birthday 9 office
4 identity 10 sales/shop;
5 high department
6 traffic

- 6 1 identity 3 credit 5 birthday
2 centre 4 pool 6 store

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I have an identity card for work. It's got my name and a photo on it.
- 2 No, I don't.
- 3 Yes, I do. I use it for shopping.
- 4 No, I don't.
- 5 I don't send birthday cards. I email or call people to wish them a happy birthday.
- 6 Yes, I do. I usually buy clothes.

Unit 80

- 1 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A

- 2 1 I hate chocolate.
2 They don't like doing homework very much.
3 He doesn't like speaking English very much.
4 I quite like shopping.
5 She doesn't like driving.
6 I don't mind working at night.

- 3 1 love/like 5 hate
2 all 6 like
3 mind 7 quite/really
4 really 8 at

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I like going to the cinema too.
- 2 I quite like classical music, especially Bach and Vivaldi.
- 3 I love shopping – I go with my friends and we have a good time.
- 4 I don't mind driving, but it's not exciting.
- 5 I don't mind writing emails to my friends, but sometimes it's boring writing emails for work.
- 6 I love watching TV.
- 7 No, I hate housework.
- 8 I quite like talking on the phone to my friends.

- 5 1 I enjoy watching TV.
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 My favourite film is *Star Wars*.
4 She prefers reading to writing.
5 He's an amazing boss.
6 Was the party good fun?
7 It's a boring programme.
8 Singing is enjoyable.

- 6 1 fun 5 interesting
2 prefer 6 enjoy
3 favourite 7 incredible
4 interested 8 modern

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, it's good fun.
- 2 No, I prefer fish.
- 3 I love Rio de Janeiro: it's a very exciting city.
- 4 No, I'm not interested in jazz.
- 5 Yes, I do. I read books and watch history programmes a lot.
- 6 I enjoy walking in the countryside with my dog.
- 7 No, the restaurants where I live aren't very good.
- 8 I prefer old houses.

Unit 81

- 1 **Inside your home:** play computer games; do a lot of drawing; collect stamps

- 2 1 g 2 b 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 d

- 3 1 does 6 goes
2 collects 7 play
3 play 8 watches
4 go 9 go
5 do 10 does

4 possible answers:

I do a lot of travelling, I go out with friends a lot, I watch TV, I do a lot of cooking.
I would like to go to the gym and play the guitar.
I'm not interested in fishing, camping, computer games, golf, drawing or painting.

- 5 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

- 6 1 ✓
2 False. Kolya is a good singer.
3 False. Kolya plays the guitar.
4 False. There are various clubs in schools.
5 ✓
6 False. Natasha is quite good at dancing.
7 False. Computers and collecting things are popular hobbies.
8 False. Older people like repairing cars.

- 7 1 hobby 5 song
2 popular 6 at
3 various 7 repairing
4 singer

8 possible answers:

- 0 Yes, I'm a member of a swimming club.
- 1 I love making things like clothes, and I also enjoy painting.
- 2 Young people particularly like sports of all kinds, but gaming is also very popular.
- 3 I have various hobbies.
- 4 I am in a singing group, but if I sing alone, my voice isn't very good.
- 5 I can sing 'Human' by Rag and Bone Man.
- 6 I'm good at making things for the house: cushions, for example.
- 7 Yes, I often break things, so it's a good thing I like repairing things.

Unit 82

- 1 ice hockey, motor racing, table tennis, American football, basketball

- 2 1 game 5 do
2 skiing 6 bit/lot
3 racing 7 players; team
4 go 8 goal

- 3 **INSIDE A BUILDING:** basketball, ice hockey, running, swimming, table tennis, tennis
OUTSIDE A BUILDING: American football, baseball, football/soccer, motor racing, running, skiing, swimming, tennis

4 possible answers:

- 1 I play a bit of football and basketball with friends.
- 2 I play tennis every week and go skiing in the winter.
- 3 I watch football, rugby and tennis on TV.
- 4 Football is the most popular sport in Britain, but swimming, cycling, motor racing, rugby and cricket are also popular.

5

- 1 match/game
- 2 against
- 3 to
- 4 scored
- 5 nil
- 6 beat
- 7 won
- 8 draw
- 9 against

6

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 match/game | 7 beat |
| 2 against | 8 scored |
| 3 lost | 9 won (or lost) |
| 4 drew; with/against | 10 leading |
| 5 time | 11 score |
| 6 points | |

7 possible answers:

Manchester City beat Arsenal 2-0. Sterling scored just before half-time, and Aguero scored the second goal in the 78th minute.

Unit 83

1

- 1 concert
- 2 orchestra
- 3 pianist
- 4 audience
- 5 perform
- 6 opera singer
- 7 performance

2

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 classical | 6 performance |
| 2 pianist | 7 audience |
| 3 violinist | 8 performed/played |
| 4 orchestra | 9 pieces |
| 5 musical instruments | 10 by |

3 possible answers:

- 1 I don't go to classical music concerts very often because they're quite expensive.
- 2 *La Bohème* by Puccini, *The Magic Flute* by Mozart, the *Eroica Symphony* by Beethoven and *Swan Lake* by Tchaikovsky
- 3 I learnt to play the piano as a child, but I don't play now.
- 4 No.
- 5 The guitar.

4

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1 made | 4 go |
| 2 not good | 5 are able to |
| 3 cheaper | 6 like |

5

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1 tour | 6 musician |
| 2 live | 7 performer |
| 3 album | 8 festival |
| 4 hit | 9 recorded |
| 5 records/albums/
CDs | 10 ability |

6 possible answers:

- 1 I really like Radiohead.
- 2 I do both.
- 3 Yes, I saw them at Glastonbury.
- 4 *In Rainbows*.
- 5 Yes, they do.
- 6 No, but they have popular albums.

Unit 84

1 science violent exciting crime

2

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------|
| 1 thriller | 5 cartoon |
| 2 comedy | 6 love story |
| 3 action film | 7 horror film |
| 4 science fiction | |

3

- | | |
|--------------------|----------|
| 1 sort | 5 horror |
| 2 adventure/action | 6 funny |
| 3 kind | 7 type |
| 4 romantic | |

4

- 1 romantic
- 2 violent
- 3 scary
- 4 funny

5

- 1 F – He's an actor.
- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 T
- 5 F – It's a woman.
- 6 T
- 7 F – He's a director.

6

- | | | |
|-------------|---------|------------|
| 1 about | 4 stars | 7 director |
| 2 brilliant | 5 hero | 8 on |
| 3 in | 6 actor | 9 Let's |

7

possible answers:

- 1 I like thrillers and action films.
- 2 It was a Polish film called *Cold War*.
- 3 It was on at our local cinema.
- 4 Joanna Kulig and Tomasz Kot.
- 5 Pawel Pawlikowski.
- 6 It's about two Polish people after the Second World War. It's a love story with an unhappy ending.

Unit 85

- 1 1 in 7 -
2 the 8 of
3 on 9 a newspaper
4 out 10 of
5 on 11 crime
6 programme
- 2 1 watch; saw/watched
2 believe/think; none
3 news; happened
4 listen; heard/listened to
5 paper/newspaper
6 on; drama
7 to
8 programme
- 4 1 D 4 D 7 S
2 S 5 S 8 D
3 D 6 S 9 S
- 5 1 magazines 5 wars
2 reports 6 opinion(s)
3 events 7 journalists/reporters
4 disasters 8 celebrities
- 6 possible answers:
1 This week, Greta Thunberg spoke to the US Congress about climate change.
2 In the last five years, the UK had a referendum on leaving the EU or not.
3 I buy a newspaper on Saturdays, but during the rest of the week I usually get news from the TV, the radio and the internet.
4 The meerkat adverts (for Compare the Market) on TV are not new now, but I think they are still popular.
5 Jon Snow is a famous TV news reporter in the UK.

Unit 86

- 1 1 F – Non-fiction is about real things, fiction is not about real events.
2 T
3 T
4 F – If you are in trouble, it's bad.
5 T
6 T
7 F – A novel is a story.
8 T
9 F – If you create something, you make it or make it happen.
10 T
- 2 1 series/number 5 created
2 novels 6 rules
3 character 7 trouble
4 detective 8 solves

3 possible answers, from Poland:

- 1 Olga Tokarczuk is a famous author who writes novels.
2 Bieguni (Flights) is a novel by Olga Tokarczuk.
3 Korona królów (Crown of Kings) is a popular series on TV.
4 King Kazimierz is one of the main characters in Korona królów.
5 Eberhard Mock is a famous detective in fiction.
6 I sometimes ride a bike on a zebra crossing.
- 4 1 same, mainly 5 butter, publish
2 mostly, home 6 variety, another
3 realize, fine 7 blue, including
4 achieve, receive 8 recent, see
- 5 1 with you 5 is
2 know it 6 short
3 good 7 mainly
4 lots of different things 8 more information
- 6 1 past; mostly/mainly 4 published
2 including 5 variety
3 realized 6 tried; achieved

Unit 87

- 1 1 g 2 d 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 c
- 2 1 flight 5 foreign
2 accommodation 6 checked
3 booked/arranged 7 packed
4 might 8 suitcase
- 3 possible answers:
1 Yes, I always book a long time before I travel because it's often cheaper.
2 Usually I do if I'm travelling with all the family. If I'm alone, I often don't.
3 No, I don't.
4 Yes, always. I need to know what I have.
5 No, never, but I know I should do.
- 4 1 No 3 No 5 No 7 No
2 Yes 4 Yes 6 Yes
- 5 1 d 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 e
- 6 1 available 7 a
2 single/double 8 include
3 double/single 9 afraid
4 en suite 10 extra
5 dear 11 parking
6 matter 12 details

Unit 88

- 1 1 went on 5 definitely
2 recommend 6 stay
3 excellent 7 tourism
4 tourists 8 chat

- 2 1 excellent 5 staying
2 helpful 6 recommend
3 tourists 7 definitely/certainly
4 guests

- 3 1 stay
2 service
3 chat
4 recommend
5 tourists

- 4 possible answers:
1 One night.
2 Yes, quite good.
3 Yes, I did.
4 Yes, definitely/certainly.
5 No, it's a business hotel.

- 5 1 g 3 f 5 b
2 a 4 d 6 e

- 6 1 sign 5 serve
2 leave 6 change
3 call/take 7 collect
4 pay 8 check

- 7 1 key 3 serve 5 out
2 until/till 4 have; have 6 call

Unit 89

- 1 1 board 5 airport
2 check-in 6 hand luggage
3 boarding card 7 airline
4 aeroplane 8 security

- 2 boarding pass; hand luggage; board the plane;
check-in desk; ticket machine

- 3 1 passengers; check-in
2 reach
3 boarding; luggage; check
4 gate; board/get on
5 airports
6 print; machine
7 luggage

- 4 possible answers:
1 No, I use different airlines.
2 Yes, I do.
3 No, the first thing I do is check in, then I have a coffee.
4 Yes, of course.
5 No, it doesn't matter to me.
6 Yes, I do.

- 5 1 You get on the plane.
2 You fasten your seat belt.
3 The plane takes off.
4 Flight attendants provide drinks.
5 The plane lands.
6 You get off the plane.
7 Someone checks your passport.
8 You collect your luggage.
9 You leave the airport.

- 6 1 departure 7 landed
2 board/get on 8 arrival
3 fasten 9 checked
4 takes off 10 collect
5 flight 11 leave
6 provide

- 7 possible answers:
1 I'm fine, but my wife is very nervous.
2 I eat some of it, but it's usually terrible.
3 I'm excited.
4 I always try to travel with just hand luggage.

Unit 90

- 1 possible answers:
They used to go to Hyères on holiday.
They used to get a bus to Hyères.
They used to stay in an apartment.
He used to go swimming.
She used to sit on the beach.
She used to read on the beach.
They used to have lunch in the apartment.
They used to have dinner in one of the restaurants.
They used to relax after lunch.
She used to write postcards.
He used to go out on a boat.

- 2 1 couple
2 beach
3 boat
4 rocks
5 relax
6 flew
7 used

- 3 1 We used to stay 4 my dad, while my mum
2 a couple of weeks 5 lots of postcards
3 used to swim 6 a typical day

- 4 possible answers:
1 We went to several places: sometimes the south coast of England and sometimes to a couple of places in Spain.
2 A couple of weeks.
3 Yes, I went on a boat in England a couple of times – I enjoyed it.
4 I like being active – swimming and doing other sports.

- 5 1 go 5 guided
2 guidebook 6 take
3 go on 7 round
4 visit 8 an ideal

- 6 1 photos 7 tour
2 went; guide 8 visit
3 got; map/ 9 gets
guidebook 10 round; take
4 sightseeing 11 ideal/perfect
5 guided; prefer 12 look
6 guidebook

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I usually get a map from the tourist information office.
- 2 I sometimes buy a guidebook but not often.
- 3 No, but I sometimes go on bus tours.
- 4 Yes, generally I prefer to go sightseeing on my own.
- 5 Yes, almost always.
- 6 Yes, I spend most of my time looking round.
- 7 No, I don't take lots of photos but my wife does.
- 8 Not often, but it sometimes happens.
- 9 My ideal place for a sightseeing holiday is Venice.

Unit 91

- 1 1 Hello, nice to meet you.
2 Max, this is Emma. (or Emma, this is Max.)
3 Bye. Hope to see you again. (OR Hope to see you again. Bye.)
4 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. (OR Nice to meet you. Goodbye.)
- 2 1 introduce
2 shake
3 greet (*also possible*: meet)
4 Introductions
5 welcome
6 greetings
- 3 1 Hello/Hi; Nice/Good to meet you
2 again; Bye/Goodbye
3 this; meet you; welcome
4 Hope/Good; Bye/Goodbye
- 4 1 See you tomorrow.
2 He's very well.
3 What's the matter?
4 See you later.
5 See you soon.
6 How are things?
7 Give my love to Suki.
8 I've got to go now.
9 That's fine.
- 5 things; Fine/Very well; matter; 've got to; dear; give my love; will
- 6 well; fine/good; how's; good/fine
Anyway; 've got to; later; that's; then

Unit 92

- 1 1 How often do you go there?
2 What sort of music do you like?
3 What does he do?
4 How long have you lived there?
5 What type of films do you watch?
6 Who does this belong to?
7 What's his flat like?
8 Why do you like her?

- | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|
| 2 a 4 | c 7 | e 6 | g 2 |
| b 5 | d 1 | f 3 | |

- 3 1 often; once/twice
2 Whose; mine
3 What
4 Yeah/Yes
- 4 1 What
2 long
3 time
4 many
- 5 1 far
2 close/shut
3 many
4 worth
- 5 belong
6 kind/sort/type
7 idea
8 long
5 nearest
6 seeing
7 Which
8 far
5 Which
6 nearest
7 What
8 recommend

6 possible answers:

- 1 I live in Sevilla, in Spain.
- 2 I have lived here twenty-five years.
- 3 The Alcazar Palace and the Cathedral.
- 4 About a kilometre.
- 5 There are many, but my favourite is Egana Oriza.
- 6 It's only a few hundred metres.

Unit 93

- 1 1 you; me; course
2 bring; please; problem
3 Could (*also possible*: Can); afraid
4 polite
5 responses
6 take; bring
7 make
8 requests; polite
9 put
- 2 possible answers:
 - 1 A Could/Can you finish this exercise for homework, please?
B Yes, sure.
 - 2 A Luca, can/could you change places with Maria, please?
B Yes, no problem.
 - 3 A Could/Can you bring your notebook tomorrow, please?
B I'm afraid I can't.
 - 4 A Can/Could you lend me a pencil, please?
B Yes, sure.
 - 5 A Could you take these books to the library, please?
B I'm afraid I can't. I have to leave now.
 - 6 A Could/Can you finish the/your essay by Monday?
B Yes, sure.

3 possible answers:

- 1 Is it **all right** if I use this dictionary?
 - 2 Do you **mind** if I make a coffee?
 - 3 **Could I** stay for another ten minutes?/Is it **OK/all right if/Do you mind if** I stay another ten minutes?
 - 4 Is it **OK if** I close the window?
 - 5 Can I **borrow** your book?
 - 6 Yes, **sure/no problem/go ahead/that's fine**.
 - 7 I'm **afraid** I need it.
 - 8 Yes, **of course/no problem/go ahead/that's fine**.
- 4 1 Do you mind if I go at one o'clock today, please?
2 Could I borrow a piece of paper, please?/
Could you lend me a piece of paper, please?
3 Is it OK if I go to the toilet?
4 Is it all right if I sit in a different seat?
5 Can you lend me a pen, please?/
Can I borrow a pen, please?
- 5 go ahead; no problem; of course; I'm afraid I need it.; that's fine

Unit 94

1 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

- 2 1 Would you like to come round later?
2 Yes, I'd love to.
3 Do you want to go out for dinner?
4 That **sounds** lovely.
5 I've just got an **invitation** to a party.
6 I'm afraid I can't.
7 That **would be** nice.
8 Do you want to come to a party?
9 I'm **sorry**, but I'm busy tonight.
10 Ben **invited** me to lunch on Saturday.
- 3 1 Would you like to go out for a meal?
~ Yes, great!
2 Do you want to come round for a coffee?
~ I'm afraid I can't.
3 Would you like to come to a party tomorrow?
~ Yes, that sounds lovely.
4 Do you want to go out for a coffee?
~ I'd love to, but I'm going to the gym.

4 dialogue 1

What shall we do this weekend?
The weather's nice, so
what about going to the beach?
Yes, that's a good idea.
And maybe we could take the train.
Fine. Shall we get the tickets online?
I'd prefer to get them at the station.

dialogue 2

Where shall we go tomorrow?
What about a nice meal at home?
I think I'd prefer to go out.
But it's going to rain.
OK, then let's order a pizza.
OK, fine.

- 5 1 What shall we do this evening?
2 Do you have a **suggestion**?
3 What about **going** to see a film?
4 I'd prefer to go by train.
5 Yes, **that's** a good idea.
6 Where **shall** we go tomorrow?
- 6 1 B What about going to the theatre?
A I'm not sure about that.
2 A What shall we do on Saturday?
B Perhaps we could go out for a meal.
A OK, let's do that.
3 A Where shall we go this afternoon?
B Let's go to a museum.
A Yeah, that's a good idea.

Unit 95

- 1 1 Do you want something to eat?
2 No thanks.
3 I'm fine, thanks.
4 Would you like something to eat?
5 Let me help you.
6 Thank you very much.
7 Thanks. Could I have a coffee?
- 2 1 help; please 4 let; worry
2 offer 5 refused
3 need; Thanks 6 accept
- 3 1 Would you like a drink?/Would you like something to drink?
Yes, please. Could I have some water?
2 Do you need some/any help?
No, I'm fine, thanks./No, don't worry, thanks.
3 Would you like something to eat?
Thanks./Yes, please. Could I have an apple?
4 Let me help you.
No, don't worry.
- 4 1 f 3 i 5 d 7 g
2 a 4 h 6 e 8 b
- 5 1 That's 5 mind
2 I'm 6 sorry; polite
3 forgotten; right 7 broken; worry
4 very/really/so; 8 rude
matter
- 6 1 so, really
2 it doesn't matter; that's all right; never mind; don't worry
3 when you:
feel bad about something
feel sad about something
want somebody to repeat something

Unit 96

- 1 1 certainly
2 impossible
3 possibility
4 definitely
5 likely
6 probably
7 perhaps
- 2 1 D 3 D 5 D 7 D
2 S 4 S 6 S 8 S
- 3 1 I'll probably ...
2 ... likely to come ...
3 ... think so.
4 ... hope not.
5 ... there's a chance ...
6 I may/might see ...
- 4 1 probably; may/might
2 definitely; probably; likely
3 wedding; certainly
4 chance
5 attend; likely; may/might
6 possibility; so
7 maybe; certain; probably
8 impossible
- 5 possible answers:
1 I hope so.
2 I'll probably go out with my friends.
3 No, I'm definitely going out on Sunday.
4 I might do a bit of work.
5 I'll probably watch some sport in the evening.
6 I don't think I'm likely to spend a lot.
7 Yes, I'm definitely going to see my family for lunch on Sunday.
8 Maybe. I'm not sure.

Unit 97

- 1 1 X it's **also** near the park
2 X he understands Greek **too**
3 ✓
4 X and **also** washed the car
5 ✓
6 X and there's a park near the house **as well**
- 2 1 I often eat ice cream/cake and I also like cake/ice cream.
2 I enjoy watching TV, and I go to the cinema a lot too.
3 I can speak English/German and I can understand German/English as well.
4 I read a lot of books and I also listen to music.
5 I play football and I watch it on TV as well.
6 I drive and I walk a lot too.
- 3 'True' or 'false' as correct for you.

- 4 1 He went to bed late, but he couldn't sleep.
2 People don't like her very much. However, she's very kind.
3 Although the food was terrible, the service was good./The food was terrible, although the service was good.
4 It was snowing, but we still decided to go out.
5 We lost our dog. However, we found it after an hour.
6 Although I wore a coat, I was still cold.
7 I watched the whole programme. I didn't enjoy it, though.
8 We had a big lunch. However, Jason was still hungry.
- 5 1 I was really hungry, but I had to wait until 10.00 for dinner.
2 I was last in the queue. However, I only had to wait five minutes.
3 I was very cold. However, someone lent me a jacket.
4 I was very frightened, but someone held my hand.
5 I was late for the party. However, everybody was still there.
6 I was really tired. However, I stayed at work to finish the job.
- 6 possible answers:
1 I didn't like it.
2 we (still) went out.
3 it was very friendly.
4 she (still) went to work.
5 she didn't pass the exam.
6 when I got there, it was closed.

Unit 98

- 1 1 because of 5 so
2 to 6 in order to
3 because 7 so
4 as a result
- 2 1 (in order) to 5 because
2 so 6 so
3 because of 7 (in order) to
4 As a result 8 as a result/so
- 3 possible answers:
1 because of the weather.
2 in order to work.
3 so I was late for work.
4 and as a result I didn't get to work until 9.30.
5 because I went out with friends in the evening.
6 so I was tired the next day.
- 4 1 Secondly 4 First of all
2 After that 5 then
3 Finally 6 Before that

5 possible answers:

- 1 Firstly, you make the sauce. Secondly, you boil the pasta. Finally, you add the sauce to the pasta.
- 2 First of all, I did a degree in History. After that, I trained to be a teacher, and finally, I got a teaching job in Liverpool.
- 3 First of all, we left our home in Rome. Then we stayed in Munich for a week. After that, we spent the second week in Heidelberg. Finally we flew back to Rome.
- 4 First I made a shopping list. Then I went to the market. After that I came home and had a cup of tea. Finally, I cooked the dinner.
- 5 Firstly, I had a shower, then I got dressed. After that, I had breakfast and finally, I rang for a taxi and left home.

6 possible answer:

First of all, I took a train to Bristol and met my friend, Sue. After that, we went for a walk by the river in the sunshine. Then we went to a café and had lunch which was delicious. And then finally, we went to her flat and had a cup of coffee with her brother.

Unit 99

- | | |
|---------|-------|
| 1 1 out | 5 up |
| 2 up | 6 up |
| 3 over | 7 off |
| 4 out | |

- | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|
| 2 1 out | 4 down | 7 off |
| 2 up | 5 down | 8 over |
| 3 up | 6 up | 9 up |

3 possible answers:

- 1 I would like to give up sweets.
- 2 I grew up in London.
- 3 I feel afraid.
- 4 I don't often go out in the evenings. When I do, I go to dinner with my friends.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 4 1 Take it off. | 5 Take them off. |
| 2 Put it on. | 6 Give it up. |
| 3 Turn it on. | 7 Turn them on. |
| 4 Put them on. | 8 Put it on. |

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 5 1 correct | 5 correct |
| 2 correct | 6 correct |
| 3 turn it on | 7 put it on |
| 4 take it off | 8 correct |

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 6 1 go back | 4 take off |
| 2 carry on | 5 go up |
| 3 go away | 6 wake up |

Unit 100

- | | | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1 1 d | 2 c | 3 b | 4 f | 5 a | 6 e |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

- 2**
- 1 go
 - 2 out
 - 3 in
 - 4 back
 - 5 ready/dressed/changed
 - 6 get

- | | |
|-------------|----------|
| 3 1 dressed | 4 sleep |
| 2 ready | 5 better |
| 3 changed | 6 get |

4 possible answers:

- 1 I get dressed before I have breakfast.
- 2 No, I get ready very quickly.
- 3 Yes, I usually get changed. I put my jeans on.
- 4 Yes, sometimes.
- 5 Yes, I hope so.
- 6 Yes, we get lots of tourists where I live.

- 5** the rest of the time; hurry up; let me know;
I guess so; come on; well done; right now


- 6**
- 1 nothing
 - 2 like
 - 3 away/now; hurry
 - 4 Guess; Wow; done
 - 5 after
 - 6 guess/suppose; let
 - 7 else

- 7**
- 1 The bar was busy so we went somewhere else.
 - 2 Could you let me know later?
 - 3 Who is going to take care of the children?
 - 4 Hurry up, Sacha!
 - 5 Do you feel like going out?
 - 6 Penny is here. Everyone else went out.

A1 items from the Oxford 3000 word list that are not keywords in Word Skills Elementary

This list includes some items which are used in Unit headings, and it is assumed learners will understand them.

classroom
family
hotel
learn
money
number
restaurant
school
sport
university
weather

This list includes some grammar words and some items which are very common, and it is assumed learners will know them. For any unknown words, please use the  to check the meaning.

adult
anyone
artist
ball
be
boy
cannot
cent
chart
child
class
cup
dancer
diet
difficult
everybody
future
girl
he
hello
her
hey
him
his
I
imagine
important
interest
it
its
join
life
list

local
man
me
metre
must
my
no
no one
nobody
object
or
our
page
paint
people
period
person
quick
quickly
real
room
scientist
second (= unit of time)
section
she
show
skill
slow
somebody
someone
something
student
talk
tell
that
the
theatre
their
them
they
title
today
tonight
topic
understand
us
we
woman
yes
you
young
your
yourself

Word list

The CEFR (Common European Framework) levels are given for all the words/phrases in the **Oxford 3000**. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

- a bit** (used as *adv*) **A2** 37
- a bit** (+ *adj*) **A2** 37, 64
- a bit (of sth)** **B1** 37
- a couple (of sth)** **A2** 31, 50, 90
- a day/week, etc.** 70
- a few** **A1** 60
- a little** **A1** 64
- a lot (of sth)** **A1** 37
- a night** *as in* **£90 a night** 87
- ability** **A2** 83
- about** **A1** 6
- about** **A1** *as in* **it's about ...** 84
- above** **A1** 20
- abroad** **A2** 13
- accept** **A2** 71, 95
- accessory** 25
- accident** **A1** 32
- accommodation** **B1** 87
- achieve** **A2** 86
- across** **A1** 19
- act** *v* **A2** 76
- action film** 84
- active** **A2** 15
- activity** **A1** 5
- actor** **A1** 76, 84
- actress** **A1** 84
- actually** **A2** 21
- add** **A1** 71, 85
- address** *n* **A1** 13
- address book** 79
- adjective** 2
- adventure film** 84
- adverb** 2
- advert** 71, 85
- advertisement** **A2** 71, 85
- advertising** **A2** 70
- advice** **A1** 16, 31
- afraid (of sth/sb)** **A1** 17
- afraid** *as in* **I'm afraid (not)** **A2** 87, 93
- afraid** *as in* **I'm afraid I can't** **A2** 94
- Africa** 35
- after that** 98
- afternoon** **A1** *as in* **in the afternoon** 7
- again** **A1** 68
- against** **A2** 82
- age** **A1** *as in* **at the age of** **A1** 67
- ago** **A1** 9
- agree with (sb)** **A1** 22
- air** **A1** *as in* **fresh air** **A1** 57
- airline** **A2** 70, 89
- airport** **A1** 89
- alarm clock** 29
- album** **B1** 83
- alcoholic drinks** 50
- alive** **A2** 30, 63
- all (of sth)** **A1** 85
- all day** **A1** /**morning/afternoon/evening** 7
- all right** **A2** 49, 93
- all the time** **A2** 37
- allow** **A2** 55
- almost** **A2** 7
- alone** **A2** 15
- along** **A2** 19
- already** **A2** 9
- also** **A1** 97
- although** **A2** 97
- always** **A1** 23
- a.m.** 7
- amazing** **A1** 72, 80
- American football** 82
- American** 35
- ancient** **A2** 36
- and** **A1** 97
- and so on** **B1** 3
- angrily** **A2** 65
- angry** **A1** 17, 65
- animal** **A1** 38, 47
- ankle** **A2** 10
- another** **A1** 49
- answer (the phone)** **A1** 75
- any more** **A2** 29
- anything else?** **A1** 50
- anyway** **A2** 91
- anywhere** **A2** 33
- apartment** **A1** 58
- appearance** **A2** 26
- apple** **A1** 46
- apply for sth** **A2** 22, 71
- appointment** **B1** 9
- April** **A1** 8
- Arabic** 35
- architect** **A2** 68
- architecture** **A2** 68
- area** **A1** 30, 57
- Argentina** 35
- Argentinian** 35
- argue** **A2** 17, 78
- argument** **A2** 17, 78
- arm** **A1** 10
- armchair** 61
- army** **A2** 70
- around** **A1** 6
- arrange** **A2** 78, 87
- arrangement** **A2** 78
- arrival** **B1** 89
- arrive (at a place)** **A1** 23, 53, 89
- art** **A1** 66
- art gallery** 56, 79
- article** **A1** 85
- arts subjects** 66
- as a result** **A2** 98
- as well** **A2** 97
- Asia** 35
- ask sb for sth** **A1** 22
- asleep** **A2** 63

at

(a place) **A1** 20
(a time) **A1** 18
(= @) **A1** 74
all 80
breakfast, etc. **A1** 18
Christmas 18
first **A2** 21
least **A2** 21
midnight 7, 18
New Year 18
night 7, 18
school **A1** 21
(the age of sth) **A2** 67
the back of sth 21
the beginning/start of sth **A1** 21
the bottom of sth 21
the end of sth **A1** 21
the front of sth 21
the moment **A1** 18, 21, 75
the same time **A1** 21
the time **A2** 21
the top of sth **A2** 21
the weekend **A1** 18, 23
university **A1** 21
work **A1** 72
attack **A2** 30
attend **A2** 96
attractive **A2** 11
audience **A2** 83
August **A1** 8
aunt **A1** 14
Australia 35
Australian 35
author **A2** 86
autumn **A1** 8
available **A2** 87
average **A2** 11
awake 63
away **A1** as in go away **A2** 99
away as in right away 100
awful **A2** 26

baby **A1** as in have a baby 16

back **A1** 10
backache 31
bacon 47
bad 17; **A1** 67
bad at sth **A1** 66
badly **A2** 65
bag **A1** 1, 45
baker's 28
banana **A1** 46
band **A1** 83
bank account 27
bar (of chocolate) **B1** 45
bar **A2** 50
base sth on sth **B1** 22
baseball **A2** 82
basketball 82
bath **A1** 60
bathroom **A1** 58, 79

be

able to do sth **A2** 83
born **A1** 14
divorced **A2** 16
from **A1** 13
sick **A1** 31
the same as sth **A1** 3
together **A1** 16
beach **A1** 36, 90
beans **A2** 46
bear **A2** 38
beard 11
beat **v** **A2** 82
beautiful **A1** 11
because **A1** 98
because of sth/sb **A1** 98
become **A1** 16
bed **A1** 60
bedroom **A1** 58
bee **B1** 38
beef **A2** 47
beer **A1** 48
before that **A1** 98

begin **A1** 39

beginning **A1** as in at the beginning of sth **A1** 21
behind **A1** 20
believe **A1** 30, 85
belong to sb **A2** 29, 92
below **A1** 20
belt **A2** 25
best **A1** as in (the) best 6/
best friend **A1** 16
better (than) **A1** 37
better **A2** as in get better **A2** 31
between **A1** 20
bicycle **A1** 51
big **A1** 26
bike **A1** 51
bill **A1** 27, 49, 88
billion **A2** 6
bin **A2** 59
biology **A2** 66
bird **A1** 38
birthday **A1** 8
birthday card 79
biscuit **A2** 45
bit **A2** as in a bit (of sth) **B1** 37, 64
black **A1** 26
black coffee 50
black pepper 48
blog **A1** 74
blonde **A1** 11
blood **A2** 10
blow **A2** 37
blue **A1** 26
board **v** (— get on) **B1** 89
board **A2** 1
board pen 1
boarding pass/card 89
boat **A1** 90
body **A1** 10
body **A1** as in a dead body 30
boil **A2** 49
boiled **A2** 49
bone **A2** 10

book *v* **A2** 53, 87
bookshop 28, 68
boots **A1** 25
border **B1** 36
bored **A1** 17, 80
bored with sth **A1** 22
boring **A1** 80
born **A1** *as in* **be born** **A1** 14
borrow **A2** 93
boss **A2** 69
both (of sb/sth) **A1** 38
bottle **A1** 48
bottom **B1** 10
bowl **A2** 48
box **A1** 45
boyfriend **A1** 14, 16
brain **A2** 10
Brazil 35
Brazilian 35
bread **A1** 45
bread (white/brown) 50
break **A1** 12, 32, 39, 95
break a rule 86
breakfast **A1** 23
bridge **A2** 56
bright **A2** 37
brilliant **A2** 84
bring **A1** 39, 93
Britain 35
broken **A2** 32
brother **A1** 14
brother-in-law 14
brown **A1** 26
brown bread 50
brush *n, v* **A2** 60
build **A1** 34, 39
builder 69
building **A1** 56, 70
burn **A2** 32, 39
bus **A1** 51
bus driver 69
(bus) stop 52, 79

business studies 68
businessman **A2** 68, 69
businesswoman 68, 69
busy **A1** 51, 56, 94
busy (= telephone) **B1** 75
but **A1** 97
butter **A1** 45
button **A2** 24
buy **A1** 2/, 39
by **A1** *as in* **a book by Tolstoy** 83
by the end of sth **A2** 21
bye **A1** 75, 91
cabbage 46
café **A1** 50
cake **A1** 45, 50
call *n, v* **A1** 44, 75, 88
call sb back 75
called **A1** 4
camera **A1** 29
camping **A2** 77, 81
Can I get ... ? 50
Can I have ... ? 50
Can I/you ... ? 93
Canada 35
Canadian 35
capital **A1** 36
capital letter 8, 79
car **A1** 51
car park **A1** 79
care about sb/sth **A2** 22
career **A1** 69
careful **A2** 73
carefully **A2** 65, 73
carpet **A2** 61
carriage **C1** 53
carrot **A1** 46
carry **A1** 12, 25
carry on (with sth) **A2** 67, 99
cartoon **A2** 84
cash **A2** 27
castle **A2** 56
cat **A1** 38

catch (an illness) **B1** 31, 39
catch (a ball) **A2** 12, 39
cause *n, v* **A2** 34, 44
CD **A1** 1, 83
CD player 1
celebrate 78
celebration 78
celebrity 85
Central America 35
century **A1** 18
certain **A2** 62, 96
certainly **A2** 49, 88, 96
chair **A1** 1
chance **A2** *as in* **a good chance** 96
change (= become different) **A1** 37
change (money) **A1** 88
change (trains) **A2** 53
change places 93
character **A2** *as in* **main character** 86
charity **A2** 72
chat *v, n* **A2** 44, 88
cheap **A1** 76
check **A1** 74, 87, 89
check in **A2** 88, 89
check-in 89
check-in desk 89
check out **A2** 88
cheese **A1** 45
chef **A2** 69
chemist's 28, 31
chemistry **A2** 66
chest **B1** 10
chicken **A1** 47
chin 10
China 35
Chinese 35
chips **A2** 49
chocolate **A1** 45
choice **A2** 28, 78
choose **A1** 28, 78
Christmas Day 8
church **A2** 56

- cinema **A1** 84
circle *n* **A2** 29
circle *v* **A2** 3
city **A1** 36
classical music 83
clean *adj* **A2** 56
clean *v* **A1** 59
clean (your teeth) **A1** 60
cleaner 69
clear (sky) **A2** 37
clearly **A2** 65
clever **A2** 15
click on sth **B1** 74
client **B1** 70
climate **A2** 36
climb **A1** 12
clock **A1** 29, 61
close *v* **A1** 12, 73, 92
close friend 16
closed **A2** 55
clothes **A1** 24
clothes shop 28
clothing **A2** 24
cloud **A2** 37
cloudy 37
club **A1** 81
coach (= bus) **A2** 51
coach (= in train) 53
coal **B1** 34
coast **A2** 36
coat **A1** 24
coffee **A1** 50
coin **B1** 27
cold *adj* **A1** 37
cold *n* **A1** 31
colleague **A2** 70
collect (stamps, etc.) **A2** 81
collect (= go and get sth) **B1** 88, 89
college **A1** 67
colour **A1** 26
column **A2** 3
come **A1** 39
come from somewhere **A1** 13
Come on! **A2** 100
come round 23, 94
comedy **A2** 84
comfortable **A2** 26
comma 6
comment *n* **A2** 44
comment *v* **B1** 44
common **A1** 31, 63
communicate **A2** 13
community **A2** 71
company **A1** 69
compare (sth with sth) **A1** 5, 28
competition **A2** 76
complain **A2** 78
complaint **B1** 78
complete *v* **A1** 3
completely different 15
computer games 81
computer science 66, 68
concert **A1** 83
congratulations **C1** 100
contain **A2** 74
context **A2** 5
continent **A2** 35
continue **A2** 67
control *n, v* **A2** 44
conversation **A1** 5
cook *v* **A1** 59
cooked **A1** 46
cooker **A2** 59
cooking **A1** 81
cool **A1** 37
copy *n, v* **A2** 44, 73
corner **A2** 61
corner **A2** as in on the corner 54
correct *adj, v* **A1** 3, 4
correctly **A2** 65
cost *n, v* **A1** 27, 39, 44
cough *n* 31
could (= suggestion) **A1** 94
Could I have ..., please? 45, 95
Could I/you ... ? 4, 93
count **A2** 6
country **A1** 35
couple (= two people) **A2** 16
couple **A2** as in a couple of sth/sb **A2** 31, 50, 90
course **A1** 13, 68
coursebook 1
cousin **A1** 14
cover *v* **A2** 3
cow **A1** 38, 47
crab **A1** 47
cream (= colour) **B1** 26
cream (= food) **A1** 49
create **A1** 57, 86
creative **A2** 57
credit card **A2** 27, 79
crime **A2** 30
crime drama 85
criminal **A2** 30
crisps 50
cross sth out 3
cross *v* **A2** 54
crowd **A2** 56
crowded **A2** 56
cry **A2** 17
cucumber 46
culture **A1** 36
cupboard **A2** 59
curly **A2** 11
curtain **B1** 61
customer **A1** 45, 49
cut (= in a computer document) 73, 39
cut *n, v* **A1** 32, 39
Czech 35
Czech Republic 35
dad **A1** 14
daily **A1** *adj, B1* *adv* 23
dance *v* **A1** 12
dancing **A1** 81
danger **A2** 30, 55

- dangerous** **A1** 30, 56
dark (= with not much light) **A1** 63
dark (= hair colour) **A1** 11
dark blue 26
date **A1** 8
daughter **A1** 14
day **A1** 8
dead **A2** 30, 63
debit card 27
December **A1** 8
decide **A1** 78
decision **A2** 41, 78
deep **A2** 33
definite article 2
definitely **A2** 88, 96
degree **A2** 68
delicious **A1** 49
dentist **A2** 69
department store 28, 79
departure **B1** 89
depend on sb/sth **A2** 22
describe **A1** 5, 78
description **A1** 5, 78
desert **A2** 33
design *n* **A1** 66
design *v* **A1** 70
desk **A1** 1
dessert 49
destroy **A2** 34
details **A1** 87
detective **A2** 86
develop **A2** 34
device **A2** 29
dialogue **A1** 5
diary **A2** 9, 29
dictionary **A1** 1
die **A1** 85
difference **A1** 4
different **A1** 3, 63
digital **A2** 29
dining room 58, 79
dinner **A1** 23
direct **A2** 53
directions **A2** 54
director **A2** 84
dirty **A1** 56
disagree with sb **A2** 22
disappear **A2** 34
disaster **A2** 34, 85
disc jockey 79
discover **A2** 30, 78
discovery **A2** 30, /8
discuss **A1** 5, 70
discussion **A2** 5
dish **A1** 48
dishwasher 59, 79
dislike **B1** 80
divorced **A2** 16
DJ 79
do
 (= have a job or study sth) **A1**
 13, 41
 (an activity) **A1** 41, 82
 a course 68
 a degree (in sth) 68
 an exam 67
 an exercise 5, 41
 badly 67
 exercise 41
 homework 5, 41, 67
 research 68
 the housework 41, 59
 the ironing 59
 the shopping 41
 a sport 82
 the washing 59
 the washing up 59
 well **A2** 67
 you know the way to ... ? 54
 you mind if I ... ? 93
 you want to? 94
 you want ... ? 95
 your best 41
 your hair 60
doctor **A1** 68
document **A2** 73
dog **A1** 38
dollar **A1** 27
don't mind 80
don't worry 95
door **A1** *as in* front door 58
dot **B2*** 74
double **A2** 4, 75
double room 87
down **A1** 19
download (music) *v* **A2** 83
downstairs **A1** 58
draw with/against sb 82
drawing **A2** 81
dream *n, v* **A2** 44
dress **A1** 24
drink *v* **A1** 39
drink *n* **A1** 50
drive **A1** 39, 51, 76
driver **A1** 69, /6
driving **A2** 77
drop **A2** 17
drug **A2** 32
dry **A2** 37
duck 47
during (the week) **A1** 23
DVD player 61
each **A1** 27
each other **A1** 15, 16
ear **A1** 10
early **A1** 23
earn **A2** 27, 70
earth **B1** 57
Earth **A2** *as in* planet Earth 84
easily **A2** 65
east *n, adj* **A1** 36
easy **A1** 65
eat **A1** 47
education **A2** 67
e.g. 3
egg **A1** 45

Egypt 35
 Egyptian 35
 eight A1 6
 eighteen A1 6
 eighteenth 8
 eighth 8
 eighty A1 6
 either ... or A2 67
 electric fan 29
 electric razor 60
 electrical store 28
 electricity A2 34
 electronic mail 74
 elephant A1 38
 eleven A1 6
 eleventh 8
 else A1 as in everyone else A2,
 somewhere/nothing else 100
 email n, v A1 44, 74
 embarrassed B1 17
 emotions B1 17
 employ A2 69
 employee A2 69
 employer A2 69
 empty adj A2; v B1 59
 en suite 87
 end A1 as in at/by the end of
 sth A1 21
 end A1 as in in the end A2 21
 energy A2 34
 engineer A2 68
 engineering B1 68
 England 35
 English 35
 enjoy v A1 80
 enjoyable B2* 80
 enormous A2 36
 enough A1 27
 enter A2 55, 72
 entrance B1 55
 environment A2 34
 environmental B1 34
 equal v B1 3, 6

equipment A2 as in kitchen
 equipment 59
 error A2 3
 especially A2 64
 essay A2 as in write an essay 5, 68
 etc./etcetera 3
 euro A1 27
 Europe 35
 even A1 64
 evening A1 as in in the evening 7
 event A1 85
 ever A1 9, 39
 every A1 52
 everyday A2 59
 everyone A1 as in everyone
 else A2 100
 everything A1 28
 everywhere A2 33
 ex (-wife/husband, etc.) 16
 ex-boyfriend (-girlfriend) 16
 exactly A2 13
 exam A1 67
 examination B2 67
 example A1 as in for example A1 3
 excellent A2 88
 except A2 28
 excited A1 17
 exciting A1 84
 excuse me A1 52, 54
 exercise book 1
 exercise A1 [C] as in do exercises 41
 exercise A1 [U] as in do exercise 41
 exit B2* 51, 55
 expensive A1 26
 experience A2 71
 explain A1 4, 5
 explanation A2 5
 extra A1 87
 extreme A2 34
 extremely A2 37, 64
 eye A1 10
 face A1 10
 fact A1 36

factory A2 70
 fail an (an exam) A2 67
 fair (hair) B1 11
 fall A1 39, 44
 fall over 12, 99
 false A1 3
 family name 13
 famous A1 36
 fan (= to cool yourself) 29, 61
 fantastic A1 13
 far A1 as in how far 51, 92
 Far East 35
 fare B2* 53
 farm A1 38, 57
 farmer A1 38, 57
 farming A2 57
 fashion designer 69
 fast adj, adv A1 65
 fast train 53
 fasten (your seat belt) B1 89
 fat A1 11
 father A1 14
 favourite A1 80
 feature B1 11
 February A1 8
 feed A2 55, 59
 feel A1 17
 feel A1 as in I don't feel well 31
 feel like (doing) sth A2 100
 feelings A1 17
 feet A1 10
 festival A1 83
 fetch 100
 few A1 60
 fiction A2 86
 field A2 57
 fifteen A1 6
 fifteenth 8
 fifth 8
 fifty A1 6
 fight n, v A2 39, 44
 file B1 73

fill **A1** 59
fill in (a form) **A2** 71
film **A1** 84
final score 82
finally **A2** 98
find **A1** 30
find (sth) out **A1** 85, 99
fine (= OK) **A2** 50
fine (= well) **A1** 91
finger **A2** 10
finish **A1** 23, 93
fire **A1** 61
first **A1** 8, 98
first course 49
first floor 58, 79
first name 13
first of all **A2** 98
firstly **A2** 98
fish **A1** 47
fishing **A2** 81
fit **A2** 26
five **A1** 6
fizzy water 48, 49
fizzy drink 50
flat *adj.* **A2** 29
flat *n.* **A1** 58
flatmate 16
flight **A1** 87
flight attendant 89
floor **A1** 61
flower **A1** 57
flu **A2** 31
fly *n.* (= insect) **A2** 38
fly *v.* **A1** 87, 90
flying **A2** 77
follow (instructions) **A2** 5
food **A1** 45, 50
foot (*pl.* feet) **A1** 10
football **A1** 82
for **A1** 9
for example **A1** 3
foreign **A2** 87

forest **A1** 33
forget **A1** 5, 39, 95
fork **A2** 48
form **A1** 71
formal **A2** 3, 62
fortunately **A2** 68
forty **A1** 6
four **A1** 6
fourteen **A1** 6
fourteenth 8
fourth 8
France 35
free **A2** 27
French 35
fresh **A2** 46
fresh air 57
Friday **A1** 8
fridge **A2** 59
fried **B1** 49
friend **A1** *as in* **best friend** **A1** 16
friendly **A1** 15
from *as in* **be from** 13
from ... to **A1** 70
front **A1** *as in* **at the front of** 21
front **A1** *as in* **in front of sth** **A1** 20
front door 58
frozen **B1** 46
fruit **A1** 46
fruit and vegetable shop 28
fry **B1** 49
full **A1** 59
full stop 79
fun **A1** 15, 80
funny **A1** 15, 84
furniture shop 28
furniture **A2** 60
game **A1** *as in* **play a game** 23, 81, 82
gap **A2** 55
garden **A1** 57
gardening 81
garlic 46
gas **A2** 34

gate **A2** 57
gate (= at an airport) **A2** 89
general **A2** 63
geography **A1** 66
German 35
Germany 35
get **A1** 39
 (= arrive at/in somewhere) **A1** 23, 42, 51, 53
 (= be given) **A1** 42, 67, 74
 (= become) **A2** 42
 (= buy) **A1** 42
 (= fetch) **A1** 100
 (= travel by sth) **A1** 42, 52, 53
 as in **we/you get** (= there are) 100
back (= return) **A2** 100
better **A2** 31, 100
changed 100
divorced 14
dressed 23, 100
in (= arrive) **B2** 100
lost **A2** 74, 90
married **A1** 14, 16
on/off (a train, plane, bus, etc.) **A1** 12, 52, 53, 89
on (well) with sb **B1** 16
out (of sth) **A2** 100
ready **A1** 45, 100
sb (= go and find) **A1** 75
there **A1** 51
to know sb **B1** 16, 100
to sleep 100
to work 23
up **A1** 23
gift **A2** 22, 28
gift shop 28
girlfriend **A1** 14, 16
give **A1** 12
 my love to sb 91
 sb advice 16
 sb a call 44
 sb a smile 44

sb a surprise 44
 sth up **A2** 99
 glass (of sth) **A1** 48
 glasses **A1** 25
 gloves **B1** 25
 go **A1** 52
 + -ing **A1** 82
 across (the road, a bridge) 19
 ahead (= yes, of course) **B1** 93
 along (the road) 19
 along here 54
 and get **A2** 100
 away **A2** 99
 back **A1** 99
 camping 81
 by car 51
 down (the stairs) 19
 down (= decrease) **A2** 99
 fishing 81
 for (a walk/swim) **A2** 23
 home **A1** 23
 into (a house, etc.) **A1** 19
 on a guided tour 90
 on a trip 88
 on foot 51
 over (a bridge) 19
 out **A1** 23, 99
 out for sth 94
 out of (a house, etc.) 19
 out (with sb) 81
 out with sb (= have a relationship) 16
 past (a church, etc.) 19
 shopping 23
 sightseeing 90
 straight on 54
 through (a gate) 19
 to bed **A1** 23
 towards (a hill, etc.) 19
 under (a bridge) 19
 up (the stairs) 19
 up (= increase) **A2** 99
 on holiday 87

goal **A2** 82
 gold **A2** 25
 golf **A2** 81
 good **A1** 67
 good at sth **A1** 22, 66, 81
 good chance 96
 good fun 15
 good to meet you 91
 good-looking 11
 goodbye **A1** 75
 government **A2** 34
 grade **B1** 67
 gram 45
 granddaughter 14
 grandfather **A1** 14
 grandmother **A1** 14
 grandparents **A1** 14
 grandson 14
 grapes 46
 grass **A2** 57
 great **A1** 13, 26, 94
 great fun 15
 Great Britain 35
 Greece 35
 Greek 35
 green **A1** 26
 green pepper 46
 greet **A2** 91
 greeting *n* 91
 grey **A1** 11, 26
 ground floor 58
 group (= musical) 83
 grow **A1** 57
 grow up **A1** 99
 guess *n, v* **A1** 5
 Guess what? **A1** 100
 guess **A1** *as in* I guess so **A2** 100
 guest **A2** 88
 guide *n* **A2** 90
 guidebook 90
 guided tour 90
 guitar **A1** 81
 gun **A2** 29

gym **A1** 81
 hair **A1** 10
 hairdresser 69
 half **A1** 45
 half past (one, etc.) 7
 half-time 82
 hall **A2** 58
 ham 47
 hand **A1** 10
 hand luggage 89
 handbag 25
 handsome 11
 happen **A1** 30, 85
 happily **A2** 65
 happy **A1** 17
 hard *adj* (= difficult) **A1** 65
 hard *adj* (= not soft) **A2** 63
 hard *adv* (= a lot) **A1** 65, 67
 hardworking 15, 63
 hat **A1** 25
 hate **A1** 80
 have **A1** 40
 (= eat/drink) **A1** 50
 a good/great day 40
 a good/great time 40
 a good/great weekend/holiday/
 journey 40
 a baby 16
 a bath 40
 a break 40
 a chat 44
 a dream 44
 a drink/sth to eat 40
 a fight 44
 a guess 5
 a look (at sth) 40, 44
 an argument 78
 a rest 40
 a run 40
 a seat 50
 a shave 60
 a sleep 44
 a (nice) smell 44

a swim 40
 a thought 78
 a wash 40, 60
 a shower 23, 40
 a walk 40
 breakfast 23, 40
 got (an illness) 31
 got (family) 14
 got A1 40, 45
 got to do sth A2 91
 dinner 23, 40
 lunch 23, 40
 to do 59, 88
 head A1 10
 headache A2 31
 health A1 31
 healthy A1 31, 62
 hear A1 85
 hear about sth A2 22
 heart A2 10
 heavy (= not light) A2 63
 heavy rain 37
 height A2 11
 help v A1 4, 13, 95
 help n A1 95
 helpful A2 88
 here A1 as in go along here 54
 here A1 as in over here 53
 hero A2 84
 heroine 84
 hi A1 91
 high A1 63
 high A1 as in 3,000m high 36
 high street B1 19
 hill A2 57
 Hindi 35
 history A1 66
 hit v A2 32, 39
 hit n A2 83
 hobby A1 81
 hold A2 12, 39
 holiday A1 87

home A1 58
 homework A1 5, 41, 59
 hope A1 as in I hope so / I hope not 96
 hope to see you again 91
 horror film 84
 horse A1 38
 hospital A1 70
 hot A1 37
 hot chocolate 50
 hour A1 70
 house A1 58
 housework 41, 59

how

are things? 91
 are you? A1 91
 do I get to ... ? 54
 do you do? 91
 do you say ... ? 4
 far 51, 92
 long A1 13, 52, 68, 92
 many A1 45, 92
 much A1 44, 45, 92
 often A1 92
 old 13
 tall 11

however A1 97
 huge A2 36
 human A2 33
 hundred A1 6
 Hungarian 35
 Hungary 35
 hungry A1 17
 hurry up 100
 hurt A2 32, 39
 husband A1 14, 16

I

don't think so 96
 guess so A2 100
 hope so 96
 hope not 96
 suppose so 100

think so A2 96
 'd like 50
 'd love to 94
 'll have (when ordering) 49
 'm afraid (not) A2 87, 93
 'm afraid I can't 94
 'm fine, thanks 95
 'm not sure 94
 'm sorry but ... 94
 'm sorry I'm late 95
 ice (= weather) A1 37
 ice (= in a drink) A1 50
 ice cream A1 49
 ice hockey 82
 icy 37
 idea A1 92
 idea A1 as in that's a great idea 94
 ideal A2 90
 identity card 79
 if A1 as in Do you mind if / Is it OK if ... ? 93
 ill A2 31
 illness A2 31
 immediately A2 23
 impolite 62
 impossible A2 62, 96
 improve A1 13, 31
 improvement B1 13

in

(a place) A1 20
 (something with walls or sides) A1 20
 (= at home) A2 75
 (a big area) A1 20
 2020, etc. A1 18
 (ten) days A1 9
 fact A1 21, 86
 front of sth A1 20
 hospital A2 21
 January, etc. A1 18
 love A2 17
 order to do sth B1 98
 pain 17, 32

prison **A2** 21
 the back of sth 21
 the end **A2** 21
 the middle of sth 21
 the morning, etc. **A1** 18
 the (news)paper 85
 the past **A1** 86
 (the) spring, etc. **A1** 18
 trouble 86
 include **A1** 87
 included **A2** 87
 including **A2** 86
 increase *n, v* **A2** 34
 incredible **A2** 72, 80
 indefinite article 2
 India 35
 Indian 35
 industry **A2** 36
 informal **A2** 3, 62
 information **A1** 13, 74
 injury **A2** 32
 insect **A2** 38
 inside **A2** 10, 58
 instead **A2** 49
 instruct **C1** /6
 instructions **A2** 5
 instructor **A2** 76
 instrument (= musical) **A2** 83
 intelligent **A2** 15
 interested (in sth) **A1** 22, 80
 interesting **A1** 80
 international **A2** 60
 internet **A1** 74
 interview *n, v* **A1** 71
 interviewer 71
 into **A1** 19
 introduce sb (to sb) **A1** 91
 introduction **A2** 91
 invent **A2** 5, 78
 invention **A2** /8
 invitation **A2** 94
 invite **A2** 94

involve **A2** 70
 Ireland 35
 ironing 59
 irregular 2, 62
 Is it OK/all right if ... ? 93
 Is that everything? 50
 Is that ... ? (= on the phone) 75
 Is there ... near here? 54
 island **A1** 33
 it doesn't matter 87, 95
 IT manager 68
 Italian 35
 Italy 35
 item of clothing 24
 jacket **A1** 24
 jam **A2** 45
 January **A1** 8
 Japan 35
 Japanese 35
 jazz **A2** 80
 jeans **A1** 24
 jewellery **A2** 25
 job **A1** 13, 67, 69
 journalism **B2** * 68
 journalist **A2** 68, 85
 journey **A1** 51, 53
 juice **A1** *as in* orange juice 50
 July **A1** 8
 jump **A2** 12
 jumper 24
 June **A1** 8
 just **A1** 9
 just a moment 75
 just before/after 7
 just over/under 36, 45
 keep **A1** 73
 keep a record of sth 4
 keep **A1** *as in* keep warm 31
 keep going 54
 keep left/right 55
 keep off 55
 key **A1** 58, 88

keyboard **B1** 73
 kill **A2** 30
 kilo(gram) 45
 kilometre **A1** 36
 kilometres (per hour) 51
 kind **B1** 15
 kind **A1** *as in* What kind of ... ?
 84, 92
 kitchen **A1** 58
 knee **A2** 10
 knife **A2** 48
 knock **B1** 32
 know **A1** 4, 16
 Korean 35
 kph 51
 lake **A2** 57
 lamb 47
 lamp **A2** 60
 land *v* **A2** 89
 land *n* **A1** 34
 landline 75
 language **A1** 35, 66
 laptop **A2** 73
 large **A1** 26
 last (stop) **A1** 52, 53
 last *v* **A2** 68
 last year **A1** /week/night, etc. 9
 late *adv, adj* **A1** 23, 65
 late **A1** *as in* in your late thirties 30
 later **A1** *as in* see you later 91
 Latin America 35
 laugh **A1** 15
 law **A2** 68
 lawyer **A2** 68
 lazy **A2** 15, 63
 lead *v* **B1** 82
 leather **B1** 25
 leave **A1** 53, 89
 leave a message 75
 leave home 23
 leave school 67
 leave sth somewhere 88
 lecture **A2** 68

- lecturer** 68
left (= not right) **A1** 54
leg **A1** 10
lemon **A2** 46, 50
lend **A2** 39, 93
lesson **A1** 67
let **A1** 39, 55
let me ... **A2** 95
let sb know **A2** 100
let's 84
letter **A1** 74
lettuce 46
level **B1** 13
library **A1** 56, 68
lie down 12, 99
lift **A2** 58
light (= not heavy) **A2** 63
light *n* **A1** 61
light blue 26
like (= similar to) **A1** 4
like *v* **A1** 80, 81
like **A1** *as in* **What's he/she like?** 15
likely (to) **A2** 96
line (= of a phone) **A2** 75
line (= of writing) **A1** 73
link **A2** 74
lion **A1** 38
listen **A1** 22, 76, 85
listener **A2** 76
literature **B1** 66
little **A1** 26
live (= happening now) **B1** 83
live with sb **A1** 22
living room **A1** 58
lock **A2** 58
long (= not short) **A1** 11, 26
long **A1** *as in* **20km long** 36
long hours 70
look *n* **A2** 44
look *v* **A1** 44
look nice/great, etc. 26
look after sth/sb 59, 100
look at sb/sth **A1** 22, 74
look round 90
look sth up **A2** 5, 99
lorry **A2** 51
lorry driver 69
lose (to sb) **A1** 39, 82, 95
lose weight 11
lost **A2** *as in* **get lost** **A2**; **be lost** 74, 90
loudly **A2** 65
love *v* **A1** 80
love *n* **A1** 17
love story 84
lovely **A2** 11, 26, 94
low **A2** 63
lucky **A2** 62
luggage 89
lunch **A1** *as in* **have lunch** 23, 40
machine 89
made of sth 22
magazine 85
main character 86
main course 49
main road 51
mainly **B1** 86
major **A2** 30, 36
make
 (= produce/create) **A1** 41
 (= produce a change) **A1** 41
a call 75, 88
a choice 78
a comment 44
a complaint 78
a copy 44, 73
a decision 41
a discovery 78
a mistake **A2** 41
an arrangement 78
a noise 41
a promise 44
money **A2** 41
sense **A2** 41
sure **A2** 93
the bed 41
sth up **B1** 5
make-up **B2** * 60
manage **A2** 70
manager **A2** 70
manner **A2** 65
many **A1** *as in* **how many** **A1** 45, 92
map **A1** 90
March **A1** 8
mark *n* **B1** 67
market **A1** 56
married **A1** 13
match *n* **A1** 82
match *v* **A1** 3
material **A2** 29
mathematics **A2** 66
maths **A2** 66
matter **A2** *as in* **it doesn't matter** 15, 87, 95
matter **A2** *as in* **What's the matter?** 31
May **A1** 8
may **A2** 96
maybe **A1** 94, 96
meal **A1** 49
mean **A1** 4
meaning **A1** 4
meat **A1** 47
media **A2** 85
medical **A2** 31
medicine **A2** 28, 68
meet (= for the first time) **A1** 16, 70
meet (= go somewhere and wait for sb) **A1** 16
meeting **A1** /0
member **A1** 30
memory **A2** 29
menu (= in a restaurant) **A1** 49
menu (= on a computer) **A1** 73
message *n* **A2** 74, 75
message *v* 75
metal **A2** 29

- metre high 36
 Mexican 35
 Mexico 35
 mice (= animal) A1 38
 mice (of a computer) 73
 midday 7
 middle-aged 11
 Middle East 35
 midnight A1 7
 might A2 87, 96
 miles per hour, mph 51
 milk A1 45, 50
 million A1 6
 mind A2 as in Do you mind if ... ? 93
 mind A2 as in I don't mind 80
 mind (= be careful) B1 55
 mine A2 92
 minus 6
 minutes past/to 7
 mirror A2 60
 miss (a train) A1 53
 missing A2 3
 mistake A1 as in make a mistake A2 3, 41
 mobile phone A1 29, 75
 mobile number 75
 model A2 69
 modern A1 36, 58, 63, 80
 moment A1 as in at the moment A1 18, 21, 75
 moment A1 as in just a moment 75
 Monday A1 8
 monkey A2 38
 month A1 8
 moon A2 /
 more A1 as in any more 29
 more A1 as in some more 49
 morning A1 as in in the morning A1 7
 most (of sth) A1 85
 mostly A2 86
 mother A1 14
 motor racing 82
 motorbike 51
 motorcycle A2 51
 motorway 51
 mountain A1 36
 mouse (pl mice) (= animal) A1 38
 mouse (pl mice) (= of a computer) A1 73
 mouth A1 10
 move A1 73, 78
 movement A2 78
 movie A1 84
 much A1 as in how much A1 44, 45
 much A1 as in thanks very much 54, 95
 mum A1 14
 museum A1 56
 mushroom 46
 music shop 28
 musical instrument 83
 musician A2 83
 name v A1 30
 narrow A2 63
 national A2 60
 nationality 35
 natural A1 57
 nature A2 57
 near A1 20, 52, 54
 nearest 54, 92
 nearly A2 7
 necessary A2 62
 neck A2 10
 necklace 25
 need v A1 45, 95
 negative A1 63
 neighbour A1 58
 nephew 14
 nervous A2 17
 never A1 23
 never mind 95
 new A1 80
 news A1 as in the news A1 85
 New Year's Day 8
 newspaper A1 85
 next (stop) A1 52, 53
 next to A1 20
 next week/Thursday/year A1 , etc. 9
 nice A1 15, 26
 nice to meet you 91
 niece 14
 night A1 as in at night 7, 18
 night A1 as in last night 9
 nil 82
 nine A1 6
 nineteen A1 6
 ninety A1 6
 nineteenth 8
 ninth 8
 no problem A1 54, 93
 no smoking 55
 no, thanks / thank you 50, 95
 no vacancies 55
 noise A2 56
 noisy A2 56
 non-fiction 86
 none (of sth) A2 85
 noon 7
 normally A2 23
 north A1 n, adj 36
 North America 35
 north-east 36
 north-west 36
 Northern Ireland 35
 nose A1 10
 not bad 91
 not sure 4
 note (= money) B1 27
 notebook B2 * 1, 4
 nothing else 100
 notice n A2 1, 55
 notice v A2 22
 noticeboard 1
 noun 2
 novel A2 86
 November A1 8
 now A1 as in right now A1 100

nowhere **A2** 33
 number (= phone) **A1** 75
 nurse **A1** 69
 nuts **A2** 46
 o'clock **A1** 7
 ocean **A2** 36
 October **A1** 8
 of course **A1** 49, 93
 off **B1** *as in* 50% off 27
 offer *n, v* **A2** 71, 95
 office **A1** 70
 often **A1** 23
 oh (= zero) 75
 oh! **A1** 91
 Oh dear! **A2** 87, 91
 oil **A2** 48
 OK **A1** *as in* Is it OK if ... ? 93
 OK **A1** *as in* that's OK 54
 old **A1** 58, 80
 old friend **A2** 16
 older than 14
 oldest *as in* the oldest 14
 olive oil 45
 olive 45
on
 1st January, etc. **A1** 18
 foot 51
 his/her, etc. mobile 21
 holiday **A1** 21, 87
 Monday, etc. evening **A1** 18
 my/your, etc. own **B1** 15
 (something long/flat) **A1** 20
 the coast **A2** 20
 the corner 54
 the ground/first/second/top floor 58
 the phone **A1** 21, 75
 the river 20
 the road 20
 the side of sth / the other side **A2** 21
 the table 20
 the wall **A2** 20

time **A2** 21
 tour 83
 TV **A1** / the radio 85
 your right/left 54
 once **A1** *as in* once a **A1** (week) 23
 one **A1** 6
 onion **A1** 46
 online **A1** 27, 28, 71
 only **A1** 64
 open **A1** 12, 92
 open (a document) **A1** 73
 opera singer 83
 opinion **A1** 56, 85
 opposite **A1** 3, 4, 20, 54
 option **A2** 67
 orange (= colour) **A1** 26
 orange (= fruit) **A1** 46
 orange juice 50
 orchestra **B2** * 83
 order *v* **A1** 49
 order **A1** *as in* Are you ready to order? 49
 organization **A2** 78
 organize **A2** 70, 78
 other **A1** *as in* each other **A1** 15, 16
 out (= not at home) **A1** 75
 out loud 4
 out of (a place) **A1** 19
 out of order 55
 outside (= in front of sth) **A2** 52
 outside (= not inside) **A2** 58
 oven **A2** 59
 over (= direction) **A1** 19
 over (= more than) **A1** 36
 over here 53
 over there **A1** 53
 overweight 11
 own *as in* on my own **B1** 15
 own *v* **A2** 57, 76
 owner **A2** 57, 76
 pack **A2** 87
 pain **A2** 32
 painting **A1** 77, 81

pair **A1** *as in* a pair of shoes 25
 palace **A2** 56
 paper **A1** 85
 paragraph **A1** 5
 parent **A1** 14
 park **A1** 56
 park *v* **A1** 58
 parking **A2** 55, 58, 87
 part of speech 2
 part of sth **A1** 72
 particular **A2** 28
 partner **A1** 16
 party **A1** 94
 pass (an exam) **A2** 67
 passenger **A2** 53, 89
 passport **A1** 87
 password **B2** * 74
 past (= direction) **A2** 19
 past **A1** *as in* half past 7
 past participle 2, 79
 past simple 2
 past tense 79
 pasta 45, 48
 patient **B2** 15
 pay **A1** 27, 88
 pay attention **A2** 5
 pay for sth **A1** 22
 PC (= personal computer) 73
 PE (= Physical Education) 66
 peace **A2** 85
 peach 46
 pear 46
 peas 46
 pen **A1** 1
 pencil **A1** 1
 pepper (= black pepper) **A1** 48
 pepper *as in* red/green pepper 46
 per cent **A2** 27
 perfect **A1** 13, 90
 perform **A2** 83
 performance **B1** 83
 performer 83

perhaps **A2** 94, 96
 permission **A2** 93
 personal (= for one person) **A1** 28
 personal (information) 13
 personal computer 73
 personality **A2** 16
 pet **A2** 38
 petrol **A2** 34
 pharmacy 28, 31
 phone *n, v* **A1** 29, 61, 75
 phone **A1** *as in on the phone* **A1** 21, 75
 phone number **A1** 75, 79
 phone sb back 75
 photo **A1** 73, 90
 photograph **A1** 73
 phrasal verb 79
 phrase **A1** 7
 physical education 66
 physics **A2** 66
 pianist 83
 piano **A1** 83
 pick **B1** 57
 pick sth up **A2** 12
 picture **A1** 60
 pie 49
 piece **A1** 45
 piece **A1** *as in a piece of furniture* 60
 piece **A1** *as in a piece of music* 83
 piece **A1** *as in a piece of paper* 1
 pig **A1** 38, 47
 pill **B2** * 31
 pilot **A2** 69
 pineapple 46
 pink **A1** 26
 pizza 49
 place **A1** 56
 plan (to do) sth **A1** 13
 plan *n, v* **A1** 30
 plane **A1** 89
 planet **A2** 84
 plant *n* **A1**

plant *v* **A2** 57
 plastic **A2** 25, 29
 plate **A2** 48
 platform **A2** 53
 play (a game) **A1** 23, 81, 82
 play (an instrument) **A1** 81
 player **A1** 82
 please **A1** 45, 50, 55
 pleased **A2** 17
 plus **B1** 6
 p.m. 7
 pocket **A2** 24
 point **A2** 82
 Poland 35
 police officer **A2** 69, 79
 policeman **A1** 69
 policewoman 69
 Polish 35
 polite **A2** 62, 93, 95
 pollution **A2** 34, 56
 poor **A1** 63
 popular **A1** 36, 81
 population **A2** 36
 pork 47
 Portugal 35
 Portuguese 35
 positive **A1** 63
 possessions **A2** 29
 possibility **A2** 96
 possible **A1** 62, 96
 post office **A1** 56
 post *n, v* **A1** 71, 74
 postcard 90
 postcode 13
 potato **A1** 46
 pound **A1** 27
 practice *n* **A1** 5
 practise *v* **A1** 5
 prawn 47
 predict **A2** 78
 prediction **B1** 78
 prefer to do sth **A1** 28, 90, 94

prefer (X to Y) **A1** 28, 80
 prepare **A1** 59
 preposition 2
 present **A1** 22, 28
 pretty (= attractive) **A1** 11
 pretty (= quite) **A1** 64
 price **A1** 27
 print **A2** 73, 89
 printer **A2** 73
 prison **A2** *as in in prison* **A2** 21
 prize **A2** 27
 probably **A1** 96
 problem **A1** *as in no problem* **A1** 54, 93
 produce **A2** 57
 product **A1** 27
 professor **A2** 68
 program **A1** 73
 programme **A1** 85
 progress **A2** 13
 project **B1** 70
 promise *n, v* **A2** 44
 pronoun 2
 pronounce **A2** 4
 pronunciation 4
 provide **A2** 89
 pub **A2** 50
 public **A2** *as in the public* 30
 public transport **A2** 51
 publish **A2** 86
 pull **A2** 12
 purple **A1** 26
 purpose **A2** 29
 purse 27
 push **A2** 12
 put **A1** 39
 on make-up 60
 on weight 11
 sth back 93
 sth down 12
 sth in order 3
 on clothes **A2** 24, 99

quality A2 28
quarter (to/past) 7
question mark 79
queue B1 55
quiet (= not talking a lot) A1 15
quiet (= not noisy) A1 56
quiet (= not busy) A1 51
quietly A2 65
quite A1 11, 64, 80
race A2 76
radio A1 *as in on the radio* 85
railway station 53, 79
rain *n, v* A1 37
rather A2 64
razor 60
reach A2 89
reader A1 76
reading A1 76, 77
ready A1 45
realize A2 86
really A1 15, 64; *as in really like* 80
reason A1 98
receive A2 74
recent A2 30, 86
recently A2 9
reception A2 13
receptionist 13
recipe A2 29
recognize A2 74
recommend A2 88, 92
record *n* A2 4
record (= with music) 83
record *v* A2 83
recording A2 29
recycle A2 34
red A1 26
red pepper 46
red wine 48
reduce A2 28
refuse A2 95
region A2 33
regular A2 2, 62

relationship A2 16
relative B1 14
relax A1 90
relaxed B1 15
remember A1 4
repair A2 81
repeat A1 5
replace sth (with sth) A2 73
reply *n, v* A2 44, 74
report *v* A2 85
report *n* A1 70
reporter A2 68, 85
request A2 93
research A2 *as in do research* 68
reserve B2 * 53
respond A2 93
response A2 93
rest A2 31
rest A2 *as in the rest* A2 100
result A1 67, 98
return (ticket) 53
review A2 84
revise B1 5
rice A1 45
rich A1 63
ride (a bike/motorbike, etc.) A1 12, 39, 51
right (= correct) A1 3, 4, 26
right (= not left) A1 54
right (= OK) 45
right now A1 /away (= immediately) 100
ring *n* (= jewellery) A2 25
ring *v* (= telephone sb) A2 39, 75
ring sb back 75
river A1 36
road A1 *as in main road* 51
rock A2 33, 90
rock music 81
roll *n* B1 50
romantic B1 16, 84
roof A2 58
room [U] (= space) B1 60

route A2 52
routine A1 23
rubbish A2 59
rude A2 62, 95
rule A1 86
run (= on foot) A1 12, 39
run (= travel) B1 52
running A2 82
rush hour 51
Russia 35
Russian 35
sad A1 17, 65
sadly A2 65
safe A2 30, 56
salad A1 46, 49
salary A2 70
sale(s) A2 27, 28, 55
sales assistant 69, 79
salmon 47
salt A1 48
same A1 *as in the same* A1 3
same A1 *as in be the same as sth* 3
same A1 *as in at the same time* A1 21
sandwich A1 50
Saturday A1 8
sauce A2 49
Saudi Arabia 35
Saudi 35
sausage 47
save (money) A2 27
save (= on a computer) A2 73
say A1 4
say sorry 95
scared (of sth/sb) A2 17
scarf 25
scary A2 84
school A1 67
science fiction A2 84
science (subjects) 66
sci-fi 84
score *n, v* A2 82
Scotland 35

- screen** A2 73
sea A1 90
seafood 47
search *n, v* A2 30
search (for sth) (= on a computer) A2 74
season A2 8
seat A2 50, 53
seat belt 89
second A1 8
second floor 58
secondly A2 98
secretary A2 69
security B1 89
see (= notice) A1 43
see (= watch a film/TV) A1 43, 85
see (= find out about sth) A1 43
see (= visit/spend time with sb) A1 16, 43
see (= understand) B1 43
see you A1 (later/soon/then) 91
sell A1 27
send A1 39, 70, 74
send an email 44
send a reply 44
sentence A1 2
separate B1 16
September A1 8
series (on TV, etc.) A2 86
series (of events, etc.) B1 30
serious (= not fun) A2 15
serious (= very bad) A2 32
serve A2 28, 88
service B1 28, 88
seven A1 6
seventeen A1 6
seventeenth 8
seventh 8
seventy A1 6
shake hands 91
Shall we ...? 94
shape A2 29
share a flat 15
shave *n* 60
sheep A1 38, 47
sheet A2 60
shelf B1 61
shine B1 37
shirt A1 24
shoe A1 25
shoe shop 28
shop A1 *n* 28
shop assistant 45, 69, 79
shop online 28, 74
shopping A1 *as in* go shopping / do the shopping 23, 28, 41, 77
shopping centre 28, 79
short (= not tall) A1 11
short (= not long) A1 11, 26
short form 3
shorts 24
should A1 31
shoulder A2 10
shower (= in a bathroom) A1 23, 60
shower (= light rain) B1 37
shut *adj* A2 55
shut *v* A2 12, 39, 92
sick A1 *as in* be/feel sick 31
sightseeing *as in* go sightseeing 77, 90
sign *n* (= notice) A2 55
sign *v* (= write your name) A2 88
silver A2 25
similar A1 63
simple A2 5
since A2 9
sing A1 39, 81
singer A1 81
single (ticket) 53
single (= not married) A2 13
single room 87
sink *n* 59
sister A1 14
sister-in-law 14
sit A1 39
sit down A1 12, 99
site (= website) A2 74
situation A1 4
six A1 6
sixteen A1 6
sixteenth 8
sixth 8
sixty A1 6
size A2 26
skiing A2 82
skin A2 10
skirt A1 24
sky A2 37
sleep *v* A1 23, 44
sleep *n* A1 44
slim 11
slow train 53
slowly A2 65
small A1 26
smartphone 75
smell *n, v* A2 44
smile *n, v* A2 11, 44
smoking A2 77
smoking A2 *as in* no smoking 55
snack 50
snake A1 38
snow *n, v* A1 37
so conjunction A1 98
so ... (that) *adverb* (= for emphasis) A1 72
soap A2 60
soccer A2 82
social life 15
social media 63
socks A2 25
sofa 61
soft A2 63
software designer 68
soldier A2 69
solution A2 78, 86
solve A2 78, 86
some (of sth) A1 45, 85
some more 49
sometimes A1 23

somewhere **A2** 33
 somewhere else 100
 son **A1** 14
 song **A1** 81
 soon **A1** *as in* see you soon 91
 sorry **A1** *as in* (so/very/really) sorry 17, 94, 95
 sorry **A1** *as in* sorry I'm late 95
 sort **A2** *as in* What sort of ... ? 84, 92
 sound **A1** *as in* that sounds lovely 94
 soup **A1** 49
 source **A2** 34
 south *n, adj* **A1** 36
 South America 35
 South Korea 35
 south-east 36
 south-west 36
 soy sauce 49
 space [U] **A1** 60
 Spain 35
 Spanish 35
 speak **A1** 39, 76
 speaker **A2** 76
 speaking 75
 special **A1** 8
 specific **A2** 63
 speed limit 51
 spell **A1** 4, 39
 spelling **A1** 77
 spend money (on sth) 22, 27, 39
 spend time doing sth **A1** 70
 spend time with sb 14, 39
 spider **A2** 38
 spoon **A2** 48
 sports centre 79
 spring **A1** 8
 square (= shape) **A2** 29
 square (= in a town) **A2** 56
 squid 47
 stairs **A2** 58
 stand up **A1** 12, 99

star *n* **A1** 84
 star *v* **A2** 84
 start school 67
 starter 49
 statement **A1** 30
 station **A1** 53
 stay *v* **A1** 88
 stay *n* **A2** 88
 stay at school 67
 stay in **A1** 23
 stay in bed 31
 steps **A2** 58
 still water 49
 still (= continuing) **A1** 64, 97
 stomach **A2** 10
 stomach ache 31
 stop *n* **A1** 52
 storm **A2** 37
 story **A1** *as in* love story 84
 straight **A2** 11
 strange **A2** 15
 strawberry 46
 stress **B2** 30
 strong (= not weak) **A1** 31, 63
 strong (wind) **A2** 37
 study *n* **B1** 58
 stupid **A2** 15
 style **A1** 26
 subject **A1** 66
 subway 51
 succeed **A2** 78
 success **A1** 78
 such ... (that) **A2** 72
 suddenly **A2** 37
 sugar **A1** 45
 suggest **A2** 94
 suggestion **A2** 94
 suit **A2** 24
 suitcase 60, 87
 summer **A1** 8
 sun **A1** 37
 sunny 37

Sunday **A1** 8
 sunglasses 25
 supermarket **A1** 28
 support *v* **A2** 72
 suppose **A2** *as in* I suppose so 100
 sure (= certain) **A1** 4, 62
 sure (= of course) **A2** 49, 93
 surname 13
 surprise *n, v* **A2** 44
 surprised **A2** 17
 surprising **A2** 72
 sweet **A2** 46
 swim *v* **A1** 39
 swim *n* **B1** 23
 swimming **A1** 82
 swimming pool **A1** 79
 Swiss 35
 Switzerland 35
 symbol **A2** 3
 synonym 3
 system **A2** 67
 T-shirt **A1** 24
 table (= furniture) **A1** 1, 60
 table (= diagram) **A2** 3
 table tennis 82
 tablet (= computer) **A2** 73
 tablet (= medicine) **B1** 31
take
 size 12, etc. 26
 (time) **A1** 68
 (= carry) **A1** 93
 a message 75
 an exam 67
 a photo 90
 a seat 50
 away 50
 care of sb/sth **A2** 100
 off (= leave) **A2** 89, 99
 place **A2** 30
 sth off (= remove) **A2** 24, 99
 the bus/train 51, 53
as in how long does it take? 52

as in **take the first/second, etc.**
turning 54
tall A1 11
tap B2* 59
task A2 59
taste A2 46
taxi A1 51
taxi driver 69
tea A1 50
teach A1 39, 76
teacher A1 68, 69, 76
teaching A2 77
team A1 82
technology A2 66
teenage A2 11
teenager A1 11
teeth A1 10
telephone A1 29, 61
television A1 61
temperature A2 31
ten A1 6
tennis A1 23, 82
tent B1 81
tenth 8
term A2 68
terrible A1 26
terrible at sth 66
test v A1 3
text n A1 5, 73, 75
Thai 35
Thailand 35
than A1 14
thank sb (for sth) 22
thanks a lot 95
thanks very much 54
that would be lovely 94
that's a great idea 94
that's all right 95
that's all, thanks 45, 50
that's fine 45, 93
that's OK 54
the army 70
the best 67

the news 85
the oldest 14
the rest 100
the same 3
the worst 67
the youngest 14
then A1 98
there are five of us 14
there's lots / a lot / nothing to do 56
thin A2 11
thing A1 4
think A1 39, 78
think about/of sth A1 22
think A1 *as in* I think so A2 / I don't think so 96
third A1 8
thirsty A1 17
thirteen A1 6
thirteenth 8
thirtieth 8
thirty A1 6
this evening/weekend/morning A1, etc. 9
This is ... (= on the phone) A1 75
This is ... (= introducing sb) A1 91
though B1 97
thought(s) A2 78
thousand A1 6
three A1 6
thriller 84
through A1 19
throw A2 12
Thursday A1 8
tick 3
ticket A1 53
ticket machine 89
ticket office 53, 79
tidy A2 15
tie A2 24
tiger 38
tights 25
time A1 *as in* on time A2 21

timetable 52, 53
tired A1 17
to (= purpose) A1 98
toasted sandwich 50
toe B1 10
together A1 14
together A1 *as in* be together 16
toilet A1 55, 60
tomato A1 46
tomorrow morning 9
too (= excessive) A1 26
too (= also) A1 97
tool A2 29
tooth (pl teeth) A1 10
toothache 31
toothbrush 60
top (= clothes) A2 24
top (= highest) A2 82
top floor 58
total B1 27
touch A2 28
tour A2 *as in* go on a guided tour 90
tourism A2 88
tourist A1 88
towards A2 19
towel A2 60
tower A2 56
town A1 36
town centre A1 79
toy A2 28
toy shop 28
tradition A2 63
traditional A2 63
traffic A1 51
traffic lights 54, 79
train A1 53
train driver 69
train station 53, 79
trainers A2 25
training A2 67, 71
travel A1 76
traveller A2 76

- travelling 81
 tree **A1** 57
 trip **A1** 88
 trouble **A2** 86
 trousers **A1** 24
 truck **A2** 51
 true **A1** 3
 try **A1** 86
 try sth on 28
 Tuesday **A1** 8
 tuna 47
 Turkey 35
 Turkish 35
 turn left/right 54
 turn sth on/off **A2** 59, 99
 turning *as in* take the second turning 54
 TV **A1** 61
 twelfth 8
 twelve **A1** 6
 twentieth 8
 twenty **A1** 6
 twenty-first 8
 twenty-one 6
 twenty-second 8
 twenty-third 8
 twenty-three 6
 twenty-two 6
 twice **A1** 23, 92
 two **A1** 6
 type **A1** *as in* What type of ... ? 47, 84, 92
 type *v* **B1** 73
 typical **A2** 90
 UK 35
 umbrella **A1** 25
 uncertain 62
 uncle **A1** 14
 uncomfortable 26
 under (= below) **A1** 19
 under (= less than) **A1** 36
 underground 51
 underline 3
 understanding **A2** //
 unemployed **B1** 69
 unfortunately **A2** 51, 68
 unfriendly 15
 unhappy **A2** 17
 unhealthy 31, 62
 uniform **A2** 24, 67
 unit **A2** 72
 United Kingdom 35
 United States (of America) 35
 unlucky 62
 unnecessary **B1** 67
 unsure 62
 untidy 15
 until **A1** 88
 unusual **A2** 29, 63
 up **A1** 19
 up to (an age) **B1** 67
 upset **B1** 17
 upstairs **A1** 58
 use *v* **A1** 4
 used to **A2** 90
 useful **A1** 63
 useless **B2*** 63
 usually **A1** 23
 vacancy 55
 valley **A2** 57
 van **A2** 51
 variety **A2** 86
 various **B1** 81
 vegetable **A1** 46
 vegetarian 47
 vehicle **A2** 51
 verb 2
 very **A1** 26, 64
 very well 91
 video **A1** 74
 view (= opinion) **A2** 56
 view (= what you can see) **A2** 58
 village **A1** 36
 vinegar 48
 violent **B1** 84
 violin 83
 violinist 83
 virus (= illness) **A2** 31
 virus (= on a computer) **A2** 74
 visit *n, v* **A1** 76, 90
 visitor **A1** 76
 vocabulary 5
 voice **A2** 29
 vomit 31
 waist 10
 wait for sth **A1** 22, 53
 waiter **A1** 49
 wake up **A1** 23, 39, 99
 Wales 35
 walk **A1** 12
 wall **A1** 60
 wallet 27
 want **A1** *as in* Do you want to ... ? 94
 want **A1** *as in* Do you want ... ? 95
 war **A2** 85
 war film 84
 wardrobe 60
 warm **A1** 37
 wash **A1** *as in* wash the dishes 59
 wash *n* **A2** 60
 washbasin 60
 washing **A2** 59
 washing machine 59, 79
 washing-up 59
 watch *n* **A1** 25
 watch *v* **A1** 43, 81, 85
 water *n* **A1** 48
 water *v* **B1** 57
 way **A1** 54
 way out 55
 weak **A2** 31, 63
 wear **A1** 24, 25
 website **A1** 74
 wedding **A2** 96
 Wednesday **A1** 8

week **A1** *as in last/next week* 9

weekday 23

weekend **A1** 9, 23

weigh **B1** 11

weight **A2** 11

welcome *adj, v* **A1**

welcome *n* **A2** 91

well **A1** 65

well (= not ill) **A1** 31

Well done! 100

west *n, adj* **A1** 36

wet **A2** 37

whale 38

what **A1** 92

about? **A1** 94

can I get you? 50

do you do? (= what's your job?)
13, 69, 92

kind/sort/type of ... ? 84, 92

time is it? 7

time/when ... ? 92

would you like? 50

's on? 84

's sth like? 15, 92

's the matter? 31, 91

's the time? 7

's the weather like? 37

's your job? 13, 69

when **A1** 92

Where's it on? (= film) 84

Where's the nearest ... ? 92

whereabouts 13

which **A1** 92

while **A2** 9, 90

white **A1** 26

white bread 50

white coffee 50

white wine 48

whiteboard 1

who **A1** 92

Who's calling? 75

whole **A2** 72

whose **A2** 92

why **A1** 92

wide **A2** 63

wife **A1** 14, 16

wild **A2** (animal/plant) 38, 57

will (= in promises) **A1** 91

wln **A1** 27, 39, 76, 82

wind **A2** 37

window (= in a room) **A1** 61

window (= on a computer) **B1** 73

windy 37

wine (white/red) 48

wing **B1** 38

winner **A2** 76

winter **A1** 8

without **A1** 49

wonderful **A1** 80, 94

wood (= product) **A2** 29, 60

wood (= place with trees) **A2** 57

wooden **A2** 60

word **A1** 2

work *v* **A1** 69, 70, 76

work *n* **A1** 69

work hard **A1** 67

worker **A1** 76

working 77

world **A1** 33

worried **A2** 17

worry *v* **A2**

worry *n* **B1** 72, 95

worse (than) **A2** 37

worst **A2** *as in the worst* 67

worth doing 92

Would you like to ... ? 94

Would you like ... ? **A1** 95

Wow! **A2** 100

write **A1** 39

write an essay 68

write a reply 44

write sth down **A2** 4

writing **A1** 77

writer **A1** 86

wrong (= not correct) **A1** 3, 4, 26

wrong number 75

yeah **A1** 92

year **A1** 8

yellow **A1** 26

yes, please 50, 95

yesterday **A1** 9

yesterday evening 9

yet **A2** 9

younger than 14

youngest *as in the youngest* 14

zero **A2** 75

zoo 38

*These 13 words are from the .

Abbreviations used in the book

<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>adv</i>	adverb
[C]	(of a noun) countable
<i>inf</i>	informal
<i>n</i>	noun
OPP	opposite
<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>pp</i>	past participle
<i>pt</i>	past tense
<i>sing</i>	singular
<i>sb</i>	somebody
<i>sth</i>	something
SYN	synonym
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable
<i>v</i>	verb